HISTORIANS OF MEDIEVAL INDIA
HISTORIANS
OF
MEDIEVAL INDIA

Edited by
MOHIBBUL HASAN
Professor of Indian History and Culture,
Jamia Millia Islamia

With a Foreword by
MUHAMMAD MUJEEB
Vice-Chancellor, Jamia Millia Islamia

MEENAKSHI PRAKASHAN
BEGUM BRIDGE
MEERUT
CONTRIBUTORS

QEYAMUDDIN AHMAD is a Lecturer in History in Patna University.
SYED HASAN ASKARI is the Director of K. P. Jaiswal Research Institute, Patna.
Z. H. FARUQI is Dean of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences, Jamia Millia Islamia, New Delhi.
SURENDRA GOPAL is a Lecturer in History in Patna University.
B. N. GOSWAMI is Reader in Fine Arts in the Punjab University.
J. S. GREWAL is a Lecturer in History in the Punjab University.
B. R. GROVER is Reader in Indian History and Culture in the Jamia Millia Islamia.
MOHIBBUL HASAN is Professor of Indian History and Culture in the Jamia Millia Islamia.
ZAHIRUDDIN MALIK is Reader in History in Aligarh Muslim University.
S. C. MISRA is Professor of History in the University of Baroda.
MUHAMMAD MUJEEB is Vice-Chancellor of the Jamia Millia Islamia.
K. A. NIZAMI is Professor of History in Aligarh Muslim University.
BUDDHA PRAKASH is Professor of History and Director of the Institute of Indic Studies in Kurukshetra University.
S. A. A. RIZVI is Reader in History in Jammu and Kashmir University.
P. SARAN is Associate Professor of History in Osmania University.
JAGADISH NARAYAN SARKAR is Professor of Medieval Indian History in Jadavpur University.
K. K. SHARMA is Head of the Department of History in N. A. S. College, Meerut.
H. K. SHERWANI was formerly Professor of History in Osmania University.
NOMAN AHMAD SIDDIQI is Reader in History in Aligarh Muslim University.
GANDA SINGH is the Director of Punjab Historical Institute in the Punjabi University, Patiala.
PUSHPA SURI is a Lecturer in History in the Government College for Women, University of Delhi.
ROMILA THAPAR is Reader in History in the University of Delhi.
MUHAMMAD UMAR is a Lecturer in History in the Rural Institute, Jamia Millia Islamia.
FOREWORD

The History Department of the Jamia Millia organised a series of lectures followed by a discussion early in 1965. One point on which all were agreed was that there was something in the atmosphere of the Jamia which stimulated free expression of opinion. This prompted the History Department to organise a three-day Seminar early in 1966.

A round-table discussion, in which views are expressed without mental reservations and inhibitions, seems to be the only way in which we can overcome the difficulties in understanding which historians of medieval India, whose works we are obliged to use as source material, have created for us. We should not allow our minds to be imprisoned in their basic concept of history as a struggle for political power, and we should also remember the circumstances that influenced their writing. The court historian had to compete with the court poets, the prose writer had to bear in mind that he would not be considered worth reading unless he could marshal all the figures of speech, all the hyperbolic expressions of the poet. Most important of all, we must not mistake the historian for a representative of his community. He was concerned with the small minority of possessors of power who continuously sought to extend it and with all that happened as a consequence. He was concerned only with a certain type of facts. He was certainly not concerned with truth or justice. But he had to affirm his belief in the existence of a moral order, and so he gave political authority and ambition as loud a religious colour as circumstances required or permitted.

While discussing historians, many of whom were Muslims, let us remember that we have still to make a proper study of the Indian Muslims and of the forces operative within what has been called their community. If we do so, I believe we shall find that we have been misled by simplifications and have overlooked the tensions because of which the unity and solidarity of the Muslims was reduced to a mere hypothesis. Governments that called themselves Muslim had no moral or religious basis, and could style themselves only by virtue of legal fictions. The Muslim shariat was never operative as law, even if it did on occasion provide an excuse for the levy of the jizya. The official ulama were concerned mainly with taqlid, or adherence to the Sunni Hanafi version of Islamic belief and practice and were so
anxious to suppress heresy and dissidence that they became the main obstacle to religious unity. The *sufis* were most active in the religious sense and it is among them that we find persons who disowned Muslim rulers and governments because they were basically irreligious and unjust, and persons who rejected orthodoxy because it insisted on exclusiveness. The generality of the Muslims were subject to all these mutually repellent influences, and their sentiments cannot be said to have followed any particular direction. Socially, the Muslim community was never a homogeneous group. There were divisions on the basis of race, class and profession, and particularly among those engaged in the struggle for power, racial differences could prove more decisive than religious considerations.

But it is not only Indian Muslim society that needs to be studied. The term 'Hindu' is quite as much a simplification as the word 'Muslim'. I may be mistaken, but I think it is a simplification which cannot be traced to the *dharma* itself. There have been conflicts between those whom we designate as Hindus and Muslims; there have been, and are, matters in which the *dharma* of the one conflicts with the *shariat* of the other. But they are different types of conflict, and should not be confused. The *dharma* has ordained a social system and is embodied in that system. We must see that system as it existed in history, and examine the influence it exercised on struggles for power at all levels, and on social and economic life. We may find, then, that those on whom the *dharma* conferred the right to exercise political authority fought against those who were determined to deprive them of it, while those for whom the *dharma* prescribed trade and moneymaking were concerned only with their particular function and not with the political authority under which they performed this function. The capitalists of Delhi and other large cities of north India may have been horrified by the successes of the Turks and become more strict in the observance of the rules of their caste after the establishment of the Delhi Sultanate, but nevertheless they carried on their business, and they must have utilised all the opportunities offered by the new circumstances. The rural chiefs and the peasantry wanted to remain independent of all external authority, and their idea of the *dharma* would not have inclined them to distinguish between the Kshatriya aggressor and the Muslim. The artisans as a whole must have benefited from the political changes, because the new ruling class believed in expensive living and needed a multiplicity of goods to satisfy its fastidious tastes.
These problems require thorough study and detailed treatment. I have referred to them merely to suggest that if we do not look at only parts of it, but get a perspective on the whole, the landscape of our history may have a totally different appearance. We may find in it features which we see in the landscape of our life as it is today, and Indian history may, in a real sense, become our history.

I have often the uncomfortable feeling—I do not know how many share it with me—that our history is still something apart from us, without any contemporary meaning. It is history in the academic sense, like the history of Greece or Rome or medieval Europe, with which we can identify ourselves imaginatively because it is an integral part of human experience, but it is not our history. Similarly, medieval Indian statesmen do not seem to have been concerned to solve our problems, their endeavours and achievements are theirs, and end with them. The Sants and Sufis have been more fortunate, but even they are still divided up among those who venerate them, and become national figures only on certain occasions. If we trace influence of any kind, spiritual or social, it is not to seek an inner harmony underlying essential differences, but to rub out here and there what seem to be dividing lines. Some of us, unable to acknowledge any relationship with the events and personalities of the medieval period, go to the extreme of dreaming up in a remote past what we find admirable in the present, nationalism, democracy, local self-government, if not the most modern scientific discoveries and technological inventions, and almost believe they have isolated a continuing element of our history.

But we are hardly to blame for the confusion in our attitude, considering the vast extent of our country and the possibility of self-sufficient political units and cultures sprouting up independently, thriving and decaying in a period of five thousand years. There have been unifying forces, like the concept of dharma, but only a very gifted imagination could, in some inspired moment, bring the rich diversity of Indian life within a single focus, and even if that happened, no attempt to give expression to this almost spiritual experience could succeed without introducing abstractions and generalisations. Further, in writing our history we cannot avoid resorting to parallel accounts, some of which could be like digressions in a story, or themes within themes, but by and large the structure of the narrative could be like that of the Katha Saritsagar, a complex of stories connected with each other mainly by the interest of the
reader. Our history can be history in the Greek sense of investiga-
tion and enquiry; can it ever be 'a great story nobly told'?

We cannot give an answer until we have tried, and I do not think we have really tried. If love of India, unaffected by any inconsistent and insidious allegiance to religious, regional or linguisti-
cal interests inspired the historian, and if universal human values guided his judgement, Indian history could, we may be sure, be 'a great story nobly told.' But while we are waiting for the ideal historian, we could prepare the ground for him by making honest attempts on our own to interpret and understand. For this exercise, historians of medieval India are excellent material. Let us examine them from all sides, read not only their works but their minds also, remembering at the same time that our own approach to history could be as narrow, our judgements as motivated as theirs. Such examination and self-examination will not only benefit historical study but clarify our own vision. We shall be able to see things as they really happened, and also acquire the ability to make those reasonable conjectures without which history sometimes remains a collection of unrelated facts. History is not resurrected out of dead source material; it comes to life in the mind of the historian.

M. MUJEEB
INTRODUCTION

Muslims have always had a great sense of history which could be traced to Prophet Muhammad himself. That is why from the earliest days of Islam works began to be composed on the lives of the Prophet, the Caliphs, Sultans and nobles. These were at first exclusively written in Arabic, the language of the Quran and of the intellectual classes. But from the second half of the tenth century, with the revival of Persian nationalism and the adoption of Persian language and culture by the Turkish dynasties, historical works began to be written in Persian, too. When the Muslims came to India, they brought with them the Persian tradition of history writing, and it was kept up by the emigrants from Persia and Central Asia. From the eleventh to the eighteenth centuries, therefore, a huge mass of historical literature consisting of general, dynastic, and regional histories, biographies and memoirs, was produced.

It is these historical writings in Persian which have served as the main source for the history of medieval India. Unfortunately, they have not been properly assessed and studied with reference to their author’s social, cultural and religious backgrounds, methods, forms of expression and concept of history. This has resulted in an incomplete and distorted picture of the past.

It was in 1956 that the first attempt to study Indian historians was made at a conference organised by the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London. But the section on medieval India formed only a small part of it. The first major systematic work to appear on the subject was Peter Hardy’s Historians of Medieval India in 1960. Although it has opened the way to the study of medieval historians, its scope is very limited—it deals only with five historians of the period—and it has all the shortcomings of a pioneer work. The Department of Indian History and Culture, Jamia Millia, therefore, proposed to hold a seminar and discuss further some of the problems of medieval historiography. The University Grants Commission made a generous grant, which enabled the organisation of the seminar and the publication of this volume. The topics at the seminar were grouped under the following headings:

1. Historians of the pre-Sultanate Period
2. Historians of the Sultanate of Delhi
3. Historians of the Provincial Dynasties
4. Mughal Historians
5. Historians in non-Persian languages
6. Modern Historians of Medieval India.

Although the present volume, as is evident from the titles, covers a sufficiently wide field and long period, still important gaps have remained. However, by bringing out the trends and methods of some leading medieval and modern historians of medieval India, and by pointing out the significance of the sources in Indian languages, this work will, it is hoped, enable the student to have a better insight into an understanding of medieval India and to avoid the pitfalls into which his predecessors had fallen while writing about it.

It has been pointed out at the outset that the Muslims have always been conscious of the past. The same, however, cannot be said of the Hindus. The only part of India where a tradition of historical writing is known to have existed in the pre-Sultanate period is Kashmir. This was because of the persistence of Buddhism in the Valley with its greater historical sense than Brahmanism, and also because of the influence of the Greek, Chinese and Islamic cultures. This explains why Kalhana’s *Rajatarangini* ‘is unique as the only attempt at true history in the whole of surviving Sanskrit literature.’ It is true that Kalhana suffers from many limitations. He bases his account on traditions and legends, and tries to explain events by supernatural causes like *Karma*, fate, witchcraft. But he also makes use of written records and inscriptions, and in his last two books gives other causal explanations. Kalhana had an analytical mind, and showed evidence of historical understanding. But his successors, Jonaraja, Shrivara, Prajayabhatta and Shuka, who tried to emulate him, did not reveal the same grasp of historical processes.

The period of the Sultanate of Delhi and the local dynasties is extremely rich in historical writings. But to use these properly it is necessary to have a clear understanding of the mentality of the men who wrote them. The first question that arises is, why did they write at all? The answer is that they wrote for different reasons, for fame, for reward, for pleasing their patrons, for the edification of their contemporaries and the future generations, for preserving the memory of the achievements of Muslim rulers and for justifying the ways of God to man.

The medieval historians took their craft seriously and held a very high view of history. Barani, for instance, considered history
and the *Ilm-ul-Hadīs* as twins, and believed that a historian should be devoted to truth and should eschew exaggerations and verbose language. But unfortunately, because most of the medieval historians were connected with the court, they were not only not able to write what they felt to be true, they indulged in panegyrics of their patrons. Besides, many of them, like Minhaj-us-Siraj, Hasan Nizami, Amir Khusrau and Barani were of aristocratic origin which led them to weave their story round kings and nobles and ignore the life and conditions of the common people. Furthermore, since they were orthodox Muslims and lived in an age when men’s minds were dominated by religion, they adopted an idiom and technique which would make their narrative intelligible and appealing to their readers. This explains why they tried to depict the medieval rulers as champions of Islam and to prove this they indulged in gross exaggerations and rhetoric. Their statements should not, therefore, be taken too literally. It is necessary to go beneath the surface of their verbose and hyperbolic language to get at the truth. They furnish, as Peter Hardy observes, the raw material of history, but it has to be processed and refined before being turned into the finished product.

The medieval historians constantly refer to God as the final cause of all happenings. But this was inevitable in a society dominated by the Asharite theology. However, this does not mean that material factors were entirely ignored. Many instances can be cited to show that medieval writers do try to explain events in terms of human factors—court intrigues, administrative measures, foreign policies or ambitions of kings and nobles. After all, despite their religious pretensions, they were worldly men writing about worldly things for worldly men to promote worldly aims.

What the medieval historians lack most is an understanding of the social and economic forces that bring about vital changes in societies and fall of kingdoms. However, it would not be correct to say that they ‘treat history as a sequence of events, often isolated and without obvious relationships.’ The historical writings of the period reveal that the medieval historians—and this includes the Mughal historians also—were conscious of change and of relationships between ideas, events and institutions of one reign with those of another. The very fact that many of them were not content to write merely the history of a single reign, but wrote accounts of dynasties, shows that they were aware of the social, political and religious developments and relationships between events.
INTRODUCTION

When we come to the Mughal period, we find a qualitative change in historical writings. The person who was responsible for this was Abul Fazl, the friend and adviser of Akbar. Abul Fazl no doubt has many limitations. His language is ornate and verbose; he exalts Akbar’s virtues but glosses over his faults; he is so much engrossed in describing the achievements of his master that he ignores the life and conditions of the common man; he is, like Barani and Badauni, intensely subjective, but unlike them he does not reflect the spirit of his age. However, despite all this, it was Abul Fazl who for the first time rebelled against the accepted technique and trend of history writing and struck a new path. He was the first Indian historian to adopt a rational and secular approach to history. He does not regard history as allied to theological studies, but tries to establish a close relationship between history and philosophy. To him Indian history does not consist in a conflict between Hindus and Muslims, but between the forces of stability and disintegration—the former represented by the Mughal government and the latter by the zamindars. He does not accept the traditional view of his predecessors that Indian history should concern itself only with the achievements of Muslim rulers, but believes that it should also describe the history, philosophy and religion of the Hindus. He extended the evidential basis of his works by consulting the archival records and other accounts, whether written or oral, and accepting them only after carefully weighing and sifting. His technique was followed by Abdul Hamid Lahori and Khafi Khan and other historians of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries; but they made no significant contribution to historiography.

The study of medieval Indian history along modern lines was started by British scholars in the late eighteenth century, and the first phase of this study lasted till about the middle of the nineteenth century. The British historians of medieval India were influenced by the methods, trends and ideas of contemporary historical writings in Britain. Although they assumed the superiority of the social, political and cultural institutions of the West, their approach—this is particularly true of Dow, Duff, Erskine and Elphinstone—was, on the whole, sympathetic. Some of them, like John Briggs, were against dogmatic judgements, and held the view that there was not enough evidence available for pronouncing moral judgements on India’s past. They were not only interested in wars and conquests, but also in administration, social customs, religious beliefs and the influence of Islam on Hinduism. And they laid stress not only on
Persian historical works and European travellers' accounts, but also on firmans, literary sources, and archaeological evidence for writing a history of medieval India.

With Elphinstone closes the liberal phase of the history of British historical writing on medieval India. Elliot, who initiated the second phase, had a very poor opinion of medieval historians; he had also not only no sympathy for and understanding of India's medieval past, but adopted a prejudiced and even a contemptuous attitude towards it. His example was followed by the subsequent British historians, who ignored the healthier trends and methods of contemporary European historiography. Since most of them were administrators, they narrowed down the scope of history to politics and administration, ignoring other aspects of life and failing to understand the workings of human society. They mainly relied upon Persian historical works and European travellers' accounts, which they accepted without making any effort to analyse, interpret and understand.

As regards the Soviet historians, they have only recently started taking interest in medieval India, particularly the Mughal period. But their interest in it is only subsidiary: it is the outcome of their desire to understand better some of the aspects of modern Indian history which have roots in the past. Although they are doing valuable work, their investigations suffer from three drawbacks. Firstly, their application of Marxist ideas to Indian conditions is somewhat rigid. Secondly, they select only such examples from the Mughal history as support their theories. Thirdly, they rely mainly upon the European travellers' accounts and the published Persian texts and their English translations, ignoring the large body of unpublished manuscripts and records which throw considerable light on the economic history of the Mughal period.

Historical writing on medieval India in Urdu started in the early part of the nineteenth century. But the first original work to be written was Sir Sayyid Ahmed Khan's Asur-i-Sanadid in 1849. Sir Sayyid's models were the works of medieval historians; and it was only later that he acquainted himself with western techniques of history writing. These he seems to have applied in editing various Persian historical texts. Unfortunately, however, his career as a historian was cut short owing to his preoccupation with the Aligarh movement.

Two other writers who deserve to be mentioned are Zakaullah and Shibli. Zakaullah wrote extensively, but he lacked critical
judgement and merely paraphrased the writings of medieval historians. Shibli wrote much more about the past of Islam outside India than about Islam in India. However, the little that he wrote, he wrote as an apologist. Although he claimed to believe that a historian should be devoted to truth and objectivity and laid down certain principles for the guidance of historians, he himself did not follow the principles of scientific historiography.

The Indian scholars who began the study of medieval India along western lines in English in the early part of the nineteenth century, followed in the footsteps of the British historians of medieval India. It was only from the late nineteen-twenties that some of them, influenced by nationalist ideas and imbibing the latest trends in European historiography, began to adopt new methods of research and open up new fields of investigation. In recent years, Indian historical writing on medieval India has made further progress under the influence of historians like Sir Lewis Namier, Marc Bloch and Lefebvre. But it has yet to be fully realised that the history of medieval India cannot be properly reconstructed unless and until the medieval historical works are studied with reference to the spirit of the medieval age and the social and religious background, the psychology, the habits of thought and techniques of medieval historians. If the present volume can stimulate thinking along these lines, the purpose of the seminar will have been served.

M. HASAN
CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foreword</td>
<td>Muhammad Mujeeb</td>
<td>vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>Mohibbul Hasan</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Historical Ideas of Kalhana as expressed in the Rajatarangini</td>
<td>Romila Thapar</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fazlullah Rashid-ud-Din Abul Khair</td>
<td>Buddha Prakash</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amir Khusrau as a Historian</td>
<td>Syed Hasan Askari</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ziya-ud-Din Barani</td>
<td>K. A. Nizami</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical Writing in Medieval Kashmir</td>
<td>Mohibbul Hasan</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Mirat-i-Sikandari of Shaikh Sikandar and its Predecessors</td>
<td>S. C. Misra</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirza Nathan—A Memoir of the 17th Century</td>
<td>Qeyamuddin Ahmad</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contemporary Histories of the Qutb Shahi Dynasty of Golkonda</td>
<td>H. K. Sherwani</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babur</td>
<td>Pushpa Suri</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badauni</td>
<td>Muhammad Mujeeb</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Alfi</td>
<td>S. A. A. Rizvi</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaikh Abul Fazl</td>
<td>Noman Ahmad Siddiqi</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persian Historiography in India during the 18th Century</td>
<td>Zahiruddin Malik</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Comparative Study of the Historical Approach of Muhammad Qasim and Khafi Khan</td>
<td>Muhammad Umar</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal History of some Medieval Historians and their Writings</td>
<td>Jagadish Narayan Sarkar</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A SURVEY AND GENERAL ESTIMATE
OF THE IMPORTANCE OF HISTORICAL SOURCES IN REGIONAL Languages, WITH REFERENCE TO RAJASTHAN AND GUJARAT

P. Saran 198

SOME NON-MUSLIM SOURCES OF THE HISTORY OF THE PUNJAB DURING THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD

Ganda Singh 209

CHARACTERISTICS OF EARLY BRITISH HISTORICAL WRITING ON MEDIEVAL INDIA

J. S. Grewal 225

SIR SAYYID AND MAULANA SHIBLI

Z. H. Faruqi 234

SOME SOVIET HISTORIANS OF MUGHAL INDIA

Surendra Gopal 242

ANANDA COOMARASWAMY AS A HISTORIAN OF RAJPUT PAINTING

B. N. Goswami 258

HENRY GEORGE KEENE

K. K. Sharma 271

SARKAR AND MORELAND ON MUGHAL LAND REVENUE ADMINISTRATION

B. R. Grover 274

Index 283
THE HISTORICAL IDEAS OF KALHANA AS EXPRESSED IN THE RAJATARANGINI

ROMILA THAPAR

Kalhana wrote his chronicle of the history of Kashmir which he entitled the *Rajatarangini* in the year 4224 of the Laukika Era, which works out to A.D. 1148–49. He is described as ‘the son of the great Kashmiri minister, the illustrious Lord Campaka’ in the colophon. It has been suggested that Campaka was the minister to King Harsha of Kashmir (A.D. 1089–1101). This seems very likely as it would have given Kalhana the required access to matters political and bureaucratic upon which he evidently bases much of his historical analysis of the medieval history of Kashmir. Had he been a mere litterateur this analysis may have formed a minor part of the narrative or may have been omitted altogether, as frequently happened in the writings of some of his near contemporaries. The literary form of the chronicle is however that of the *kavya* (a poem).

The *Rajatarangini* is a long, narrative poem relating the history of Kashmir from earliest times to the twelfth century A.D. It is based on traditions, legends, written records and inscriptions. Kalhana explains that he has painstakingly collected popular traditions associated with places of historical interest. He has also consulted major works written on the region such as, the *Nilamata-purana*, Kshemendra’s *Nṛpavali*, Helaraja’s *Parthivavali*, the *Chavillakara*, etc. Of these the *Nilamata-purana* is easily the most important traditional source on the early history of Kashmir, although as an accurate historical source it suffers from the same weaknesses as other Puranic sources. The *Mahatmyas* were another interesting source, being the handbooks of the family priests at various places of pilgrimage. The *Vitastamahatmya*, for example, mentions the important places of pilgrimage along the Vitasta or Jhelum river in Kashmir and relates the historical events (as handed down in the tradition) connected with these places.

Kalhana’s use of inscriptions as source material is a strikingly original element in his historical writing. He refers to inscriptions found in temples, the *prashastis* (eulogies) on past kings, the inscrip-
tions referring to grants, mainly of land or revenue, made by earlier rulers. The reference to inscriptions in itself is not what is so important as the fact that he uses the information they contain as a legitimate source of history.

Kalhana was aware of the functions of historical writing and declares that his purpose in writing the chronicle is multiple: to try and establish the true chronology and succession of the kings of Kashmir, to write a readable narrative on the past, and to provide a commentary on the past which would lead his readers to reflect on the nature and impermanence of life. In the last of these we find evidence of his philosophy of history.

Kalhana was deeply imbued with the idea of dharma and for him historical events were basically the unfolding of the whole system of dharma in its religious, social and even legal manifestations. It meant not only the adherence to the traditions of religion, but also the upholding of the social institutions as prescribed in the shastras. But fortunately Kalhana was not dogmatic on this point as we shall see. The theory of karma evidently also had its own role to play in history. The influence of previous births on the present life-time of a ruler frequently provided a comfortable way out of difficult explanations. It was often used by other contemporary writers as well to account for many actions on the part of kings and statesmen. Linked to the idea of karma was the importance given to the role of Fate in human events. Kalhana does not resort to the interference of Fate all that often, but now and again it comes up. For instance, a number of reasons are given as to why king Harsha of Kashmir finally weakened and lost to his enemies, and the power of Fate is one among these. Associated with the above is the belief in Divine Retribution, especially in the case of evil kings. This attitude arises, in part, out of the inability of a people to overthrow a wicked king. But complementary to Divine Retribution is Divine Pleasure, which can be acquired through pious acts of merit, such as generous donations to brahmans. The use of witch-craft, particularly as a means of revenge, is not excluded amongst the many possible historical explanations of events.

Not surprisingly, Kalhana does not hesitate to draw moral lessons from the past. But at the same time it must be remembered that he was writing in a period of great stress, civil war and political confusion, when it was almost incumbent upon writers to point to the dangers that resulted from similar conditions in the past and warn against them even at the expense of being moralistic and
didactic. It was, perhaps, also the fear of what might happen to the future of Kashmir, should the civil war continue that led to a lurking reliance on the supernatural.

Kalhana's ideas on the writing of history were directly influenced by two main streams of the Indian tradition which were concerned with recording the past: the Brahmanical and the Buddhist. Ideas relating to the brahmanical tradition can be culled from the epics, the Puranas and the historical biographies of the post-Gupta period, such as Bana's Harshacharita, etc. None of these works indicate a particularly sharp consciousness about time. The past extends back in a cosmological series of mystical figures. Genealogies are carefully worked out but the overall concept of placing them accurately in the past, in terms of time sequences, is not given the same attention. The historical sections in the Puranas are treated almost as a continuation of the mythological sections. The fact that they are written in the form of a prophecy when clearly they refer to events which have happened in the past, further detracts from their treatment as events of history. The idea of dharma provided the philosophical and social framework. If the system of varna-ashrama-dharma was observed then all events were explainable within this system. The emphasis was on the group—the family, the caste, the tribe, etc., and not on the individual.

The Buddhist tradition was significantly different. There is clear consciousness about time, which is related to and hinges around the central event of the Buddhist past—the Mahaparinirvana—which in historical terms is the date of the death of the Buddha. The reckoning in the two chronicles of Ceylon, the Dipavamsa and the Mahavamsa is based on this event. Although the idea of karma is accepted, the role of the individual's karma in his society is also considered. The past has both moral and social lessons to teach. The fact that Buddhism was an actively proselytising religion and missionaries were sent to various parts of Asia, required the keeping of accurate records of teachers and of missions. These in turn became the bases for much historical thinking and writing.

The influence of both these traditions of thinking on the writing of Kalhana can be seen in the gradual change which is noticeable in the Rajatarangini. The earlier part of the chronicle is not only based on brahmanical material but carries the impress of the same historical framework. The first three books are evidently based on semi-historical material, relying heavily on texts such as the Nilamataapurana. The fourth book covers the
period of the Karkota dynasty and brings the narrative up to about the eighth century A.D. Clearly here, there was the additional use of the northern Buddhist tradition since the historical basis of the narrative becomes more marked. There is some evidence on this period of the history of Kashmir available in the Annals of the Tang Dynasty of China. (We are told for instance that Tchen-tolo-pi-li, believed to be king Candrapida, asked for assistance against the Arabs in c. 713, presumably when Sind was invaded by the latter and there was a threat to the regions around the upper reaches of the Indus). If communication with China was so close at this time (and there seems no good reason to doubt this), then perhaps some trickle of the Chinese emphasis on keeping records and dynastic chronicles may have found its way into the historical traditions of Kashmir. The next three books (five to seven) show a marked tendency towards trying to understand historical events in their context and seeking explanations other than the generally accepted explanations based on dharma, karma, etc. A number of new causative factors are introduced (as we shall see) which suggest that the author wished to probe further into the historical past and not merely restrict himself to providing information. The maturity of Kalhana’s historical thinking is made evident in the last book of the Rajatarangini (Book Eight) which is by far the lengthiest and deals with the period preceding his own, a period which obviously he was most familiar with. Not surprisingly the quality of analysis is significantly different from that in the earlier books.

The chronicle takes the reader right back to the beginnings of Kashmir to geological times when the valley of Kashmir was an inland lake. Finally it was dredged through the opening of a gorge above Baramula and this, in the traditional sources, is naturally ascribed to a supernatural agency. The earliest kings of Kashmir such as Gonada I, are associated with the epic heroes and traditional history as recorded in the Puranas. Thus Gonada I is related to Jarasandha and plays his part in the various battles of the Mahabharata. This is clearly based on the account in the Nilamata-purana, which would naturally try and link the traditional kings of Kashmir with the traditional history of the major Puranas. Again, Kashmir is brought into the orbit of the history of India by reference to the reign of Ashoka, the Mauryan emperor, as a ruler of Kashmir. Reference is made to his building stupas and to establishing the city of Srinagar. This is clearly based on accounts in Buddhist sources, since the Puranas merely list Ashoka as one of the Mauryan
kings and say no more.

In the earlier books, supernatural causes are given an important role. Thus we are told that famine comes because of the will of the gods. The queen prays to the gods and slowly the conditions of scarcity recede. Even more fantastic is the story of the resurrection of Sandhimata. He is banished, then imprisoned and put to death by the king. The witches come and put his bones together into a skeleton and revive him, after which he becomes the successor to king Jayendra. Here it is not only the supernatural which is involved but also the power of Fate, since we are told that Sandhimata was fated to become king of Kashmir and to deliver the land from a number of evil practices. The timely death of king Vijayamalla, crushed by an avalanche just when he and the feudal lords were planning an attack on king Harsha, is another example of the interference of Fate. The increasing popularity of Buddhism annoys both the brahmins and the Nagas (the local cult deities). In order to check this the Nagas send down excessive snow at a particular time which the brahmins cleverly use against the Buddhists. One of the more curious incidents is related in the fourth book. We are told that the king Lalitaditya was famous for the fact that he collected a number of wise men around him. One of them was the Tukhara (central Asian) called Cankuna. On a certain occasion he used a charm on the turbulent waters of a river of the Punjab, causing the waters to separate and leave a clear path in the middle for the army to cross. One wonders whether an echo of the story of Moses and the Red Sea had found its way to Kashmir.

Human action, *karma* and the merit acquired from this and previous births, *punya*, are also seen as a part of the historical process. A king, no matter how good his intention, can be thwarted in his work by his own lack of *punya* or that of his subjects. This does not necessarily suggest that the king should therefore be inactive, but rather it is an attempt to explain the obstacles which may beset the working out of a good intention.

The seventh and eighth books represent the later phase of Kalhana’s historical thinking. Here the supernatural element and the emphasis on the role of Fate are by no means denied, but owing to other causal explanations they tend to recede somewhat into the background. Historical events are now discussed from many points of view—the personalities involved and their ambitions, weaknesses and power; the emergence of feudatories and their relationship with
the king; the role of the Damaras and the brahmans in Kashmiri politics; the economic conditions of Kashmir. In writing on the eleventh and twelfth centuries Kalhana was writing on his own period and was familiar with the multiple facets that go into the making of an historical situation. That he recognised the multiplicity of causes is all to his credit.

In reflecting on the decline of King Harsha, he mentions that the planets at his birth were ill-disposed towards him and consequently luck was not on his side. But he adds that Harsha was weak because he avoided battles, and in those conditions battles were the obvious means of settling many problems. Furthermore he lacked independent judgement, particularly of men, and appointed the wrong kind of persons as ministers and then relied on their advice. Another source of weakness in a king, which is deplorable, is when he comes under the influence of a scheming woman.

The medieval political history of Kashmir was dominated by two court factions, both of a military nature, the Tantrins and the Ekangas. In the first half of the tenth century, they made and unmade rulers. Their manipulation of court politics is carefully described. In the succeeding century, the centres of power were no longer only the king and the ministers but included a number of Damaras. The word is peculiar to Kashmir and appears to have been a tribal name in origin. Judging by the description in the Rajatarangini they soon became feudal landowners. They appear to have acquired their land through service tenures and gradually made themselves extremely powerful in the fertile parts of the valley. Their social status is apparent by the fact that they acquired wives from among the Rajputs or else often married into the royal family. They were evidently a serious source of opposition to the king and the history of Kashmir during this period is full of incidents relating to the Damaras.

When discussing administration, Kalhana totally disapproves of the activities of the kayasthas, to whom he attributes a large share of the misfortunes of the state. The kayasthas were the scribes and recorders and consequently the backbone of the administration of the state. The kayasthas, writes Kalhana, are not only responsible for much of the political intrigue but even worse, they encourage the kings to oppress their subjects and thus cause disaffection throughout the land. King Sankaravarman (in the ninth century) is described as ‘the foremost among fools and sons of slaves’ for heeding the advice of the kayasthas, who suggest that he plunder the tem-
ples and oppress his subjects in order to extract more money from the land. The Damaras and the kayasthas between them are bleeding the people dry.

Perhaps some of the venom directed against the kayasthas by Kalhana may have been due to professional jealousy. Many of the higher positions in administration were traditionally the preserve of the brahmans and possibly the entry of the kayasthas into these positions (such as collectors of revenue and treasurers) was resented. It must be said to Kalhana’s credit that he was also critical (although not equally critical) of the official brahman organisations such as the purohitā parishads. These were corporate groups formed by the purohitas attached to certain temples and places of pilgrimage. The group became the joint owner of all the property endowed to the temple and the income from donations. The members of such a parishad were, therefore, very well-off materially and were often very powerful politically. Kalhana saw them as another source of interference in the running of the state. Yet his ire against the purohitā parishads was somewhat softened by his unquestioning acceptance of the theory that a good king must liberally endow the brahman community in his land.

Kalhana endorsed the role of the brahman as enunciated in traditional political theory at every level. He recognises as agents of revolt the Tantrins and Ekangas, the Damaras, the royal princes assisted by ministers and the brahmans. He does not approve of revolts by the first three of these as they are disruptive forces. Yet he acquiesces when it comes to references to brahmans using their traditional weapon against political power, the fast against a particular king or a minister, on the assumption that the fast is always in a righteous cause, viz., the removal of an oppressive king or minister.

Kalhana early realised that there was a relationship between the political power of these various groups and their economic condition. A passage, which runs like a refrain through the second half of the chronicle, is that no village should be allowed to stock food in excess of a year’s consumption, or keep oxen beyond the number required to till the fields, since the accumulation of wealth leads to the rise of the Damaras who, in the nature of things will disobey the king. In addition, he lists as signs of trouble for a king the condition when villages have the amenities of towns, when fortifications are not adequately guarded, when officials start inter-marrying and various other similar factors.
The oppression of the people by the king and his plundering of the temples is something which Kalhana regards with great horror. An oppressive king is not to be tolerated and this is the advice of the shastras. Sankaravarman’s oppressive acts are listed at length, from plundering temples to the resumption of grants and the exaction of forced labour.\(^{22}\) One of the reasons why Harsha lost power was because he plundered the temples and even went to the extent of appointing a devotpatananayaka, an officer for the uprooting of divine images.\(^{23}\) The shastric injunction is that the king’s primary duty is to protect his people and attend to their welfare. An oppressive king therefore deserves the misfortunes which surround him.

The latter part of the historical account in the chronicle shows an unusually modern understanding of what goes into the making of historical processes. This has led to Kalhana’s writing being regarded as quite distinct from other historical works in the Sanskrit tradition. Histories of other regions were written at this time and historical biography became a frequent form of literary expression from the post-Gupta period onwards. *Vamshavalis* and genealogical accounts of the various dynasties became increasingly frequent, and many of these have yet to be worked on by modern scholars. From the material available, it is clear that in this category of literature, the *Rajatarangini* holds a position of pre-eminence.

The question arises as to why medieval Kashmir gave rise to such historical writing. A number of reasons have already been suggested.\(^{24}\) The geographical isolation of Kashmir—a valley surrounded by high mountains—led to a stronger sense of nationalism amongst its people. The persistence of Buddhism in Kashmir with its more definite sense of history than brahmanism, was another factor. Kashmir also came under the influence of a number of non-Indian cultures such as the Greek, the Chinese and possibly the Turkish, all of which again had definite historical traditions.

The geographical isolation of Kashmir was certainly a positive factor. Yet Kashmir was not totally isolated. The material remains of the culture of Kashmir shows close contacts with Gandhara and northern India, central Asia and even China.\(^{25}\) To the fact of geographical isolation should be added the corollary that the period when Kalhana wrote was one of intense regional loyalties throughout northern India. There was ample patronage available in the proliferating courts of the small kingdoms and inevitably there was a concern with local culture, local problems and local events. Each kingdom saw itself as a great kingdom in exaggerated terms but in fact
the area of reference was a parochial one. This had the advantage that it permitted the thinkers of the time to concentrate on a small canvass and work on it more intensively. The Damaras were the concern of the kings of Kashmir and not of the rest of India, and Kalhana was content to leave it at that.

The impact of Buddhism was probably a sub-conscious impact on Kalhana. The text makes it clear that he was no supporter of the Buddhist religion, but instead regarded it with great suspicion. But he must have had to consult many Buddhist texts on certain sections of the history of Kashmir. The recording of some of these traditions in Kashmir itself (at the monastic centres) must also have contributed to creating a more real sense of the past. Similarly the influence of the Greek, the Chinese and the Islamic (as available via the central Asian Turks) historical tradition need not have come through a direct knowledge of Greek, Chinese and Turkish historical writing, but rather through a familiarity with the cultural ethos which produced such writing, both as something of the past (the Greek) and something contemporary (the Chinese and the Turkish). Kalhana nowhere indicates familiarity with any of these languages or their literatures, so the influence must have come about through a process of cultural osmosis.

Credit must also be given to the man himself, writing as he was at a particular time in history. None of the earlier accounts of Kashmir which Kalhana used as sources, nor for that matter the post-Kalhana chronicles, show evidence of the same historical understanding as does the Rajatarangini. The later historians and chroniclers such as Jonaraja, Shrivara, Prajnyabhatta and Shuka, who were subject to the same influences, do not reveal the same grasp of historical processes. Kalhana was obviously a man with an analytical mind, which the later writers were not. He was writing the history of a state which at that time was passing through its moments of decline, which in itself must have given rise to considerable introspection and questioning in the mind of a sensitive and thoughtful person. Kalhana himself belonged to a ministerial family which had once held power but had gradually lost it. He was thus familiar with the forces which go into the making of politics and history but was not a part of them. He could look upon the situation with the perspective of an outsider, but at the same time retaining the insights of one who is a part of the situation. Having once decided not to write a sycophant's history, he could afford to probe impersonally into many of the existing conditions.
Finally, perhaps the greatest advantage that regions such as Kashmir derived from being opened up to Buddhist, Greek, Chinese and Turkish influences was that in the Indian tradition these were non-orthodox or foreign influences and could therefore nurture non-orthodox thinking. This is not to suggest that Kalhana wrote his history because he was a non-conformist. He was not. As we have seen there are many aspects of his writing which adhere closely to orthodox thinking on the subject. It is rather to suggest that Kalhana was not a man with a closed mind, and this after all, is an essential qualification for a good historian.

REFERENCES

2. The standard edition of the Rajatarangini edited by Sir M. A. Stein has been used in this paper (Bombay 1892). The references given are to the book number and the verse number of the original text. For the sake of consistency, where translations are given, they are from Stein's translation of the text in Kalhana's Rajatarangini, a Chronicle of the Kings of Kashmir, (Westminster 1900).
3. e. g. Bilhana's Vikramankadevacharita.
4. VII. 1715
5. II. 17–55
6. II. 92
7. VII. 916–17
8. I. 179
9. IV. 248–51
10. I. 158
11. VII. 1715
12. VII. 449
13. V. 248, V. 255, V. 259, VI. 121
14. VII. 494 sq.
15. VIII. 258
16. IV. 621–31, VII. 1226, VIII. 89–94
17. V. 180–1
18. II. 132, V. 465, VIII. 900
19. VIII. 76
20. VII. 13, VII. 400, VIII. 890–900, VIII. 2224.
21. IV. 347–8
22. V. 165–77
23. VII. 1087–1091
25. The Neolithic site of Burzahoma, the Buddhist site of Harwan and the temple of Martanda, are all indicative of such contacts.
26. I. 177
FAZLULLAH RASHID-UD-DIN ABUL KHAIR
Buddha Prakash

Rashid-ud-Din was born in Hamadan in 1247. He studied medicine and acquired so much proficiency in it that the Il-khan Abaqa appointed him the court physician. During the reign of Ghazan his fame rose high and, in 1298, he was made the prime minister. In 1303, he accompanied Ghazan on an expedition and conducted his Arabic correspondence. At the time of Ujaitu Khuda-banda his prestige rose even higher. A suburb of the new capital Sultaniyya was named after him as Rashidiyya, and many magnificent buildings, mosques, schools and hospitals were built there. In 1309, he founded another town called Rab-i-Rashidi, near the tomb of Ghazan to the east of Tabriz, and got a canal, cut through the rocks at tremendous cost, to bring water of the Saravrud river. It was divided into many sectors, having 30,000 houses, with a separate sector called kucha i-ulama where six or seven thousand scholars and students lived. Its bazaars consisted of 1500 shops, it had 24 caravansarais and numerous gardens, mosques, baths, godowns, factories, paper mills and a mint. In its hospital (dar-us shifa) worked many physicians and surgeons from India, China, Egypt and Mesopotamia, and each one of them had to teach five students. The grand building of the library of that city was a wonder of that age. According to the Tarikh-i-Wassaf a sum of 60,000 dinars was spent on the calligraphy, illustration, binding etc. of his (Rashid-ud-Din’s) books. But his career was not smooth. A quarrel started between him and Ali Shah which touched off an intrigue against him in the court. In October, 1317, Abu Said Khan deposed him and on July 18, 1318, sentenced him to death. All his public works were set at naught, and it was given out that by birth he was a Jew. Hence Timur’s son, Miranshah, got his body taken out of his grave and interred in the graveyard of the Jews. In this way this great man was disparaged.

Rashid-ud-Din was a great scholar and prolific writer of his age. Among his works the most important are: the Jami-ut-Tawarikh with a world-geography appended to it, which relates the history of the world; the Kitab-ul-Ahya-wal-Athar (treatise on buildings and
animals), which deals with agriculture, botany, mining and metallurgy, animal husbandry, invertebrate zoology, metereology, architecture, fortification, ship building etc. in 24 chapters; the Tauzihat (Explanations), which contains discussions on theology and mysticism in 19 letters and an introduction; the Miftah-ul-Tafasir (Key to Commentaries), which offers a penetrating study of good and evil, heaven and hell, fate and destiny and many other questions about the Quran, and refutes such views as transmigration and metempsychosis; the Risalai-i-Sultaniyya (Royal Book), which is an anthology of the discourses on theology delivered to Uljaitu in the Ramazan of 1307; Lataif-ul-Haqaiq (Deeper Truth), which is a collection of 14 letters on various theological problems; Bayan-ul-Haqaiq (Description of Truth), which has 17 letters treating theology, small-pox and varieties of heat. Besides these books, he wrote four treatises on medicine and Mongol administration and got them published in Arabic, Persian and Chinese editions, which are now lost. Some manuscripts of his 53 letters, entitled Munshat, are however available. These letters were addressed to his sons and other officials and relate to political and financial affairs. They throw much light on contemporary events and administrative conditions. Letter no. 34 was written to his son, Khwaja Majd-ud-Din, to communicate an order to make military preparations for an invasion of India. It shows that attempts were being made for an expedition against India. Letter no. 29 was sent by him to Maulana Qutb-ud-Din Masud of Shiraz from Multan in Sindh, and contains a description of his journey in India, which he undertook at the instance of the Il-khan to establish diplomatic contacts with Indian rulers, and as a result of which he acquired the knowledge of many drugs and medicines not known in Iran. This journey must have kindled his interest in Indian life and culture and given him an opportunity to study it. These letters show the unique calibre and broad outlook of this scholar and the vast range of his interests and pursuits.

Rashid-ud-Din took pains to publish and preserve his books. He got his Arabic books translated into Persian, and Persian works rendered into Arabic, and his medical writings issued in Chinese, and deposited many of their copies in the library of Rab-i-Rashidi. Besides this he got all his writings collected under the heading Jami-ut-Tasanif-ar-Rashidi, had it furnished with maps and pictures and appendices and placed it in the said library. Every year two copies of each of these works were prepared on the quality paper of Baghdad at state expense, and sent free of cost to the
famous libraries of the Islamic world. Everybody was allowed to copy these books in the library. But, in spite of these efforts, many of his books were lost due to the carelessness of his countrymen.

An estimate of Rashid-ud-Din’s love of learning can be formed from the fact that his library had 60,000 volumes on poetry, history and science, including 100 choice scripts of the Quran done by eminent calligraphists. This explains his anxiety to take steps for the preservation of his encyclopaedic writings.

Though Rashid-ud-Din wrote on a variety of subjects, the pillar of his fame is his Jami-ut-Tawarikh. The first part of it is a history of the Turks and the Mongols and a detailed account of happenings from Chingiz Khan to Ghazan Khan, and its second part contains the succession from Adam to the Prophet, the story of Iran before the advent of Islam, the annals of the Caliphate till the invasion of Hulagu, the chronicle of Persian dynasties following that period and the history of the Jews, Franks, China and India, with a long account of Shakyamuni Buddha and his religion. In writing the history of the Mongols he drew on the data furnished by Ghazan Khan and Pulad Ching Chang. In the account of China he received information from two Chinese scholars, Li-ta-chi and Mak-sun. About the Franks he learnt a lot from a merchant of Pisa, named Iolus, and in his work on India he was assisted by the Buddhist scholar from Kashmir, Kamalashri. Thus, this book is the first expression of an international consciousness of human history. Speaking of it, Rashid-ud-Din observes:

‘When Chingiz Khan, his noble family and great descendants acquired universal sovereignty, all the countries of the world, Chin and Machin (South China), Khitai (North China), Hind and Sindh, Mughalistan, Turkistan, Sham (Mesopotamia) Rum, As (Alain), Rus (Russia), Sirkas, Kipchak, Kalar, Bashkir, in one word, all countries of the four quarters became subject to him. Chingiz Khan gave a uniform shape to the world and instilled in the hearts of all men the feeling of equality. Now that the world from one end to the other is under one or the other branch of the Chingiz-khanids, the philosophers, astronomers, scholars and historians (hukama wa munajjiman wa arbab-i-danish wa ashab-i-tawarikh) of all sects and religions (adyan-wa-milal) connected with Khitai, ancient India, Kashmir, Tibet, Uighur and other people like the Turks, Arabs, Franks are before our eyes in large numbers and everyone of them has books containing the history, chronology and religious thought of those countries and they are also conversant with these
subjects."

The Jami-ut-Tawarikh is an embodiment and expression of this international atmosphere and cosmopolitan outlook of the Mongol period. In this paper we propose to deal briefly with the section on India given in this work. This section consists of two parts (qism) divided into ten and twenty chapters (fasl) respectively. Appended to the second part (qism) is a risala devoted to the refutation of the doctrine of transmigration and metempsychosis (tanasukh, naskh). The first four chapters of the first part are based on the Kitab-ul-Hind of al-Biruni and give general information on India. Part of the fifth chapter, dealing with the chronicle of the kings of Delhi (dar tarikh-i-salatin-i-Dilli), is derived from al-Biruni and Juzjani, and here Rashid-ud-Din has also something to say of his own. The sixth chapter on Kashmir contains entirely new information regarding the history of Kashmir, especially in the Mongol period. Chapters 7 to 10 dealing with the four ages or yugas and the kings, who reigned in them, are quite original. The second part deals in 20 chapters with the life and teachings of Gautama Buddha. It is a unique work on Buddhism in the Persian language.

Coming now to the new information on Indian history that we get from Rashid-ud-Din, we may begin by saying that he has seen India through Buddhist glasses, just as al-Biruni has done from the orthodox brahman stand-point. In the account of King Harishchandra of the Krta age, it is stated that he, with his wife and son, is "at the same stage of metempsychosis as Shakyamuni." This was the period of the rule of the kings of the Iksvaku family. The Treta age is marked by the reigns of Dilipa and his son Raghu. The latter had a daughter Sundaravati who married Brahma’s son Vālak or dīk (?) and bore him a son without her father’s knowledge. That son claimed the kingdom, whereupon Raghu cursed him to go to hell. There he served the inmates and ultimately rose up to Bodhisattva Avolokiteshvara (Amita Burkhan). This story is unknown in the Indian legendary accounts and may have been borrowed from some Buddhist source. Then follows the story of the Ramayana in a brief form. The account of Dvapar-yug opens with the story of the fight between Kartavriya and Parashurama and goes on to describe the events of the time of the Kauravas and the Pandavas leading to the war of the Mahabharata. The history of the Kali-yug starts with the ascent of Yudhishthira to heaven and the division of his empire among his descendants, among whom the Shakyas founded the town of Kapilavastu and produced Shuddhodana and
his son Gautama Buddha. Here again, the attempt to connect the family of the Kauravas and Pandavas to that of the Buddha shows the Buddhist outlook of Rashid-ud-Din. Then comes the history of the Nandas and Mauryas of Magadha. In it the author describes Chandragupta as a scion of the earlier Nanda dynasty. About him he gives an information not known from any other source, namely, that his ministers assassinated his queen, since he neglected the affairs of the state on account of his excessive love for her. About Chandragupta’s successor, Bindusara, he says that he had two sons by a brahman queen, Ashoka and Vigatashoka. The king wanted to appoint the elder son, but the ministers appointed the younger one till the return of the others from the battle front. But in the meantime, he conducted himself so well as to outshine his brothers. Hence the government remained in his hands, and his younger brother Vigatashoka became a brahman. Then Rashid-ud-Din skips over the period of six hundred years after Ashoka and comes to the time of Shri Harshadeva of Kashmir. It is said that a poet of his court coveted one of his wives; he gave that woman to him and charged both of them to go to Turkistan. Their descendants are the Mongols. This is a quaint device to connect the Mongols with India. Probably this was an ingenious invention of the minds of those Kashmiri Buddhists, who, in order to win the favour of their Mongol masters, concocted an Indian ancestry for them. The Mongols or Tatars invaded Kashmir when Vikramaditya was ruling over India. He inflicted a defeat on them. Here, obviously, we have a reference to Chandragupta Vikramaditya of the Gupta dynasty and his fight with the Shaka invaders described in the Devichandragupta of Vishakhadatta. Then Rashid-ud-Din refers to Lalitaditya Muktapida of Kashmir and calls him Iskandar. Here also we note the tendency to establish a parallelism between Indian and Western conquerors. The most remarkable part of Rashid-ud-Din’s work is that dealing with the Mongol invasion and conquest of Kashmir. He lets us know, on the authority of Kamalashri, that during the reign of King Ramadeva in Kashmir a great Mongol army, led by Ukutu Nyon, invaded Kashmir by order of Ughad Khan, besieged the capital and conquered it. Ramadeva fled before the Mongols on his black mare, and escaped from his pursuers by a daring jump on his horse across the broad Black River, which probably refers to the Kshiptika, a tributary of the Jhelum. After this, the Mongols plundered the town continuously for six months. Then they retreated after having appointed a governor there. Seven years
later Ramadeva succeeded in expelling that governor and recovering his kingdom. At the time of Mangu Khan, another Mongol army invaded Kashmir under Salī Noyon and Takudar, plundered its cities and killed and captured its people. Ramadeva died and his son Lakshmanadeva (1273–1286) accepted the Mongol tutelage. Under his son Simhadeva (1286–1301) and then under Suhadeva (1301–1320) Kashmir seems to have been under the suzerainty of the Mongols. Commenting on this account Karl Jahn shows that Ramadeva of Rashid-ud-Din’s narrative stands for two kings, called Rajadeva, who ruled from 1212 to 1235 and 1252 to 1273 respectively. It was during the reign of the first Rajadeva that the first Mongol invasion of Kashmir took place. According to him, the credit of expelling the Mongols may really go to Rajadeva’s successor Samgramadeva (1235–1252). He has also shown that Lakshmanadeva (1273–1286) received the appointment from Qubilai Khan (1259–1294) and Abaqa Khan (1265–1282), rather than Mangu Khan and Hulagu Khan. It may well be that it was Lakshmanadeva’s predecessor who got the investiture from the Mongols, and his successors got it renewed from them. However, Rashid-ud-Din makes it plain that in the thirteenth century Kashmir passed under the suzerainty of the Mongol Il-khans of Iran.

The second part (qism) of Rashid-ud-Din’s History of India deals with the life and teachings of Buddha in 20 chapters. It is well-known that Buddhism was popular among the Mongols in the thirteenth century. Before launching his campaign against Yunnan and South China, Mangu Khan built a monumental stupa at Qaraqorum to ensure the success of his undertaking in the name of ‘Sagamoni Burcan’ the Mongol name of Shakyamuni Buddha. Hulagu, the conqueror of Bodhisattva Maitreya, Arghun (1284–1291) and Ghazan (1295–1304)—the latter before his conversion to Islam—were ardent champions and followers of this faith. In this period Iran was full of Buddhist shrines and had a large number of Buddhist priests called bakshis. The Persian historian Ala-ud-Din Ata Malik Juwaini has referred to the Buddhists as toyin, a word derived from the Chinese term tao-fen, and in his Tarikh-i-Jahan-gushai (1, 44) has praised their religion as inculcating a virtuous life. He states that among them are good teachings and injunctions resembling the views and doctrines of all prophets; among them some teach man to avoid sin and misdeeds, and doing violence to others, and enjoin on him to repay evil with good and not to indulge in cruel behaviour towards living beings. The importance of the Buddhists in Iran can
be assessed from the fact that, even after the persecution following the conversion of Ghazan to Islam in 1295, they made a bid to re-convert Uljaitu to their creed in 1309–10. However, in the first half of the fourteenth century Buddhism succumbed to the impact of Islam.

In the spread of Buddhism in the Mongol world the monks of Kashmir played an important part. Two Kashmiri monks, whose names are given in Chinese versions as Watochi and Namo, introduced Lamaism among the Mongols. Marco Polo observed that the Buddhists, led by the monks of Kashmir, were noted for their piety and wisdom. Among these monks was Kamalashri, who collaborated with Rashid-ud-Din in the compilation of his history of India and treatise on Buddhism. As a result of the work of Kamalashri and his compeers, the Buddhism of Iran was nearer to that of Kashmir than to that of Tibet. In this respect it differed from the Buddhism of the eastern Mongols, who derived their inspiration mostly from Tibetan Lamaism.

A question arises as to how and why Rashid-ud-Din gives, at the instance of Kamalashri, such a detailed treatment to Buddhism. The answer is to be found in the religious crisis in Iran in the last decade of the thirteenth and the first decade of the fourteenth century. After the conversion of Ghazan to Islam in 1295, obviously for political reasons, the Buddhists were faced with persecution, and many of their shrines were destroyed. Hence, in order to defend their position, the Buddhists were making an attempt at explaining their religion to the Muslims and emphasizing the common points between it and Islam. This is why in Rashid-ud-Din’s treatise Buddhist terms are rendered in Islamic concepts. For example, the Buddhas are described as prophets, the gods are referred to as angels, and the demons as devils and Mara is mentioned under the name of Iblis. In it, the Buddha Shakyamuni is presented as a prophet of charity and kindness in contrast to other prophets, who are marked by arrogance, egotism and self-interest. It says that before the spread of Islam the people of Mecca and Medina were Buddhists, and worshipped in the Kaba idols resembling the Buddha. It goes on to state that the people of Turkistan were originally Buddhists, and that, even after their conversion to Islam, there were many Buddhist temples in that country. According to it, Buddhism had spread to the interior of Abyssinia and some Negro countries. It makes it clear that the people of Manzi followed the Hinayana, whereas those of Tibet and Tangut were the adherents of Mahayana. The life of
Buddha, commencing from chapter IV, is more or less the same as known to Buddhist legends current in Mahayana circles, except that here and there we come across Islamic ideas, as in the reference to murids and pirs, madrasa and khangah, bihisht and the huris, and the theistic character of mabud etc. In the list of books, appended to the work, we have references to Buddha working at the command of the Exalted Creator, Allah. For example, a text says: ‘Shakyamuni said that, at the command of Allah, the Exalted, and by virtue of the testimony of the Angels, he is omniscient and miraculous and rules over all the demons’. Another treatise states: ‘Shakyamuni says that the Exalted Creator had commanded temples to be built and images of Shakyamuni to be placed in them.’ Such utterances remind one of the prophets working at the behest of the Supreme Creator, the Exalted Allah. Thus, to sum up, we observe that Rashid-ud-Din’s treatise on Buddhism reflects the tendency of the Buddhist monks, led by men like Kamalashri, to present the main tenets of Mahayana Buddhism with a tinge of Islamic concepts and without the least trace of Tantric ideas, which could be naturally abhorrent to the Muslim audience. We may presume that Kamalashri’s project of bringing out a treatise on Buddhism through Rashid-ud-Din’s work in such a way as to command itself to a people and court, recently converted to Islam, was a link in the same chain of events which culminated in the effort to win back Ulujaitu to the Buddhist fold in 1309-10.

The above summary of the contents of the section on India in Rashid-ud-Din’s Jami-ut-Tawarikh shows how important it is for some details of Indian history and the Muslim understanding of Indian culture and religion. All the data, furnished by it, deserve to be thoroughly studied with reference to all the evidences at our disposal. Here, for the sake of illustration, I propose to take up the study of a passage relating to Indian history after the establishment of Muslim rule. The importance of this information is very great since it must be based on almost contemporary sources. I base myself on a manuscript, preserved in the Raza Library of Rampur, from which the relevant extracts have been copied for me by the Librarian, Mr. Imtiaz Ali Arshi, for which I am deeply indebted to him.

These extracts (Fan-i-Tarikh-i-Farasi No. 186 folio 121) relate to Shihab-ud-Din Ghuri. They begin with his war with an Indian king in which the latter lost his life. In this war, the Indian king was reported to be accompanied by seven hundred elephants and ‘thou-
sand thousand men.' Obviously here the reference is to the battle of Taraori between Shihab-ud-Din and Prthviraja Chauhan. About the end of this battle it is said that Prthviraja was captured by Shihab-ud-Din, who thought of reinstating him on the throne of Ajmer. The *Prthvirajaraso* states that he was taken to Ghazna and some Muslim writers, like Hasan Nizami, suggest that he was carried to Ajmer. On the basis of a coin, bearing the names of both Shihab-ud-Din and Prthviraja, Dasharatha Sharma holds that the Ghuri conqueror had really an intention to reinstate Prthviraja as a vassal chief. (D. Sharma, *Early Chauhan Dynasties*, p. 87; D. C. Ganguly, *The Struggle for Empire*, p. 112). But Minhaj-us-Siraj expressly states that 'pithaura alighted from his elephant, mounted a horse, and galloped off, but he was captured near Sarsuti (Sarsi) and sent to hell' (*Tabqat-i-Nasiri*, Elliot and Dowson, *History of India* II, p. 297). The author supports this version of the events.

Folios 165–167 of Vol I of the said manuscript deal with the last days of Shihab-ud-Din and the events following his death. When Shihab-ud-Din was defeated and routed by the army of Kharakhtai (Qara Khitai), which had come for the assistance of Sultan Muhammad Khwarazmshah, it was rumoured that he had died. Hence the Indian tribes and chiefs, subjugated by Shihab-ud-Din, considered it a good opportunity to overthrow his yoke. The son of Debal ruling over Koh-i-Jud, who had become a Muslim, re-embraced his ancestral faith. In particular the Khokars, who paid tribute to him, rose up in revolt and took to robbery and plundering. One Amakmal got hold of Multan. Shihab-ud-Din gave top priority to the situation at Multan and captured and killed the usurper and appointed Muhammad b. Abu Ali as the governor of Multan and Lahore (Lahawar) and commissioned him to send the tribute for two years which was in arrears. But the new governor was powerless to cope with the menace of the Khokars and reported that on account of their menace on the way it was not possible to send the tribute. Thereupon, Shihab-ud-Din ordered his commander-in-chief in India Qutub-ud-Din Aibak to deal with the Khokars, but his threats and promises proved of little avail. On all sides there was upsurge and uprising in India. Hence Shihab-ud-Din was forced to suspend his projected campaign against the Khitai, and on the fifth of Rabi-ul-Awwal of 602 A. H. marched into India. Moving swiftly, he overpowered the Khokars on the twenty-fifth of Rabi-ul-Akhar in a grim encounter. By the time of the second prayer, Qutub-ud-Din also arrived with his army and fell on the Khokars. Caught between the
two assaults, the Khokars gave way. A large scale slaughter followed. The remnants of the Khokars fled towards a high hillock and set fire to the neighbourhood. But when the Musalmans approached near them they preferred suicide to surrender or slaughter at the hands of the enemy and jumped wholesale in the fire to be burnt alive. This unique information is against that which says that the Musalmans set fire to the refuge of the Khokars and burnt them (The Struggle for Empire, p. 124. A. B. M. Habibullah, The Foundation of Muslim Rule in India, p. 77). This is an instance of a supreme heroic sacrifice, a sort of collective jauhar, performed by men, to save their honour on a desperate occasion, the like of which is not easy to find elsewhere. But the days of Shihab-ud-Din were also numbered. As he started homeward, after a brief halt at Lahore, and camped at the village of Damel on the bank of the Indus, two or three Hindus, chagrined by the defeat and slaughter of the Khokars, one day emerged from some hiding in the river and slashed him with twenty wounds of the dagger. The amirs and nobles led by the wazir Muyyad ul-Mulk, stitched his wounds and took him to Ghazna under cover of illness. But no sooner had the account of his death become known than dissensions flared up on all sides.

As soon as the death of Shihab-ud-Din became known, some of the jurists of Ghazna began the rumour that Maulana Ustad-ul-Bashar Fakhr-ud-Din Razi was hand in glove with the Khwarazmshah and at his instance got Shihab-ud-Din killed. In order to escape the storm, the Maulana took refuge with the wazir, who knew things as they were and, accordingly, saved him from the mischief by sending him away to a far off place. At that time, two factions were prominent in the Ghurid empire—one favouring Baha-ud-Din, the ruler of Bamyan, and the other inclining towards Ghiyas-ud-Din Mahmud, son of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din. Baha-ud-Din of Bamyan was the son of Shams-ud-Din Muhammad bin Masud by the sister of the Ghuri chiefs, sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din and Shihab-ud-Din. He was in the good books of the Ghurids, and with their help ousted his consanguine brother Abbas which his father had by a Turkish wife. Hence the Ghurids invited him to Ghazna after the death of Shihab-ud-Din, but, on reaching Ghazna, he had a terrible attack of headache, which made him feel that his end was near. He called his sons, Ala-ud-Din and Jalal-ud-Din and advised them to come to terms with Ghiyas-ud-Din Mahmud on the understanding that Ghazna and India would belong to them and Ghur and Khurasan would be under the latter. He appointed Ala-ud-Din as his successor.
However, in India the Amirs placed Aibak on the throne, who came to be known as Shams-i-Hindustan. He consolidated his hold on Sindh, Lahore and Multan. Taj-ud-Din Yalduz captured Zabulistan and Ghazna. Amir Mahmud, son of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, controlled Herat and Firuzkoh and Aziz-ud-Din Husain Khermal, the ruler of Herat, allied himself to Sultan Muhammad Khwarazmshah. In this way, these dissensions resulted in the fall of the Ghurid empire and brought in instead the rule of the Khwarazmians. Since the Mongol menace stared the Khwarazmshahs in the face, they could not take any interest in India and the successors of Aibak could enjoy a secure rule there.

These few data pertaining to the Ghurids show how important this account is for the history of Asia as well as that of India.

SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

E. Quatremere, Historie des Mongols de la Perse par Rashid-al-Din.
F. G. Brown, Literary History of Persia, Vol. III.
K. Jahn, Rashid-al-Din’s History of India, collected Essays with facsimiles and Indices.
T. Olschki, Marco Polo’s Asia.
B. Spuler, Die Mongolen in Iran.
W. Barthold, Turkestan down to the Mongol Invasion.
Arnold J. Toynbee, A Study of History, Vol. X.
AMIR KHUSRAU AS A HISTORIAN

SYED HASAN ASKARI

Unlike the philosophic Hindus who viewed this world, including human life, as an illusion and had, consequently, a certain disregard for history, the Muslims, like the ancient Chinese and the Greeks, seem to have had from the very beginning a keen desire to know the past and to collect and keep a record of men and events, happenings and occurrences. Their innate sense of enquiry and historical consciousness made them interested in the course of human affairs and anxious for rescuing the past from oblivion. They began to compile books containing biographical sketches, historical anecdotes and chronicles of events, public or private. Historiography, accordingly, flourished under the early Turks in India. Different types of historical literature were produced in India during the early medieval period. Historical writings of the period were of different variety in respect of style, literary form, outlook, method, content and value. The works of Minhaj Siraj, Hasan Nizami, Fakhr-i-Mudabbir are so different from one another, and also from those of Barani, Afif and others. But they were all professional historians and have been accepted as such by even modern European writers of history. The case of Amir Khusrau who, besides his five diwans, has four ‘historical masnavis’, and two prose works, also containing historical matter, is a little different, according to some writers,¹ as we shall see hereafter. The fact is that the view of history in that age was, as a whole, quite different from what we find today. The old medieval tradition of historiography that historical works could be written in a special style and might combine oratory and poetry, cannot commend itself to a modernist who abhors or finds very inconvenient the old patterns of rhetorical history. It is quite natural that the views on history and other subjects held by modern thinkers should have changed with the change of time, and the perspective of historians should not be the same as it was before.

History is now taken in a more comprehensive sense. Some centre their narratives on wars or conquests, others concentrate on law and government, state and politics; and yet others view the economic, social, religious and cultural factors to be important
Nowadays we think that it is not the factual details, the mere narration in a dry as dust manner, of the series of events that actually happened—which count and constitute history. The more important thing is to say 'how this has come out of that.' A historian is expected to probe into the causes and effects and to find out the forces that helped to shape the events as they occurred. The essence of history lies in an enquiry into the past, dedication to truth, objectivity, cause-effect nexus of events and movements, sound and critical judgement, and a sense of reasonableness in historical interpretation. The task of the historian is not like that of an advocate to prove or disprove a major fact or event, but to sift and evaluate the varied and multitudinous source-material and to act in the capacity of a judge and jury. He is mainly concerned with a diagnosis of the total situation on the basis of all available and verifiable evidence. He must tap and state all his source-material.

Judging by the standard laid down above, is one in a position to say that Amir Khusrau made some significant contributions with regard to history? Can one concede about him what Elliot and Dowson have said about Benakitti that he was a poet as well as a historian? But a modern Western scholar opines that 'Amir Khusrau did not write history: he wrote poetry.' The task of the historian is to reconstruct the past. He seeks to probe into things said and done so as to understand the present and predict the future. But the past did not have any spell for Amir Khusrau except when he was impelled by hopes of reward and desire for undying literary fame to carry out the behests of the ruling sovereigns. All his six historical works are characterized by disjointed themes, lacking in chronological sequences by florid, fanciful, verbose style and hyperbolic tone, by artificial literary devices, poetic imageries and literary art forms, sacrificing perspicacity, continuity, and accuracy of historical and topographical details. Looking at Amir Khusrau's life and career, the formative influences on him and the operating principles which might have guided him, a modernist may justly feel disappointed. He had a fairly long life, was possessed of potential capacity to understand and act upon his environment, and to utilise the accumulated experiences of past generations, interpreting them in such a way so as give them a realistic historical pattern and make them meaningful and useful for future generations. He allowed his opportunities to lapse. History does not involve, as Amir Khusrau might have thought, the assumption of unintelligible and inscrutable ways and course of Fate and intervention of the Divine in human affairs, nor stereotyped descrip-
tions of events connected with the deeds of kings, courtiers and nobles, unwholesome eulogium on those who were in power, and condemnation of those undeservedly praised during their life time, in total disregard of their good and bad, just and unjust, religious and impious actions. The historian is concerned more with groups than with individuals, more with human decisions than with Divine causation, more with the study of the past than with the delineation and appraisal of the facts and changes occurring in one’s lifetime.

One cannot deny the aptness of much of such remarks, specially if one ignores the 13th Century tone, and the situation and the atmosphere of the age in which Amir Khusrau lived. He has been appraised mainly on the basis of his poetical and prose works, and, undoubtedly, he occupies a very high position as a talented litterateur and artist which he so eminently deserved. But his competence as a writer of history is questioned. Would it be fair, however, to say that his works do not contain all that a modernist likes to be the concept and appreciation of history. To what extent are we justified in blaming him for his failure to realise the need of a wide historical panorama, of a continuous, objective, critical, chronological, factual narrative, true to facts and morally instructive, and for his not rising above the pride and prejudices, fashions and traditions of the time? Did he really miss the bus? It is true that, as the son of an Amir of Iltutmish who was of Lachin Turkist extraction and the grandson, on his mother side, of a high official of Balban’s court and of Indian origin, he had excellent connections in political circles, and had opportunities of observing many of the important events and gathering extremely important historical information from the notable and learned personalities he had contact with.

But history was not his prime concern. Religion, love of art and literature, search for beauty and the fulfilment of his economic needs by legitimate means were his dominant life motives. There was a possibility of his being deeply involved in contemporary politics by virtue of his upbringing and position, but as a Sufi and as one of the famous disciples of Nizam-ud-Din Aulia, he was of the world and also out of it in the sense that although he had to earn for his bread by his literary trade, he kept himself out of the controversial questions and situations arising from the ups and downs in the field of politics and religion. He was a man of learning and intelligence and was capable of handling historical subjects critically
and chronologically, giving a connected and systematic account of the past and making valid historical analysis. But history with Amir Khusrau was contemporary history, and, he could not shake off his obsession with literary accomplishments.

Amir Khusrau has nowhere claimed to be a historian, and has frankly told us that he wrote his desultory studies on important historical topics either on the suggestion of, or for presentation to, the reigning sovereigns. There was no inner urge to do so. History cannot be written without some basis of selection from the multitude of happenings which constitute the quarry. Amir Khusrau’s selection appears to be arbitrary and not in accord with what was inherent in the events and themes dealt with. But the principle of selection in most cases was not of his choice, but was dictated. He pours forth his eulogium with hyperbolic exaggerations not only on Ala-ud-Din, who was great in many ways, but also on his worthless and despicable successor in the Nuh Sipihr, and even in the prefatory remarks of the Ijaz-i-Khusrawi. Even the best and the greatest of sovereigns had their virtues and vices, but Amir Khusrau is said to have been concerned with all that was good and he skips over all that was bad. Even a cursory glance over some of the pages of the ponderous volume of the Ijaz-i-Khusrawi and over his observation in his romantic Masnavis, the Hasht Bihisht and the Matla-ul-Anwar, in respect of women, would suffice to enable one to revise such an opinion about him.

Many of the connected facts may have been known to him, but he has omitted some material which, circumstances as he was, might have been embarrassing for him to recall. Perhaps he dared not mention in the Khazain-ul-Futuh or the Tarikh-i-Alai the brutal murder by Ala-ud-Din of his uncle and father-in-law, the mild good-natured founder-Sultan of the Khalji dynasty, on 16th Ramazan, 695. He mentions this date as the date of the accession of Ala-ud-Din to the throne. Even in his unofficial work, the Ijaz-i-Khusrawi, he ignores the heinous actions of his patron Sultan. We know from Barani about the critical situation created by the Mongols led by Qatlagh Khawaja and Targhi, but Amir Khusrau has nothing to say about the discomfitures of the terrible and unscrupulous Sultan at the hands of his enemies, external or internal. He has made no reference to the uneasy relations between his spiritual guide and Kaiqubad, Mubarak Khalji and Ghiyas-ud-Din Tughlaq in the Qiran-us-Saadain, Nuh Sipihr and Tughlaq-Nama.

But before challenging the character and questioning the
intellectual honesty of our poet-historian, we have to take into account the prevailing atmosphere of the days of the despotic, meddlesome rulers and the need of advisable appropriate concealments. Partial omission of some provocative particulars, colourful verbose, literary presentation of facts and characterisation of high dignitaries were permitted by the stultifying conventions of the time, and they do not necessarily mean a tendency towards wilful suppression of truth. In fact, some of Amir Khusrau’s seeming overdramatizations, or over-simplifications or even omissions and gaps do not matter much, for what emerges from his ornate and embellished picture is generally an accurate presentation of historical matters, including some new facts not noticed by others. Amir Khusrau was a man of religion with a sense of dignity and responsibility. We may not forgive the historian in him for not bringing forward all the facts known to him, but considering his difficulties and limitations we cannot charge him with deliberate distortion of facts. On the other hand, we have evidence that he had an open, impartial and even a magnanimous mind. While writing about the apostates, oppressors and exterminators of the Alai family, regarded as their worst enemies by the contemporary Muslims, he gives an unmistakable proof of a refreshing candour and objective attitude.

Those who have gone through the pages of Barani relating to the atrocious deeds committed by Khusrau Khan and his accomplices, may compare his fulminations and invectives against the people described by him as accursed and foul Parwari outcasts and scavengers, with the following verses of Amir Khusrau on page 19 of Tughlaq-Nama: ‘Many Hindus who are known as Bradus had joined him and had become his accomplices in his perfidious deeds. Bradu is the descriptive epithet of those interpid Hindus who risk their lives (heads). These martial people are reckless of their lives and also know how to knock down the heads of others. This class of people are always in the front rank of their rulers, and are ever prepared to sacrifice their lives at the behest of their rulers. The unbelieving infidels, not looking into their futurity, are, in a war fought all at once, like ten-headed demons. Hasan (Khusrau Khan) assembled and stationed them all at a place (treasury) and put on their feet fetters of gold.’ Again, on p 124 we are told about the fierce offensive taken by those dauntless warriors and the initial success that they achieved. When the two armies came to face each other with firm determination to create cracks in the opposite ranks, conquer and overthrow them from the side of the luckless Khusrau, one flank of his army
sallied out and rushed like a river full of raging waves. In this furious (sweeping) charge they showed such firmness and constancy that one wing of the army of Malik Ghazi was dislodged and overthrown. Having penetrated through the opposite array of forces they fell on the rear. So much tumult and uproar arose among the people that one set of them fell upon the other. Many of the strong and sturdy troops took to flight and every one turned his bridle towards different directions. (But) Malik Ghazi did not leave his place with a small company of his troops, for he felt a pleasure in fighting for his life. Besides a single company of 300 cavalry behind him, none remained either in front or at the back. When Malik Ghazi saw the situation he was furious with rage and burst out angrily before those who were present. ‘So long as my head remains in its place I shall not be alone. I would not look for help towards others for God is my helper.’

These extracts speak for themselves about the sane and sober attitude and methods of Amir Khusrau. But they may not be taken into account by those who think that ‘Amir Khusrau’s figures are either Virtuous or Vicious. They are gods or devils, not men.’ The reference in the last sentence to the prospective Tughlaq Sultan’s reliance on God may be provoking for one who contends that not only for ‘Amir Khusrau but for all medieval Muslim historian and biographers, human characteristics are created outside the world of time and events, that is by God.’ The orientalist and occidentalist ways and systems of religious and social thought do not always tally. It is the orientalist view that outstanding individuals are important in history, but an Invisible Power also plays, at times, a large part in making or marring their fortunes. The effort and endeavours of men are really responsible for the outcome of events and occurrences, but human actions are always subject to the Divine ordination. Ali, the fourth Caliph, said: ‘I have realised the existence of the Divine Power by the failure of my firm resolutions.’ The Quran says: ‘It often happens that the armies which are very small in number come out victorious over those which are numerically very large and superior.’ The Western scholars, wedded to the materialistic view of life and actions, cannot appreciate these statements. But historical literature is not wanting in illustrative instances of unexpected occurrences. It is worthwhile quoting some more verses from the same work.

Continuing his narrative of the second fight, on the initiative taken by Khusrau Khan, on Saturday the first of the month of
Shaaban, 720, near Hauz-i-Khas of Delhi, our author says that a contingent of the usurper’s army of probably ten thousand warlike Bradu (also spelt as Braus) cavalry broke through and paralysed the forces of Ghazi Malik, who was left only with 300\textsuperscript{12} soldiers to rely upon. Nothing daunted, he stuck to his place. His bold stand and brave words inspired some of his followers led by Bahram Aiba, Baha-ud-Din Shaista and Malik Shadi. But they were hardly 500 in number. Let us read what Amir Khusrau has written in the Tughlaq-Nama: “When all these gathered together they came to 500 and even less than that. When Malik Ghazi looked in front and behind he found only this small force and nothing more. But he did not care about the huge horde which he fancied was surrounding the umbrella (chhatra). He cried out “God is great” at the top of his voice, and rushed forward foaming (as waves) towards the (opposite) umbrella and its bearer. He delivered his assault, boiling with rage, with such a fury that the entire battle-field began to resound with it. The impetuous attack of that excellent one of faith caused the confused assembly to become doubly confounded......In whatever direction Malik Ghazi turned his reins, no sooner the enemies saw him than they seemed to be giving up their ghost. A man suddenly appeared before him and at once received a fatal wound from an arrow. Then boldly, and with a fierce charge, he struck down the umbrella (chhatra) with such a hard blow that it fell upside down on the head of the luckless fellow (Khusrau). With the fall of the umbrella on the ground the order and arrangement of the enemy and the ceremonial dignity and insignia (carried as ensigns upon the elephant) fell in disorder. Hasan (Khusrau) was in headlong flight with his fleeing forces and the trumpet was blowing heralding proclamation (of Victory).”

Fortunately for the valiant Tughlaq his chief opponent was spiritless and over-awed. But by unloosening the purse-strings of the accumulated treasures, and playing, perhaps, on the explosive sentiments of his erstwhile fellow-religionists he had gathered an immense horde around him. There were the intrepid, desperate, ‘Braus, arrayed in front of the war elephants.’ ‘Ten thousand cavalry of Ranas and Rawats,’ and self-seeking Muslims ‘who had become the attendants and servants of the Hindus and their constant companions and shadows.’ In fact his army was so heavily manned by Hindus and Muslims as to astonish both the infidel and the faithful.\textsuperscript{18} ‘The Braus, each one of whom was swift and agile on the back (of the horse), had not lost their heart after their earlier discomfi-
tures.’ ‘Malik Ghazi was standing in the battle-field, while his cavalry was engaged in plunder and pillage. All of a sudden a tumultuous Hindu horde, lying in ambush, appeared to deliver a severe assault. More than a thousand of Braus of black visage made a furious onslaught, and the Hindi daggers moved swiftly in shedding blood. That contingent of the Braus force fell on the standard and the rods of the banner were broken into pieces. The banner and ensign of Malik Ghazi were laid low on the ground. All glory to God. ‘What a bold heart was possessed by Malik Ghazi that in spite of this severe and surprise attack he did not stir out of the place he was occupying!’ 14 This is followed by the lines indicating the measures adopted and the efforts put up to retrieve the situation. Here our poet-historian philosophises: ‘When fortune places the crown on the head of a person, his enemy is annihilated in consequence of the damage done by him. Whatever lock is handled by him, every one of his fingers does the work of the key. If you see with discernment, you will find the quality of capability and fitness in everything through the ordination of Providence.’ 15

Was Tughlaq’s victory and his eventual enthronement a mere accident, or was it destined by the Causer of Causes that he should act in a way so as to prevail? Amir Khusrau’s critic has a fling at the ‘moral Islamic way’ in which vicissitudes of fortune overtaking the Alais’ family was lamented, but he does not fling his searching eyes on some significant lines which could provide answer to one of his charges about the non-mention of the sources of information. ‘Such misfortunes and calamities about which I used to hear before have now been seen by my own eyes.’ 16 This observation occurs in connection with the detailed and pathetic account of the gruesome murder of the two princess, Farid and Abu Bakr, aged 15 and 14, who had received good education and had anished the Quran. One was practising archery, another was an intelligent boy interested in calligraphy, and both were in the act of prayer after performing the ceremonial ablation with dust in the absence of water when they were cut down by the sword of the ruffians. The sad and piteous tale of the blinding of the three surviving princes, Ali, Baha, and Usman, aged between 8 and 5 has been described on the testimony of a reliable eye witness. ‘It is from the afflicted heart of one who was an eye witness of the calamity that such things have dripped out.’ 17 Elsewhere, after dilating on the virtues of truth and fidelity, our author refers to a well-informed witness. ‘Thus said one who was very well-acquainted with affairs that when Ghazi Malik came to know
that the Delhi forces of Khusrav had already advanced upto Sarsuti, instead of being frightened by the numeroseness of the enemy army he felt happy. He showed mirth and hilarity at his prospects like the ferocious wolf at the abundance of sheep and ram.\textsuperscript{18}

Amir Khusrav has been charged with not "conceiving of human individuals as acting in or being acted upon by historical situations as modern historians would conceive them." Some of his lines are well worth one's consideration in this connection. "Such is the sure and certain narration of the story that whatever happened to Qutb-ud-Din (Mubarak Khalji) it was pre-ordained by the True Power."\textsuperscript{19} One single significant line tells us a lot about the whole background of Khusrav Khan's episode: "If unfitting things had not been practised upon me such things would not have come out from me. I would not have committed this treachery."\textsuperscript{20} This laconic but meaningful reply, given in explanation of his misdeeds, refers to the root cause and to, perhaps, not an unjust grievance. What has been displayed in all its nakedness by Barani has been left unspecified by our refined and cultured poet-historian. He has not, however, spared his erstwhile deceased patron, has laid bare his character and conduct which caused his ruin, and has waxed eloquent on the consequences of licentiousness and negligence of rulers. "Wine and love, lust and youth, pleasure and enjoyment, dominion and success. How can one whose mind is filled up with such air currents give thoughts to, and feel concerned with, the future? It does not behove the ruler to become immersed in love and lust. A king is the constant protector of God's creatures. It would be wrong for such a guardian to remain intoxicated. If the shepherded spoils himself by the use of pure wine, the herd goes in a state of sleep in the stomach of the wolf. In law, which means the rules and regulations of the Government, the stability of (political) affairs lies in vigilence and watchfulness. How can it befit a man who holds in his fists the cash of regions to lie carelessly on his back in his bed. It is not becoming on the part of a person to sleep over his affairs, for eventually he may be weighed down by the burden of his own remorse. This is specially the case with a king, for the enemies near his skin are much greater in number than his friends."\textsuperscript{21} If history has a moral purpose, such views and observations against the background of political events, as we find here and elsewhere, cannot be dismissed merely as trivial, unrealistic and conventional.

Amir Khusrav's critic does not find the particulars of geographical areas and topographical details given by him to be illuminating
and useful. There is not much to feel enthused over the ornate
description of Delhi, of the Congregations at the Mosque, the lofty
Minaret Mazina, and the Hauz-i-Shamsi or Sultani. The outer
and inner Hisar (fortified enclosures) of the capital city, situated on
the hills, the Shahr-i-Nau, wrongly said to have been built by
Kaiqubad, the Rauza-i-Bagh and the river near by. The descriptions
of the routes adopted from Delhi to Awadh (Qiran-us-Saadain),
Dipalpur to Delhi, (Tughlaq-Nama), Delhi to the extreme southern
regions across the Narbada and the Vindhya range (Khazain-ul-
Futuh), are not enlightening to some. The detailed account of the
march of his army threading its way, stage by stage, from one place
to another such as Alampur, Hansi, Madina, Rohtak, Mandoli,
Palam, Kashanpur, Lahravati, (Tughlaq-Nama) is, perhaps, not of
sufficient importance to catch the critic's eye, nor does the receipt
of the letters by the provincial rulers of very distantly placed regions
within the shortest possible time throw any light on the means of
transport and communication available in the 14th century. As
regards Ala-ud-Din's campaigns in the north and the south, though
the dates, even months, have been given, the names of places, rivers
and passes have been mentioned, and some indication is there,
such as the reference to the availability of diamonds in abundance,
the scheme of topography and chronology falls short of a historian's
handiwork. It is not realised that many of the places mentioned
are not easily identified because of their changed names on modern
maps.

If the function of the historian is to enlighten and illuminate
by throwing fresh, almost new, light on, and adding to the existing
stock of knowledge of the past, then the wealth of solid, factual
information, not available elsewhere, and furnished by Amir
Khusrau's works, specially the Miftah, Khazain, and Tughlaq-Nama,
entitle the author to be called a historian. Though the Ashiga, Nuh
Sipihir, Qiran-us-Saadain and even the Risail-i-Ijaz are not wanting
in valuable information of political value, they are works of solid
worth for those working in the field of social and cultural history.
Of these the highly verbose, artificial, wearisome style of the Risail,
which contains, in four big volumes, the accumulated mass of
specimen letters and documents emanating from the inventive mind
and prolific pen of Amir Khusrau between 682/1283 and 725/1325
have scared away scholars, and has been dismissed as a book of
imaginary epistolary correspondence, full of frivolous futile matters,
having no bearing on the political, social, intellectual and cultural
life of the age. Actually, very few have cared to scrutinize its contents, carefully and critically, and an ardent student of history is bound to be rewarded with useful information lying scattered here and there in it.

That the works of Amir Khusrau form a handy mine of factual information, which should not be taken to be historical irrelevancies, can be easily established. The historian Barani, at times, quotes him to confirm some of his views. In many particulars Barani’s assertions are supplemented by the facts furnished by Amir Khusrau. There are many things which are found in his works alone. An example here will do. Barani tells us very little about the early life of the founder-Sultan of the Tughlaq dynasty. Amir Khusrau has put the following into the mouth of those who exhorted him to assume the crown: ‘When the men of sober counsels heard this, they said what you have said befits you and is true; but in throwing away your office you are taking away the pearl from yourself and putting it on others. All of us know what came about on account of your sword as that cannot be described by the tip of the pen. When the Khan (Ala-ud-Din) attacked the fort of Ranthambhor and laid siege to it, then the Rai Karad22 made a stormy attack so that he should cut the iron siege by the sword of steel. He sent a strong force from within the fort which was like a mountain torrent sweeping off goods and chattels. There was such a loud and confused outcry in the camp of the Khan that one was falling on the other. You were ordered by the Khan to advance, and you went ahead of other chieftains. You displayed such valiant exertions in that battle as to make a whole world distressed. Two-thirds of the Rai’s army was cut down and the remaining one-third managed with hundreds of pretexts to stay on. When you returned victorious from there you became a (much sought after) hawk in the hands of the Khan. This was the beginning of your good luck and the dawn of your rising fortune. When the Sultan was gone, the faith and the fidelities of the Tughlaqs remained with you......When another infidel (Mongols) marched against Baran (Bulandshahr) and made many Muslims his slaves like the Hindus, the king (Ala-ud-Din) sent you in that direction. You alone were responsible for the flow of the streams of their blood. There were four Tumans (each being the head of 10,000) and four Mirs (Chiefs) who were all princes of the Tartar dominion. When you encountered that agile, swift-winged force, you did what you did for a small return. When you decided to face the ill-starred Iqbal you came out victorious over him
also through good fortune. Again, in the battle of Turtaq and Ali Beg you knocked down many heads like so many cauldrons. Your next target was the army of Kapak\textsuperscript{23} and Taibu. You were responsible for the killing of the infidels, one by one. Again, near Bunbal, by the side of the river (sea), the army of the infidels had assembled like a river. It consisted of one Tuman (10,000) of fighting infidels. Similar was the number of the Rai of Bunbal.\textsuperscript{24} The earth was bending under the weight of the infidels like a river. Your glorious name was Tughlaq-i-Ghazi and the Mughal also bore the name of Tughlaq. You Tughlaq had taken the sword in hand for the sake of the holy war. That Tughlaq had kept the arrow in the handle of his bow for the sake of the infidels......You pierced the heart of the infidels with your glance and made them all captives or slaves. You also exacted money from the Rai of Bunbal, and realised the river tolls for the year. You then marched against Haider and Zirak and broke the rank and file of those valiant ones. In this way you fought eighteen battles here and there, and in all these you came out victorious.'

The \textit{Tughlaq-Nama}, like other works, is not devoid of things of social and cultural import. That it was a well established custom of the time to give a feast and entertain the guests at the first sign of the incipient beard,\textsuperscript{25} is evident from the pathetic words of prince Abu Bakr, addressed to his miserable mother, just when he was about to be killed by the assassins. 'The down on the cheek of the youth is the signal for festive hospitality; you may mourn for me without any mourner.'\textsuperscript{26} We get here a glimpse into another prevalent practice. You see many jacket (or gown) wearing brides wandering about in the street of this city full of lusts.\textsuperscript{27} Referring to the Hindu warriors, Amir Khusrau writes: 'There were Ahir Deo, Abar Deo, Amar Deo, demons upon demons, Narsih Sainsih, Barsih, Harmar, Bairimar, Parmar, all serpent-like and shouting \textit{mar-mar} (strike, strike). The sandal-coloured robes on their bodies made the moist sandlewood dry with shame. All had wrapped themselves with a piece of silken cloth, ready to die, and felt proud of possessing be-jewelled swords. Yet it is the custom with the Hindus that when they march out for battle, they wrap their heads with a kind of silken cloth called \textit{baharaman}......By tying the tail of cows on to their flags the Hindus associated hundreds of violence with the hairs of the cow's tail. Many of them had hog's teeth hanging from their necks, symbolizing their ferocity and suggesting that they were in no way inferior to tigers. The war Bhatt\textsuperscript{28} (bards) of those worthless
fellows were engaged with their sorcery to give them protection.' We need not consider the ensigns and emblems of the Tughlaq except that, unlike the Hindus, the distinguished mark of his flag was the peacock feather. As regards the Hindi words and phrases, a number of these have been aptly brought in. It would suffice to quote one very significant line in its original: 'Cho Bukshadand Tir-i Be Khata ra-Bazari Guft' (hai hai tir mara.)\textsuperscript{29}

Before concluding, it seems necessary to say that Amir Khusrau’s historical works have defects and merits of their own. His isolated fragments of historical continuum of about four decades, couched in a highly artificial, affected and obscure language and style cannot be put in comparison with the works of other medieval historians. His understanding of history did not centre upon records of historical occurrences systemetically and chronologically arranged, nor upon a set of ideas, but on persons and certain attractive themes. He does not always write in a straightforward manner, and seldom expresses his real sentiments lest that might offend and annoy those who were at the helm of affairs. He wrote with restraint about people whom he disliked for their character and conduct. He could not turn his eyes away from the atrocious deeds of Malik Kafur and Mubarak Khalji, but he had no hesitation in putting forward a lame excuse for the latter. He wrote in the \textit{Ashiga}\textsuperscript{30} in the lifetime of that worthless son and successor of Ala-ud Din: ‘When the unkind or callous (be mihr) Sultan became cynical and surly (tursh chihr) and malicious towards his kith and kin, he saw it advisable for his state to shed their blood and thought them to be fit for the sharp sword. He decided to become vindictive and malignant so that the country should be freed from co-sharers. He secretly despatched some one to Khizir Khan and disclosed apologetically what he had in his heart (the evil thought) that he was nursing against him.’ One should keep a balance in one’s praise and blame and should not be unnecessarily severe and deprecatory in one’s attitude. It would not be fair to judge the past with the yardstick of the present standard. It cannot be said that Amir Khusrau felt any animus towards those who were vicious and worthless, but it was dangerous to be out-spoken in public life. The favourite of Nizam-ud-Din Aulia, the great saint of Delhi, was not a \textit{khiraqa-posh darwesh} (wearer of Sufi garments made up of patches), and we cannot expect him to have laid bare the character and motivation of the great ones of the time or to have disentangled the casual relations of human events. His primary concern was to demonstrate his literary ability and gain a lasting
reputation, and also to get reward for his literary performances. Viewed favourably he was a historian. It has to be admitted that his works have great historical value and the contributions made by him to historical literature are in no way negligible.

REFERENCES

1. Chapter V of P. Hardy’s Historians of Medieval India deals with the treatment of History by Amir Khusrau.
2. See H. Elliot and Dowson, History of India as told by its own Historians, Vol. III, Chapter XII.
3. Hardy, Historians of Medieval India, p. 43.
4. He and his maternal grandfather were very enthusiastic about the characteristic Indian ‘chew’. See the writer’s fairly long paper entitled ‘Betal Chewing and the early Muslims.’ Amir Khusrau writes about Imad-ul-Mulk, the Rawat-i-Ariz or Ariz-i-Mamalik: ‘I am the first of significant knowledge to owe my decent from that black-cheeked one (black ariz), and I have pointed out each and every particular of my family origin or lineage. That black one was the most elegant preamble to the state. I am a creation of the tip of the pen of destiny and a citation of that black one. I drown the dry grass (mean, base and ignoble thing) and bring out the pearl. Behold what a wonderful (ever-flowing) river has come out of that black cloud.’
6. Strong and weak kings, Wazirs and other officials Ibid., Vol. IV, pp. 40–44, good and bad artisans, Vol. IV, 48-49; also bad Qazis, corrupt officials, lawyers indulging in hair-splitting trivialities; theologian; Mashaikhs, good or bad, men of perverted tastes, mukhannass, dancers slaves, males and females etc.
7. See Khusrau, Hasht Bihisht, (Lucknow 1873), pp. 21–25, for the letter addressed to his daughter, Mastura.
9. They had advanced up to and invested the Imperial capital between 697–705 A. H. See Barani for a detailed account.
10. The question of court attendance, change of residence, rivalry with Khizr Khan, devotion to the saint, acceptance of Khusrau Khan’s money, and sama were the chief factors.
11. Some of his versions are indirectly confirmed by other sources, e.g., Ibn-i-Battuta describes Khusrau Khan’s followers as being the bravest and the greatest who defeated Tughlaq’s troops and pillaged his camp.
12. See Khusrau, Tughlaq-Nama, ed. Syed Hashim Faridabadi (Aurangabad 1933) The published text which contains many errors wrongly gives ‘si sad’ (3,000).
13. Ibid., p. 112.
15. Ibid., p. 132.
16. Ibid., p. 23.
17. Ibid., p. 232.
19. Ibid., p. 23.
20. Ibid., p. 149.
21. Ibid., p. 16.
22. There is a significant line in M. F. ‘Kare Nami Bahadur Shah Sawaran Barun Zad Naubate Ba Chand Yaran’ (Kare, the renowned brave Warrior and master of the horse came out and beat the forum with some of his followers). But Kare could not be Karad.
23. Amir Khusrau who was so fond of playing upon words with double meanings has given Kabak (partridge) and Taihu (Quail). In K. F. he mentions the Mongol chiefs, Iqbal, Tai, Bu and Kapak.
24. Rai Bunbal, Haider, Zirak as well as Kadar are not easily identifiable.
25. Compare the celebration in the recent times of Monchon Ka Kunda.7
27. Ibid., p. 86. Much more of such things are referred to in the Ijaz-i-Khusravi, Matta-ul-Anwar and Hasht-Bihisht.
28. Generally the Bhat's were genealogist or family bards and not the enchanters or afsungaran.
29. This ‘hai, hai’ is different from the auxiliary verb ‘hai’ of Khariboli. The text of the diwan of Hafiz, written or printed in India has this line which, if genuine, is very significant for those interested in linguistic studies. Saqi agarat hova-i-ma hai-juz bada mayar pesh-i-ma-shai. The 15th century saint of Bihar, Qazi ola shuttari, puts this expression ‘Khanda Hai Phanda Kahan’ in the mouth of the 14th century Saint of Uchh, Makh-dum Syed Jalal Bukhari (Maadan-ul-Asrar).
30. According to some the addition in the Ashiga came after the death of Mubarak Khalji, for Amir Khusrau could not afford to say anything disparaging of the Sultan in his life time.
'This is a work of solid worth,' declares Barani, 'which combines several virtues. If you consider it a history, you will find in it an account of kings and *maliks*. If you search in this book for laws, government regulations and administrative affairs, you will not find it without them. If you want precepts and advice for kings and rulers, you will find them more plentiful and better presented in this book than in any other. And because everything I have written is true and correct, this history is worthy of credence. Also as I have put a lot of meaning in very few words, the example of mine deserves to be followed.' This is Barani's own assessment of his *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi*. A modern writer has, however, to cross-examine him on a number of vital points before the historical value of his work can be objectively determined. What was Barani's idea of history? How did he collect, assess and interpret his data? What were the subjective elements in his thought and how did they influence his collection, selection and interpretation of facts? How far was history a re-enactment of past experience for him? What advantages, if any, did he seek to derive from his historical writings? Barani's place amongst the medieval historians and his contribution to medieval Indian historiography rests on an answer to these questions.

As for Barani's idea of history and the advantages that accrue from its study, a fairly detailed discussion is available in his preface to the *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi*. Like most medieval 'ulama' he traced the origin of every science to the Quran. The development of the historical attitude amongst the Musalmans is also traced by him to those Quranic exhortations in which mankind has been asked to draw lessons from the fate of peoples and civilizations that once exercised sway over the world, but have, since long, become tales of the past. The medieval system of Muslim education being theologically orientated, the source of this attitude is not difficult to trace. But its impact on his historical thinking cannot be emphasized beyond a point. The use of religious terminology is merely a literary convention with him and nothing more.

Barani looks upon history as a panorama of human activity
unfolded before man to guide his faltering steps in life's journey.\textsuperscript{3} Retrospect of the past, according to him, had a definite role to play in rectifying the present. What leads to the rise and fall of empires, dynasties and peoples should be clear to one who studies carefully the processes of historical change. History gives man a rare insight into human affairs and helps him in distinguishing between good and evil, vice and virtue, friend and foe. It makes man realistic in outlook as he learns from the experience of others. A ruler gets from its study the courage required to face difficulties and an insight needed to diagnose and treat the various ailments of the body politic\textsuperscript{4}. He comes to know also how evil follows evil and good comes out of good. When an ordinary suffering individual, writes Barani, comes to know through his study of history that even prophets have not been spared trials and tribulations of life, it gives him immense power of endurance.\textsuperscript{5} But unfortunately Barani's own knowledge of history could not come to his rescue during the days of his adversity.

Two other basic ideas of Barani with regard to history deserve to be noted: (1) The foundation of history, he says, rests on 'truthfulness.'\textsuperscript{6} A historian should be exact in his statements and should avoid exaggerations or hyperboles which characterize the works of poets.\textsuperscript{7} Incorrect statements lower the prestige of a historian and reduce the value of his work. Further, as a punishment for uttering lies, salvation is denied to him in the world hereafter.\textsuperscript{8} Thus Barani's sense of responsibility as a historian is conditioned both by pragmatic and religious considerations. (2) Barani considers History and the \textit{Ilm-i-Hadis} as twins\textsuperscript{9}, and remarks that the study of history is necessary also because a scholar of Traditions, who is not an expert of history, cannot be a good scholar of his subject. The way Barani finds identity between the \textit{Ilm-i-Hadis} and the \textit{Ilm-i-Tarikh} has led Dr. Hardy to the conclusion that Barani's historical approach was theologically conditioned. But this is not so. What makes Barani bracket the study of history with the study of \textit{ahadis}\textsuperscript{10} is not the theological content of the \textit{ahadis} but its \textit{usul-i-asnad} which, in the words of Hitti, 'meets the most essential requirements of modern historiography.'\textsuperscript{11} That an event should be traced to the person who actually participated in it or saw others participate in it, and that the veracity of all those persons who transmit that fact to others should be looked into through an investigation of their conduct, character, circumstances and background. This was the essence of the principles of critique evolved by the scholars of \textit{ahadis}. Barani looks upon history and \textit{hadis} as twins, and considers the principles of criticism applied
to be the same in both.

It would, however, be a mistake to think that these abstract principles mentioned in the preface to his work contain all the basic postulates of Barani’s thought or that it is possible to analyse the technique and tenor of the Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi simply with reference to them. The Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi is a much more complicated study which requires as much an examination of the basic categories of Barani’s thought as an analysis of his fluctuating emotions. In this paper an attempt has been made to investigate the main tendencies of Barani’s thought as it developed in a particular social background and the psychological reactions that his sensitive soul registered to different situations as they arose and conditioned his historical thinking and approach.

Barani belonged to an aristocratic family which had served three main dynasties of rulers during the Sultanate period—the Ilharites, the Khaljis and the Tughluqs. His maternal grandfather Sipah Salar Husam-ud-Din was an important officer of Balban and performed the duties of Wakil i-dar Barbak Sultan. He enjoyed the Sultan’s confidence and was, therefore, appointed Shahna of Lakhnauti, a very important assignment in view of the Sultan’s concern for the consolidation of his power in Bengal after the Tughril revolt. Barani’s father, Muwayyid-ul-Mulk, held the post of the naib of Arkali Khan and lived in a palatial house at Kilugarhi, the most aristocratic locality of medieval Delhi. His uncle Ala-ul-Mulk was a confidant of Ala-ud-Din Khalji from his Kara days. In fact he had helped Ala-ud-Din in his conspiracy against Jalal. When Ala-ud-Din ascended the throne of Delhi, he first assigned to him Kara and Awadh, and later on entrusted to him one of the most responsible duties of the Empire—the Kotwalship of Delhi—and consulted him on almost every crucial matter—be it his personal religion or a Mongol invasion. Barani’s father Muwayyid-ul-Mulk got the niyabat and khwajgi of Baran. Barani himself joined the court during the reign of Muhammad bin Tughluq and remained his nadim for more than 17 years—an honour which a man with exceptional qualities of head and heart alone could enjoy. The Sultan consulted him very often and recognized his knowledge of history. When Firuz Shah Tughluq ascended the throne, Barani lost all influence at the court and his political career abruptly came to an end for reasons which will be discussed later. What happened to his family after that nobody can say, as the contemporary and later records are silent on this point. At a time when the complexion of the govern-
ing class was changing from dynasty to dynasty, his family had the political wisdom to maintain its position till the rise of Firuz Shah, when a political miscalculation by Barani was exploited by certain elements which had recently appeared in the political life of the country. Barani could never regain his lost prestige.

Contact with the court apart, Barani and his family had occasions to move in the highest academic circles of the country and meet the finest intellects of the age. Some of the 46 scholars of the Alai period whom Barani considered as equals of Ghazzali and Razi, were amongst his teachers. Amir Khusrau and Amir Hasan Sijzi were his close personal friends. "They could not live without my company and I without theirs", says Barani. In the highest circles of Delhi—both political and academic—Barani was known for his suavity of manners, great social charm and scintillating wit. Family background and personal position thus made him a man of the higher strata of society. If at any point he came into touch with the common man, it was the khangah of Shaikh Nizam-ud-Din Auliya. But there, too, it was in the closing years of his life—years of frustration and dismay as they were—that he turned in search of that peace of mind which his soul, deeply immersed in longings for material glory, could never attain.

Thus his own position in society conditioned his social outlook. His whole concept of society became coterminous with the life of the royalty and the upper classes. The ideological sustenance for this social attitude he derived from the Iranian ideals of historiography. He was never tired of referring to the Sassanid heroes of Persia as the ideals of kingship. He looked upon the historical landscape from the foot of the royal throne focussing his attention on the royalty and the governing classes. For him history was their history and authority was their exclusive privilege. He failed to see greatness apart from or independent of kingship. Even the Prophet of Islam was Sultan-i-Paighambaran in his eyes; and he found the greatness of his spiritual mentor Shaikh Nizam-ud-Din Auliya not in his God-conscious existence but in the externalia of his khangah—the multitudes of people coming and going. Even in the closing years of his life when he was dragging on his melancholy existence in a corner of Shaikh Nizam-ud-Din Auliya's khangah, he could not get rid of his aristocratic complexes. It was a hangover of power which seared his soul. He never reconciled himself to his fate, and so the inner discontent grew apace. Humour changed into sarcasm, and buoyancy gave way to frustration. Had he been able to shake
off his aristocratic complexes, he would have never thought of writing a history of the Sultans. He would have, on the other hand, written a history of the Chishti saints, who looked upon political power and authority with non-chalance and gave a wide berth to the government of the day. Instead, he thought of compiling a *Tarikh*, a *Fatawa-i-Jahandari* and a *Hasrat-Nama*—all revealing the distress and anguish of a torn and frustrated personality desperately struggling to retrieve its position. He translated into Persian an Arabic account of the Barmeckides because he saw in their history an image of his own fate. He wrote a biography of the Prophet—*Sana-i-Muhammad*—at a time when, in his own words, he “was not hopeful of being alive till the morning”—inspired not by any academic reasons but as an atonement for his past sins and in the hope of securing, through its spiritual benediction, his release from the prison of Bhatnir. ‘Owing to the composition of this book,’ he writes, ‘which is the protection, *pusht-wa-panah*, of my religious and worldly affairs, I feel a new strength in myself from time to time.’ But adversity could not change his mentality. He died, as he was born, an aristocrat and continued to look upon humanity throughout his life through the aristocratic glasses.

This class-consciousness ultimately developed into a complex and embittered his attitude towards the lower sections of society. The source of this bitterness was political, not religious or social. When a new class of officers, consisting of men like Laddha, Najba, Manka, Shaikh Babu Naik, Peera etc., rose up under Muhammad bin Tughluq, Barani, with his grim political realism, heard the rumblings of a distant storm which in course of time was to sweep all the old families of administrators off their feet. Muhammad bin Tughluq’s love for history, his interest in literature and above all his affection for Barani, guaranteed the latter’s position at the court, but Barani found himself an alien in that atmosphere in which plebians and upstarts rubbed shoulders with the old aristocracy. With the death of Muhammad bin Tughluq the mainstay of Barani’s prestige collapsed, and events so rapidly moved against him that he slept a powerful *amir* but rose up a poverty stricken pauper. A tactical blunder brought all this misfortune upon him. When Muhammad bin Tughluq died suddenly in Sindh, Khwaja Jahan placed on the throne of Delhi a boy of tender age. He was unaware that in Sindh Shaikh Nasir-ud-Din Chiragh and others had already raised Firuzu to the throne. Barani gave his direct or indirect support to Khwaja Jahan’s action, and thus cast his lot with an *amir* who was heading for
the gallows. On Firuz’s arrival in Delhi, the position of Khwaja Jahan and his Delhi group of supporters became extremely precarious. Left to himself Firuz would probably have forgiven these amirs who had acted in good faith but the new group, which had in the meantime filled the vacuum and attained pre-eminent position in the new set-up, forced Firuz Shah to deal sternly with them. Khwaja Jahan was killed and with him many others lost their heads, but Barani, despite the efforts of his enemies to the contrary, succeeded in saving his skin. It was Firuz Shah’s intervention which saved his life, but he was deprived of his former position, status and property. ‘God honoured me at the beginning and disgraced me at the end of my life,’ he writes in great distress. It was a most tragic position in which Barani was now placed. An amir of three generations, a nadim of the previous Sultan, reduced to a state of abject penury, disowned by friends, neglected by relatives and despised by enemies. In deep despair he remarks: ‘Even the birds and fish are happy in their homes but I am not. Gloom and frustration consequently clouded his mind. The person who now dominated the political scene was Khan-i-Jahan Maqbul—an Indian by birth who had risen to high position shouldering out all old and distinguished families from their positions of power and authority. Barani’s frustrated mind begins to develop a whole chain of causal connections. Khan-i-Jahan Maqbul would never have attained that position but for the policy of promoting low born persons followed by some preceding Sultans. Muhammad bin Tughluq was an arch-criminal in this respect. He had broken the monopoly of the old and respectable families by introducing new elements in the aristocracy, primarily from the lower rungs of the society. The philosophers, who were constantly with him, were responsible for putting those ideas in his mind. These philosophers—mischief-mongers, enemies of stability and respectability—should be rooted out from society and philosophy should be tabooed in the interest of stability. Education should be denied to the low born because it qualifies them for posts in the administration. They should be kept in a state of perpetual ignorance. Thus, one after the other, prejudices enter the texture of Barani’s thought and colour his whole outlook and approach towards life and society. He begins to hate the low born and the philosophers, and opposes the extension of educational facilities to the common man. The development of this trend of thought was inherent in the situation he was placed in. A closer analysis shows that his prejudices did not emanate from his religious views but evolved out of the complications of his frustrated life.
Conscious of the fact that this distinction of the low born and the high born could not be sustained in the light of Muslim religious concepts, he tries to convert it into a conflict between 'Faith' and 'Infidelity'. But many of these so-called low-born persons whom he was thus condemning under the mask of a principle, were converts to Islam. How could they be called 'infidels'? Here comes Barani's theory that conversion of the low born is always imperfect and incomplete. They are never genuine in their conversion; they are hypocrites. Then he tries to seek shelter in his theory of contradictions, as propounded in the Fatawa-i-Jahandari, but he never buttresses his point of view by a recourse to any religious authority. In fact he fully realized that distinctions based on birth had a worldly rather than a religious basis, and he makes this secret out in his estimate of Prince Muhammad.40

That much about the circumstances in which the basic categories of Barani's thought developed. Now a word about his approach to history. Barani sought in the history of the period the causes of his own rise and fall, and this search introduced subtle threads of subjectivism in his narrative. He found the tragedy of his own life and its causes writ large in the actions and attitudes of the rulers and the maliks. He is writing about Balban. All of a sudden his mind finds some situation identical or inimical to his own and he starts talking about himself, 'I can', he says, 'compile two volumes regarding the atrocities perpetrated on me by the wretched and cruel sky.'41 He describes the private assemblies of Jalal-ud-Din Khalji and he cannot help lamenting his own fate.42 Such lamentations recur again and again. The historian seems to carry the weight of his own frustrated life on his shoulders throughout the work, and on the slightest provocation pours forth his heart, bursts into laments and starts questioning the historical data if it could explain the tragedy of his own life. 'The despair that is in my heart,' he writes, 'flows in tears of blood from my eyes; a wave from river of blood pours out of my eyes, drips from my pen and stains the paper.'43 A book produced in such a mental and emotional climate was bound to be soaked in irremediable subjectivity. It is interesting to trace these subjective threads in his narrative. He condemns Muhammad bin Tughluq for almost every one of his administrative actions and policies but when he comes to describe his death his heart begins to bleed.44 Why? There were Sultans who died under more tragic circumstances than Muhammad bin Tughluq but he did not express such feelings about them. Moreover, a sigh of relief rather than a mourning cry would
have been more appropriate to the general attitude he had taken up towards the Sultan. But in the passing away of Muhammad bin Tughluq he heard the death-knell of his own life of prestige, power and position. He weeps as much for the Sultan as for his own self. His whole account of Muhammad bin Tughluq seems saturated with such vagaries of psychological moods. He showers encomiums on him and gives him a place in the Pantheon of Prophets and saints; and then suddenly assumes another position and starts hurling invectives at him and finds in him the traits of Nimrod and Pharoah. This strange tribute of love and hatred, again, has its roots in Barani’s own psychology. It was not so much the Sultan who was ‘a mass of inconsistencies’ or a ‘mixture of opposites’ but the historian himself was a miserably torn personality. He projected his own psychological states in his assessment of the Sultan's character. It was due to his policy of throwing offices open to talent, his kasrat i-tehkimat i-mujaddid, his recruitment of the promiscuous mass of people to the ‘charmed’ circle of nobles, his philosophic interests which led to the development of sceptic attitude in him towards the ‘Revealed Books and the Traditions of the Prophets’ (kutub i-samaki wa ahadis ambia) which created confusion all around and made the position of the old and respectable families, like his own, absolutely untenable. He, therefore, deserved condemnation in the severest terms. And Barani starts disparaging the Sultan. But this mood does not last long. As soon as the historian returns from his mental incursion into the age of Muhammad bin Tughluq and suddenly becomes conscious of his present miserable plight, the direction of his emotions begins to change. ‘I enjoyed status and position during the reign of Muhammad bin Tughluq.’ A patron and benefactor like him deserves to be praised and the historian starts extolling the Sultan to the skies. When Barani is in his present, he has love for Muhammad bin Tughluq; when he is in his past, he has nothing but hatred for him. Love and hatred thus alternate with fluctuations in moods of the historian. The moment one succeeds in catching this subtle psychological mood of the historian, the entire data supplied by him neatly fits into the proper perspective.

No two persons could be more fundamentally different from one another in thought and outlook than Barani and Muhammad bin Tughluq. They were denizens of two different worlds—the Sultan, a revolutionary in politics and a rationalist in religion; Barani, a hide bound reactionary in politics and a blind follower of tradition in religious matters. It is to the credit of Barani that in spite of this
wide ideological gulf between him and the Sultan, he gives a complete picture of Muhammad bin Tughluq. Isami and Ibn Battuta, the other two contemporary historians supply valuable details about Muhammad bin Tughluq and help us considerably in fixing the chronology of his reign, but none comes up anywhere near Barani in his penetrating, graphic and comprehensive study of the Sultan. Ibn Battuta’s Muhammad bin Tughluq is a man of scholarly temperament, generous to a fault but essentially a tyrant; Isami’s Sultan is an ill-guided, irreligious monarch, tyrannical and impulsive. It is in the pages of Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi that the real and dynamic personality of the Sultan is revealed to us. Here and there one may find comments—harsh, bitter and uncharitable—but out of all these the thought and personality of the Sultan emerges in all its light and shade. This is due to the fact that Barani does not allow his subjectivity to bear his data to establish any particular hypothesis. This may sound strange but is nevertheless true. A closer study of Barani shows that it is in his assessment of characters, not assortment of facts, that subjective elements play a part in his narrative.

Now, apart from his tendency to read the ups and downs of his own fate in the vicissitudes of history, Barani was, to all intents and purposes, a fairly honest historian. He did not suppress facts or distort them, however unpalatable they might have been to him or his family. He frankly confesses that he had not the courage to speak the truth before Muhammad bin Tughluq, and was, therefore, guilty of hypocrisy. While describing Ala-ud-Din Khalji’s conspiratorial activities at Kara—which he does not hesitate to condemn—he makes no attempt to withdraw his uncle Ala-ul Mulk from the scene. He recorded facts as they appeared on the screen of his mind and did not try to prove or disprove any hypothesis by accordingly selecting or rejecting the data. His senile mind often looses the chronological sequence of events. He records whatever he remembers, and he remembers whatever has left a deep impress on his mind. This is a serious shortcoming of Barani’s work. A weak chronological framework is, doubtless, a blemish in a historical work. But what Barani aims at supplying to his readers is not a catalogue of events but a glimpse into the spirit of the age. He recreates the past and gets his reader involved in the life of the period. Barani is a historian whose real worth and value can be appreciated only when the chronological framework is available from other sources. Iltutmish’s life and activities have been dealt with in detail by Minhaj in his Tabaqat-i-Nasiri but in such a soulless manner that, except for a long and unbroken
series of military campaigns, a reader’s mind gathers no impression about the character or personality or even the problems of Iltutmish’s period. Barani refers to him incidentally in connection with Balban, but the few references that he makes are so vital and significant that they light up the whole epoch. Minhaj describes the campaigns of Iltutmish against his rivals but his account tells us nothing as to how Iltutmish conciliated or crushed the large number of his quondam colleagues, the slave-officers of Muizz-ud-Din and Qutb-ud-Din. When Barani says that Iltutmish used to remark in his court: ‘When I see these great nobles standing before me, I feel inclined to come down from the throne and kiss their hands and feet’. He tells us more about the situation than any other contemporary historian. It is a brief and incidental remark but shows how Iltutmish had to work in order to gain confidence and cooperation of his maliks. Minhaj’s account of Iltutmish’s patronage of saints and religious men is too general and vague to be of any particular value in understanding the character and personality of the Sultan. Barani’s references present the Sultan’s personality in the boldest relief. What different religious attitudes and opinions were presented before Iltutmish and how he reacted to them, Barani says more than Minhaj, and whatever he records brings us nearer to the spirit of the age, and we feel as if we have gained an insight into the problems of the age. Barani, in fact, had a better sense of history and its spirit than any other Persian chronicler of the early medieval period. Despite all his shortcomings no other historian of the period comes up anywhere near him. Minhaj, who has adhered so closely to the chronological sequence of events, has made history a dull, drab and insipid affair. His accounts are totally unrelated to the social and economic background of the period. No one can gather from the Tabaqat-i-Nasiri what social and cultural forces were at work when one of the greatest empires of the middle ages was being founded. How did the processes of adjustment and conciliation start and work? How an alien administration succeeded in striking its roots in the soil? These are questions which occur again and again in one’s mind but no reply is found in Minhaj’s pages. Barani had to deal with another significant development in medieval Indian history—the rise of Khalji Imperialism. He has succeeded in communicating its spirit to us in all its aspects—military, cultural and economic. His details about the actual battles fought by Ala-ud-Din Khalji may be inaccurate, but the total impression that he has been able to convey about the Khalji period is historically so significant that even Amir Khusrau
does not come up to that level in his Khazain-ul-Futuh.

Dr. P. Hardy says that Barani treats history as a branch of theology and sees the past as a battleground between good and evil. Unfortunately his view is not borne out by facts. Barani had a keen awareness of the changing phenomena of political life and his analysis of situations is basically and essentially political. One has to look into his accounts of Balban’s wasaya regarding the consolidation of political authority and his analysis of the characters and activities of Malik Nizam-ud-Din, Ahmad Chap, Almas Beg and Malik Kafur to be convinced of his understanding of the forces which lead to the decline and dismemberment of political authority. His intimate knowledge of administration and its problems extending over a number of years helped him in making a realistic appraisal of the factors and forces that worked in the life of the dynasties that controlled the contemporary political scene. Of all the medieval Muslim writers he alone posed the question whether the laws of the shariat could be meticulously enforced? Despite his conservative and orthodox views he did not hesitate to declare that it had now become impossible to enforce the laws of the shariat in administration where the needs of the time necessitated a recourse to state laws (zawabit). Only one with a deep historical sense and awareness of the changes that had taken place in the Islamic polity through the centuries could state this opinion. An alim, no doubt, he was, but he cannot be bracketted with Sayyid Nur-ud-Din Mubarak or Qazi Mughis because he had a greater sense of realities. One other aspect of the problem also deserves consideration. His Fatawa-i-Jahandari in which he has expressed this opinion was written during the reign of Firuz Shah whose administration is generally believed to be religiously oriented. To say at that time that the enforcement of shariat laws had receded from the pale of practical politics is to give very accurate verdict on the actual nature and spirit of Firuz’s administration. Professor Habib has correctly remarked that for Barani ‘history was not a record or a chronicle or a story; it was very definitely a science—the science of the social order and its basis was not religion or tradition but observation and experience.

Barani has dealt with nine rulers of Delhi, from Balban to Firuz Shah Tughluq. His account of Balban is based upon what he heard from his maternal grandfather, Sipah Salar Husam-ud-Din. Balban’s reports about Sayyid Nur-ud-Din Mubarak Ghaznavi’s discourses at the court of Iltutmish have been cited on his authority. From the same source he obtained his information about the
wasaya of Balban. Husam-ud-Din went to Lakhnauti with Balban who appointed him as Shahna of that place after crushing the revolt of Tughril. His vivid account of the Lakhnauti campaign was probably based on his grandfather’s reports. Besides, Shams Dabir whom Balban dictated the instructions for Bughra Khan, was a relation of Amir Hasan Sijzi, a friend of Barani. It was from Hasan and Khusrau that he learnt about the life and activities of Prince Muhammad. From the times of Jalal-ud-Din Khalji to the reign of Firuz Tughluq he writes on the basis of personal observation and personal experience. He has referred to very few contemporary authorities. He considered an account of Khalji campaigns redundant as Taj-ud-Din had already covered that ground, and it was not Barani’s habit to follow the beaten track. One of the determining factors in his selection of data was, therefore, the availability or otherwise of literature on that topic. If material was available, he would abstain from giving details; if not, he would give the necessary details with interest. He says about Malik Qutb-ud-Din Hasan, an important member of the Turkan-i-Chehlgani, that volumes have been written about him, but his own account of the malik is brief, almost to the extent of being tantalizing. Though Barani does not mention this, all this contemporary literature must have been studied by him some time in his earlier days.

Had Barani any records, notes or memoranda when he wrote his Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi? Professor Habib thinks that he had nothing but his memory and his pen, ink and paper. This seems to be true with regard to the major portion of his work, but there are places in the Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi where one is constrained to feel that Barani had some recorded data available to him e.g., the lists of principal officers, governors etc., prefixed to the account of each Sultan. This could not obviously be a feat of his memory. Since these lists are not woven with the text, may be that he subsequently came to lay his hands on them and just put them at the proper places.

Was the Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi written before or after the Fatawa-i-Jahandari? The question is pertinent because on it depends the decision of the question if Barani was a political philosopher who took to history, or was he a historian who turned a philosopher—whether he cast history in the mould of his political thinking or his political ideas emanated from his knowledge of history. Internal evidences—style, structure and content—goes to prove that the Fatawa i-Jahandari was compiled after the Tarikh.

What were Barani’s motives in compiling the Tarikh-i-Firuz
Shahi? He wrote it because his frustrated soul found in it a satisfaction, a sense of self-realization and an opportunity to ‘immortalize’ his name and fame which seemed deserting him. It does not seem very correct to think that he wrote it in order to win Firuz Shah’s favour. He says again and again in the Tarikh that it was his desire that Firuz Shah could glance at his Tarikh.62 This was nothing more than a desire which developed when he started writing his book and not the real motive of compilation. Attention may be drawn to a problem in this respect. Barani condemns Muhammad bin Tughluq in harsh terms in this work. Firuz Shah, as we know from the Futuhat and other sources, had profound respect for him and used to refer to him as Khudavand wali niamat and Makhdum wa murabbi i-man.63 How could Barani expect to win Firuz’s favour through a work which found in his makhdum the traits of Nimrod and Pharaoh? Probably Firuz Shah also did not see eye to eye with his distinguished predecessor and, despite his public professions of attachment with Muhammad bin Tughluq, he had no real respect or affection for him.

Here a probability may be considered. Probably the Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi is not one but two books. It seems that the author intended to write two independent histories: one dealing with the early rulers from Balban to Muhammad bin Tughluq, and the other dealing exclusively with Firuz Shah Tughluq. He could not complete the second and decided to put them together under the title Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi. Several factors deserve consideration in this connection: (1) Barani, it appears, had different plans of writing history in his mind. At one time he thought of writing a Universal History64 but gave up the idea on two grounds: regard for a much venerated predecessor Minhaj-us-Siraj and the general indifference of people towards history. (2) Barani’s account of Kaiqubad leaves the impression that probably the historian wanted to write a separate monograph on that Sultan. (3) The two parts of the Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi, the earlier one and the later one dealing with Firuz, are, structurally and from the point of view of approach, analysis and treatment entirely different. Barani is sharp, incisively critical and at places bitter in the first part; he is a docile sycophant in the second. (4) Barani gives a list of themes which he proposed to deal with in his account of Firuz Shah. This list gives the impression of the planning of an independent work rather than being a chapter in a larger work.

The Barani of the last part of the Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi is a shameless flatterer. He finds divine attributes in the person of Firuz
Shah and considers his court as the court of Allah, where amirs stand as Gabriel stands before Arsh. While he extols Firuz to the skies, he condemns Khwaja Jahan in order to wash the earlier charge of being in league with him against Firuz Shah. Barani is condemned here by the canons he had himself formulated in the preface to his work. His reference to Khan-i-Jahan Maqbul is, however, significant. It is a praise which borders on a warning to Firuz Shah and reminds one of the observations of the author of Rauzut-us-Safa regarding the methods a historian should adopt to convey his real feelings. Barani remarks about him: 'For the last six years the Wizarat has been assigned to him. He has plenary and unrestricted authority in the Diwan-i-Wizarat and has been made a despot. Whatever concessions the Emperor has been pleased to confer upon him are such that no earlier Sultan of Delhi has ever conferred upon a Wazir.' There is praise and there is warning in what he says.

For an understanding of the Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi it is necessary to comprehend the expression and terminology of Barani. Some of the terms used by him have their special connotation which is necessary to understand in order to follow Barani’s thought. When he says that the Khaljis were not Turks, he does not use the word Turk in its racial sense; when he refers to Ala-ud-Din’s harsh regulations against the Hindus, he does not use the term Hindu in a communal sense; when he talks about the enhancement of taxation by Muhammad bin Tughluq as an increase from one to ten, he does not use the expression in its arithmetical sense.

It is difficult to do justice to Barani in a single paper. Here attention has been drawn to some of the basic aspects of his thought and personality. Barani is one of those historians who refuse to enlighten a reader unless he has thoroughly familiarized himself with the basic categories of his thought and the chief characteristics of his personality. The Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi is, indeed, for one who knows Ziya-ud-Din Barani.
REFERENCES

3. *Ibid.*, p. 1. See also p. 48, where, after describing the measures adopted by Balban in order to consolidate his power, he refers to the complete extinction of the family of Balban only 70 years after the latter’s death.
28. *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi*, pp. 18, 20, etc.
31. As two other contemporaries of Barani, Mir Khurd and Hamid Qalandar, had done.
32. The only manuscript of this work is preserved in the Riza Library, Rampur.
33. *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi*, p. 505. According to Barani all of them were low born: Najba, who was appointed malik and Gujarat, Multan and Badaun were assigned to him, was the son of a musician; Laddha was a gardener and Shaikh Babu Naik was the son of a weaver.
38. *Ibid.*, pp. 43, 464–465. Barani has particularly named the following
philosophers: Sad. Ubaid, Najm Intishar, Maulana Najm-ud-Din.

39. Ibid., pp. 43, 465.
40. Ibid., p. 68.
41. Ibid., p. 69.
42. Ibid., p. 200.
43. Ibid., p. 166.
44. Ibid., pp. 525–526.
45. Ibid., p. 467.
46. Ibid.

47. To cite only two instances:
   (a) Barani has great respect and admiration for Jalal-ud-Din Khalji whom he calls Sultan al-Halim and is all condemnation for those who brought about his tragic end. But this does not prevent him from giving details which show that it was Jalal himself who rushed into the open jaws of death, ignoring all counsels of caution and preparation.
   (b) Barani refers to the episode of Sayyidi Maula and credulously establishes connection between the dust storm and the scarcity that occurred soon afterwards. He refers to his own visit to Sayyidi also. But his account leaves one in no doubt that his khangah had become the refuge of discontented elements.
   Examples may be multiplied.

49. Ibid., p. 222.
50. Hardy: Historians of Medieval India, p. 39.
51. Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi, p. 77 et seq.
52. Ibid., p. 132 et seq.
53. Ibid., p. 184, 224 etc.
54. Ibid., p. 229 et seq.
55. Ibid., p. 375 et seq.
57. Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi, p. 41.
59. Ibid., p. 113.
60. The Political Theory of the Delhi Sultanate, p. 126.
61. Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi, pp. 24, 126, 174, etc.
62. Ibid., p. 125.
63. Futuhat-i-Firuz Shahi, pp. 18–19.
64. Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi, p. 49.
65. Ibid., p. 578.
66. Ibid., pp. 578–79.
67. Ibid., p. 176.
68. Ibid., p. 287.
69. Ibid., p. 473.
HISTORICAL WRITING IN MEDIEVAL KASHMIR

MOHIBBUL HASAN

In this paper an attempt is made to deal with only Persian historical writing in Kashmir during the Sultanate period. It is now commonly accepted that Kashmir is the only part of India where historical writing flourished in pre-Muslim times. But although many chronicles were written, the only one which has survived is Kalhana's *Rajatarangini*, completed in A. D. 1148–9.¹ Two hundred years later, Jonaraja continued the narrative down to the reign of Sultan Zain-ul-Abidin and called it, like Kalhana, *Rajatarangini*. After the death of Jonaraja in 1459, his pupil Shrivara continued the history from where he had left off and brought it down to 1486. When Shrivara died Prajayabhatta composed his *Rajavalipataka*, which covered the period from 1517 to 1596.² This was the last Sanskrit chronicle to have been written in Kashmir.

Thus Kashmir had a strong tradition of historical writing and, in addition, with the establishment of the Sultanate, many learned men who came from Persia and Turkistan brought with them the Persian and Central Asian traditions. But it is strange that not a single historical work appears to have been written in Persian during the first eighty years of the Sultanate. The only explanation seems to be that during this period the court language was Sanskrit. It is only from the reign of Sultan Zain-ul-Abidin (1420–70), that Persian replaced Sanskrit as the language of court and learning, and histories in Persian began to be composed. Two of these were by Mulla Ahmad and Mulla Nadiri, the Sultan's court poets. But unfortunately none of them is extant. Nor is there any trace of the histories written by Qazi Ibrahim in the second reign of Sultan Fath Shah (1493–1505) and by Mulla Hasan Qari in the time of the Chak rulers (1566–88).³ The only work composed in the pre-Mughal period that has survived is Sayyid Ali's *Tarikh-i-Kashmir*, written during Yusuf Shah's reign. All others, which are extant, were written during the Mughal period. Despite this, they must be regarded as the works of the Sultanate period because their authors were born and brought up in Kashmir and lived through the later Shah Mir and Chak periods. Thus the histories of the Sultanate period are the
Tarikh-i-Kashmir by Sayyid Ali completed in 1579\(^4\); the Tarikh-i-Kashmir by an anonymous writer (Aumer 287) written in 1590\(^5\); The Baharistan-i-Shahi, also anonymous, written in the time of Jahangir\(^6\); the Tarikh-i-Kashmir by Hasan b. Ali Kashmiri\(^7\) also written in the time of Jahangir; the Tarikh-i-Kashmir by Haidar Malik completed in 1620–21\(^8\). The other histories of Kashmir, besides being abridgements of the above works, were written in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries and do not, therefore, come within the purview of this study.

Among the above works the Baharistan-i-Shahi and Haidar Malik’s Tarikh are the most important. The others, though useful in certain respects, are poor in chronology, give usually a summary of events and omit important historical episodes. Sayyid Ali’s Tarikh, for example, is important only for Mirza Haidar Dughlat’s career in Kashmir, which he wrote from personal observation, and for the religious history of the Sultanate period, which covers nearly one-third of the book. But it is very deficient in chronology and for the most part passes over the political history of the Sultanate. The Tarikh-i-Kashmir—anonymous—(Aumer 267) which covers the history of Kashmir up to the reign of Sultan Shams-ud-Din (1540), also gives few dates and leaves out important events like the arrival of Sayyid Ali Hamadani in the Valley. Moreover, it is at places confused and unreliable. Hasan b. Ali’s Tarikh is a short history of Kashmir written at the request of Jalal-ud-Din Malik, a Kashmiri noble, who wanted to preserve the record of the achievements of his ancestors. It claims to cover the period from the ancient times to 1616, but it actually does not go beyond Sultan Hasan Shah’s reign (1472–84), except making only a casual reference to Yaqub Shah’s submission to Akbar.

On the other hand, the Baharistan-i-Shahi and Haider Malik’s Tarikh are more valuable both from the point of view of chronology and topography. Besides, they give a more detailed account of the period they cover than the other chronicles. Nothing is known of the author of the Baharistan except that he was, probably, in the service of the Baihaqi Sayyids\(^9\) and wrote at their suggestion, for he gives much space in his work to their careers and bestows excessive praise on them. His sources are Kalhana’s Rajatarangini, the chronicles of JonaRaja and Shrivara, the Persian histories of Mulla Ahmed, Mulla Nadiri, Qazi Ibrahim and Mulla Hasan Qari, which were extant in his time. As regards the later Shah Mirs and the Chaks, he wrote from personal experience or by gathering information from his con-
temporaries or near contemporaries.

Haider Malik wrote his *Tarikh* in order to preserve the memory and the great deeds of the kings of Kashmir and of his own ancestors who had played such an important role in the history of their country.\(^{10}\) Haider Malik descended from Ramachandra, commander-in-chief of Suhadeva, the last Hindu king of Kashmir. He himself was a man of great attainments, being a soldier, a statesman, a historian and an engineer. He served Yusuf Khan Chak for twenty four years and accompanied him in exile to Hindustan after the Mughal conquest of Kashmir. After the death of Yusuf Khan he entered the service of Jahangir who gave him the title of *Chaghatay* and *Rais-ul-Mulk*\(^{11}\). Haider Malik employed the same sources for his history as the author of the *Bahrastan-i-Shahi*. As regards the Chak Period, he was himself a witness to many events, being a young man at the time. In addition, he gathered information from his father and grandfather who held high offices in the government of the Sultanate.

It is difficult to point out to what extent the histories of Kashmir were influenced by the Kashmiri tradition of historiography as represented by Kalhana, Jonaraja or Shrivara. However, it is obvious from their study that they copied the tradition of historical writing in Hindustan and Persia with which they were in constant cultural contact. The Persian histories of Kashmir describe events in strict chronological sequence. Though sparing in dates they are compiled according to reigns, and describe rebellions, wars and conquests, rise and fall of dynasties. Episodes are interspersed with verses, carrying some moral, with anecdotes and with stories of miracles performed by the Sufis or of various other supernatural happenings in the rivers, springs, lakes and mountains of Kashmir\(^{12}\). They contain fairly good information about the spread of Islam in the Valley, but do not throw much light on the social and economic life of the people. Though mostly descriptive, they sometimes try to explain why things happened. Thus while describing the overthrow of Mirza Haidar Dughlat, Haidar Malik explains that this was due to his tyrannical measures which antagonized the people of Kashmir and led to their revolt\(^{13}\). The author of the *Bahrastan* is more explicit about this tyranny and says that Mirza Haidar was overthrown because of his persecution of the Shias, Shafis and Sufis\(^{14}\). Similarly these works attribute the Mughal conquest of Kashmir to Yusuf Shah's passing his time in ease and luxury and to his neglect of state affairs. They further attribute it to the neglect of the defences of the Valley by Yaqub Shah and to his persecution of Sunnis\(^{15}\).
One of the interesting features of the Persian histories of Kashmir is that they are written with a patriotic bias. The Kashmir historians love the green valleys of Kashmir, its high snow-capped mountains, its winding river Jehlum, its life-giving and sacred springs and its picturesque sceneries. They write with pride about the conquests of Sultan Shihab-ud-Din and of the cultural glories of the reign of Sultan Zain-ul-Abidin, and express admiration at the successful resistance offered by the Kashmiris to the Mughal invasions which began from 1527 onwards. They are critical of Yusuf Shah for having given up the struggle against the Mughals and surrendered to them, and admire his son Yaqub Shah for continuing the fight against heavy odds. And when finally Kashmir is conquered by the Mughals they are unhappy about it. Their grief at Kashmir's loss of independence is, of course, implied and becomes evident only after a careful study of the chronicles, for it must be remembered that they were written under the Mughals and their authors could not write openly anything which might displease their new masters.

Unlike most of important general histories of India and the histories of the provincial dynasties which ignore the pre-Islamic period of Indian history, the Persian histories of Kashmir commence with the legendary beginnings of the island and include the history of its ancient kings. This might be due to the fact that while no history of ancient India was available to the medieval historians to be drawn upon, there was ready to hand, so far as Kashmir was concerned, Kalhana's _Rajatarangini_ of which a Persian translation had also been made in the time of Zain-ul-Abidin.

The _Baharistan-i-Shahi_ is written in an ornate and verbose style, while Haidar Malik's _Tarikh_ is composed in a language which is simple and lucid. However, both write with considerable restraint and avoid strong language. They are, for example, not in the habit of sending non-Muslims to hell. They use words like _kufr_ and _kafir_, but these are not employed in a derogatory sense; and although they describe at length the activities of Sayyid Ali Hamadani and his son Mohammad Hamadani in spreading Islam in the Valley, they do not write with the fanatic zeal of a Barani or Badauni. The Kashmir historians are, for the most part, tolerant and objective in their assessments. Thus the author of the _Baharistan_, though a Shia, disapproves of Yaqub Shah’s intolerant policy towards Sunnis, and criticises the execution of Qazi Musa, which was ordered because of his refusal to recite the name of Ali in the _azan_. Similarly, while
both Haidar Malik and the author of the *Baharistan* describe the iconoclastic activities of Sultan Sikandar, they do not seem to disapprove of the measures taken by Sultan Zain-ul-Abidin and his successors to rehabilitate Hinduism in Kashmir and to treat Hindus liberally. The author of the *Baharistan* observes:

The temples destroyed during the time of Sultan Sikandar were rebuilt. Those Hindus who had fled to Jammu and Kishtawar were recalled. The learning of Hindus was encouraged. Hindus were given complete freedom of worship and freedom to perform their customs. They, therefore, began to celebrate their festivals on particular days of the year. Zain-ul-Abidin himself used to participate in them. He gave presents to singers and dancers and because of this he was very popular. The result of the revival of Hinduism under Zain-ul-Abidin was that Hindu rites and customs revived among the Muslims also. Even men of learning and the *ulema* practised them. This continued until the time of Shams-ud-Din Iraqi who took up arms against the idolatrous practices.

The source of these historians for the ancient history of Kashmir was Kalhana’s *Rajatarangini*, but unfortunately they never cared to adopt Kalhana’s technique. In consequence, they did not consult inscriptions or deeds; nor is there any evidence to suggest that they utilized the archives which were maintained by the Sultans, or read the histories of the Sultanate of Delhi. Their only sources were the earlier Kashmiri works whose accounts were accepted uncritically. This failure to consult any other historical work, except those of Kashmir, is responsible for many inaccuracies in their accounts. For example, basing themselves mainly upon the histories of their predecessors, they have recorded that Shihhab-ud-Din conquered Badakshan, Kabul, Ghazni and Qandahar, and then marched with a large army to conquer Delhi. He encamped on the banks of the Sutlej where he was opposed by Firuz Shah Tughlaq. Here a battle took place, but it was indecisive. In the end peace was made. It was agreed that all the territory from Sirhind to Kashmir was to belong to Shihhab-ud-Din, while the rest lying to the east was to go to Firuz Shah. In addition to the territorial settlement, a marriage alliance was also entered into between the rulers of Delhi and Srinagar.

If the contemporary histories were to be studied, this account would be found to be spurious. In fact, if the Kashmir historians had cared to consult the histories of the Delhi sultanate and Turkistan, they would not have fallen into these errors. But their uncritical approach added to their anxiety to magnify the achievements of a
Kashmir Sultan, owing to their false sense of patriotism, prevented them from sifting fact from fiction.

As I have already pointed out that all the Kashmir historians based themselves on common sources. The result is that there is sameness and monotony in their descriptions. Thus the accounts of the establishment of the Shah-Mir dynasty, of the conquests made by Sultan Shihab-ud-Din, of the activities of Sayyid Ali Hamdani and his son Muhammad Hamdani, and of the achievements of Sultan Zain-ul-Abidin read all alike in the chronicles. It is only when we come to the later Shah Mir and Chak periods that there appear variety and differences in the accounts. This is because there are no longer any common sources to draw upon.

REFERENCES

4. Research and publication Department, Srinagar.
5. Tarikh-i-Kashmir (K. Hof-Statsbibliothek Munich).
8. Haidar Malik, Tarikh-i-Kashmir, India Office 509.
9. The Baihaqi Sayyids came to Kashmir in the time of Sultan Sikandar. They married in the royal family, and played an important part in the political affairs of the valley. One of the Baihaqi Sayyids for a short period even wore the crown.
10. Haidar Malik, Tarikh-i-Kashmir, f. 3a.
11. The main reason why these titles were conferred upon Haidar Malik was that he, together with his brother Ali Malik, saved the life and honour of Mehr-un-Nisa after Sher Afgan had been killed. (See my article ‘A Note on the Assassination of Sher Afgan’ in Dr. Yazdani Commemoration Volume, ed., H. K. Sherwani, 1966.)
12. There is a whole section devoted by Haidar Malik in his Tarikh to supernatural events happening in lakes, streams etc., of Kashmir.
13. Ibid., 146a.
15. Haidar Malik, Tarikh-i-Kashmir, 192a–b ; Baharistan-i-Shahi, ff. 181a–b.
16. Ibid.
17. Ibid., ff. 48b ff.
18. Ibid., f. 20b ; Haidar Malik, Tarikh-i-Kashmir, ff. 108 b–109b.
THE MIRAT-I-SIKANDARI OF SHAIKH SIKANDAR
AND ITS PREDECESSORS

S. C. MISRA

The Mirat-i-Sikandari of Sikandar bin Manjhu has the rather unenviable or probably enviable distinction of having blanketeted its predecessors and successors. It has come to be recognised as a handy reference work for the history of Gujarat, to be more particular, for the history of the Sultans of Gujarat. The eighteenth century Mughal historian, the author of an equally or even more celebrated history of Mughal Gujarat, did little more than to summarise the earlier Mirat in the few pages he devoted to the Sultanate; subsequent writers, even the British ones, went hardly further when they dealt cursorily with the same period. It was not until Sir Denison Ross chanced to discover the equally valuable, equally copious Zafar-ul-Wali, the only secular history, so far as I know, to be written in Arabic in this country, did it come to be recognised that the Mirat had compeers of equal value—that the pedestal on which it had been placed did little justice either to itself or to those whom it had served to supplant. For one of the consequences of this oblivion to which other histories had been consigned was that, while the Mirat’s own copies had proliferated in libraries, both Indian and foreign, the copies of other works had become scarce to the point of vanishing—and one of the most valuable had vanished altogether.

Yet, Gujarat had been well-served by its historians. Right from the time of the first Sultan, histories, chronicles and, let us also admit, fulsome euologies had begun to be composed. It is not my purpose here to list these or to recount their historical worth: that I have done elsewhere and it has also been done by other writers.¹ I wish only to suggest that ‘official’ history writing was patronised by the Sultans from the very start, and that Sikandar was very true, though not very charitable, when he asserted that these historians, writing in the age of those whose acts they recorded, preferred discretion to truth by failing to include prejudicial items.²

It is unfortunate that all but two or three of the histories used by Sikandar, have not come down to us or have not so far been discovered, and, therefore, we are not in a position to judge his ver-
dict. Nevertheless, to an extent evaluation is possible, it cannot be
denied that these historians had all the failings and all the excellen-
ces of ‘court’ historians—though not in all cases. Hulwi Shirazi’s
versified Tarikh-i-Ahmad Shahi seems to have sacrificed matter for
form, at least in the rather stilted verses quoted in the Mirat.
Thus, the English translations have lost nothing by omitting these
profuse fulminations. Possibly, in his more ‘prosaic’ moments, which
Sikandar did not think worth quoting, Hulwi did contribute some-
thing—but if internal evidence is any guide, it does not seem likely.

More valuable and more ambitious are the annalistic, universal
histories which have fortunately come down to us, all belonging to
the reign of Sultan Mahmud Shah popularly called ‘Begado’ in Guja-
rat. The earliest appears to be Tarikh-i-Mahmud Shahi, whose
authorship is in doubt; the next probably is Tabaqat-i Mahmoud Shahi
by Abdul Karim Nimdihi continued in the Zamima-i-Mahmud
Shahi. The third, again a universal history, Tarikh-i Sadar Jahan,
which is hardly a history of India at all. Undoubtedly a monument
of extensive learning, its major value in the present context is to indi-
cate the pattern of scholarship flourishing in the court of Ahmeda-
bad—or to be found in the cloisters of Patan where, as I was told,
archars held history in disdain while pursuing the elevated disci-
plines, hadith and fiqh.

I have not yet had the opportunity to go through the Tabaqat-
i-Mahmud Shahi, though I am given on good authority that it ‘has
not so great a value as could be expected.’

Probably, its flowery
style obscures some of its descriptions. Even a greater limitation can
be said to be the annalistic form which the author imposed upon
himself and which, valuable from the point of view of chronology,
permits little latitude for reflection, the essence of historiography.
Finally, it was probably never completed, and both of its manuscripts
are the ‘very incomplete draft of an incomplete text.’

The Tarikh-i-
Mahmud Shahi is more rewarding for the historian of Gujarat, but it
was on this work that Sikandar directed his barbs. In his opinion
the author has used his ample talents in camouflaging the truth.

Court histories or histories written to order or written to
please as these two histories are may be detailed, may be meticulous
and, of course, florid and verbose—but they rarely, if at all, tell the
whole truth and nothing but the truth. This tendency to varnish the
rough surface is uppermost in a contemporary history of Malwa, the
Maathir-i-Mahmud Shahi of al-Kirmani, whose tortuous and convo-
luted prose meanders through nearly eight hundred pages of high-
flown epithets.

It was to sift the truth from the chaff of such verbiage and downright adulteration that Sikandar took up the pen. These strictures on his predecessors which Sikandar passes and his own apologia deserve quotation:

'And it is evident that whichever of these writers hoped for reward or patronage from these rulers, owing to this reason, abstained from including full and true description of events in the aforesaid histories; so, nothing is included in these pages which is not the praise of these patrons, although man is not free from faults or virtues....

And in the account of the Sultans of Gujarat of just dealings, I have not thought it proper to refer to only their good acts and to leave the others in ambiguity; for, after weighing, their good deeds were found to be more than their bad ones and, in some, even non-existent. In any case, whatever bad or good has been heard from trustworthy persons or gleaned from scanning histories, has been reduced to writing so that it might be known to the readers, as to what extent goodness emanated from them and how far they abstained from evil; and, what means they adopted for conquest (Jahangiri) and what for rulership (Jahanbani). Consequently, the compendium has been entitled that *Mirror of Sikandar* so that the totality of the event may be reflected in it without diminution or addition.......

Sikandar was sincere in his apologia for bringing a new article in an already well-supplied market. In his opinion, even when the whole truth was told, his cherished images would not be tarnished; rather they would gain, for at least the worst would have been said and the ambiguity removed.

It may be doubted if this alone was the reason which, despite his numerous difficulties, made Sikandar 'put his hand to pen and paper.' It was obvious that the age of the Sultans had already passed into oblivion; he could expect no reward, no patronage for his labours except probably a well-earned reputation. Several other imperatives which moved Sikandar in the evening of his life to undertake this difficult, and not too rewarding, task may also be discovered.

That Sikandar loved his region and had a nostalgia for the past should not, however, in any case, not be overlooked. To him, the Gujarat of the Mughals could not hold a candle to the Gujarat of the Sultans. 'Blessed be Allah' he bewails of the fled glories of Champanir, 'was it this Champanir—now the abode of tiger and the lion?
Its buildings are ruined, its inhabitants have given their property to the winds of destruction, even its waters are poisoned......Even the Koranic saying has been here realized: 'Every thing on earth shall perish except the Face of the Glorious and Gracious Lord'.

Elsewhere too, for instance, when he speaks of the prowess of the Sultans against the Portuguese and the relative weakness of the Mughals, Sikandar's comparison is always in favour of the bygone age. Sorath, the country which combined in itself the excellences of Malwa, Khandesh and Gujarat and whose ports supplied Gujarat with merchandise—the same country has been ruined 'on account of the constant change of its governors and has become the land of marauding free-booters, swindling merchants, charlatanic priests, grasping land-owners and ragged soldiers.'

This is evidently not wholly true; the Gujarat of Akbar and Jahangir, it may be doubted, was really less prosperous than the Gujarat of Mahmud Shah Begada and Muzaffar Shah. It sounds like the wail of an old man always seeing his own age and earlier ones in a halo. But is there something more to it?

Sikandar, it will be recalled, was two generations old in Gujarat. His father entered Gujarat with Humayun and presumably stayed on in the service of the highly venerated and princely Sayyids of Batwa. It was in this service that Miyan Manjhu, Sikandar's father, attained to some distinction and it was with him and his son, Sayyid Mirar, and grandson, Sayyid Hamid, that Sikandar first underwent his adult experiences. Throughout the age of Akbar and till the 5th year of Jahangir's reign, when he entered the Imperial service, he remained with the Sayyids.

Sikandar consequently acquired the dual character of a foreign 'elite'—in Gujarat he was a member of an essentially foreign community which borrowed its culture from the North, but among their compeers elsewhere the members of this community had become sufficiently indigenised to the land of their adoption, to be termed as its denizens. Sikandar's basic orientation was to this foreign, ruling aristocracy, and to them he was concerned in proving the greatness of the land to which he and they belonged, the heritage which it had. He was not concerned with the shadowy past; even the Gujarat of the Delhi Sultans did not interest him as it hardly contributed to the glory of Gujarat in itself. But with the Sultans it was a different story; probably, Sikandar would not have been averse to the statement that of all the Mughal subas, Gujarat had the most glorious past.
I should like to suggest that this feeling which acculturised a foreign bureaucracy to the land of its adoption and makes it take pride in its own achievements there—it is akin to the embryonic nationalism which sprouted in a pre-industrial society. It did not go deep among the people, for the responses there were to different stimuli, and the patterns of thought which Sikandar expresses had not seeped through to them. Consequently, it was hardly pervasive, paper-thin, limited to the surface alone; but it did provide an identification and a cognitive we and non-we framework to the ruling strata.

The present consequently, a commonly shared heritage was not so bright to Sikandar as the past which distinguished Gujarat and the Gujaratis among the Mughal aristocracy. It is therefore at the hands of that section of the Mughal aristocracy which hailed from Gujarat—and not the least of whom were the Sayyids of Batwa—that Sikandar expected recognition and praise if not more material rewards. And, it could also drive home to other nobles occupying exalted positions, more exalted than probably held by Gujarat-origin nobles, the value of the heritage of Gujarat and its people. The fact that Sikandar presented a copy of his work personally to Itimad-ud-Daula, probably journeying to Agra for this purpose, indicates, not merely a desire to gain mundane ends but also a pride of an author in his book and its subject.

To some extent, I think this trait was shared by all regional aristocracies, though about Gujarat we are better informed because of its richer historiographic and literary tradition—and also probably because, next to the Gangetic Heartland and Bengal, it was materially the most prosperous of the Mughal subas. Its sea-coast also permitted a more frequent association with the Arabic and Persian tradition, leading to the birth of an indigenous Muslim tradition, developed by the local Muslim communities, some of them regarded as heretical by the official classes. How deep was the Gujarat ‘mark’ and how it differed from the stamp imprinted by other regions, it is obviously difficult to say. But that it was, that it served to differentiate and probably to categorise the ruling strata at its several levels, and that it inculcated a sense of pride and belonging to their regions, seems to be fairly clear.

I have referred earlier to Sikandar’s service under the Sayyids of Batwa and to his father’s rise under them and his own lifelong association with them. While Sikandar’s admiration for the Sultans of Gujarat is obvious, his respect and veneration for his patron’s
family and their forbears was probably even greater. The Sultanate of Gujarat was the gift of Hazrat Makhdum Jahanyan to Zafar Khan; his successor in Gujarat Sayyid Burhan-ud-Din provided Zafar Khan’s successor, Qutb-ud-Din Shah the means with which he saved himself against Mahmud Shah, the Sultan of Malwa. It was when Qutb-ud-Din Shah turned against this allegiance that he perished: his successor, the greatest of the Sultans of Gujarat, was brought up in the household of Shah Alam, the greatest of the Sayyids, who, incidentally, is still venerated in Gujarat.

Examples like these can be multiplied, for Sikandar’s history is replete with them. In fact, Sikandar’s bias or favour becomes apparent when his history is seen together with either the Tabaqat-i-Akbari or the Gulshan-i-Ibrahim. Neither of these writers give the same pre-eminence to the Sayyids, as Sikandar does in his pages. It might even be plausibly argued that Sikandar is using the Sultans as a convenient frame to put his patrons on a pedestal.

This would, nevertheless, be hardly fair to Sikandar. Sikandar visualised no dichotomy between these who appeared to him to be the temporal and the religious upholders of the realm. Rather, the temporal rulers, while supreme in their own sphere, had the obligation to bow to the superior authority, denoted by orthodoxy, by spiritual heritage and by personal eminence in the religious field. Simultaneously, the spiritual pillars of the kingdom had the obligation to come to the rescue of the ruler when in difficulty and the kingdom prospered when the balance was kept. It was Sikandar’s deep regret that the unwritten agreement was not always observed, and he holds the Sultans, not the Sayyids, reponsible for this.

Underlying this position is the medieval assumption of cause and effect......the widely accepted fact of a supernatural agency interfering to alter the usual course of events. Like almost all other men in his age, Sikandar believed in the prowess conferred by spiritual discipline, by austerity and, it would seem, by voluntary self-humiliation. Virtue therefore was not just an spiritual enhancement of personality but, also, a means through which environment could be changed or at least affected. It was thus to be cultivated by those so gifted; by others such men were to be respected.

Obviously, Sikandar saw these values in the context of the conservative, orthodox framework of his age. Both the rulers and the saints were seen by him to have the primary duty to uphold the faith, to uproot heresy, and also to maintain proper order in the realm, to foster sanctioned virtues. Conflicts between Muslim rulers
were to be avoided as far as possible—but it was not always possible, for rulers too were, more often than not, fallible men. Thus, it may be noted that Sikandar does not hold the rulers of Gujarat responsible for the duel with Malwa; he is ‘patriotic’ enough to lay the blame on the Malwa Sultans, though this may not always be historically accurate.

Given this framework, it is not surprising that Sikandar, convinced of the spiritual attainment and the exalted status of the Sayyids of Batwa, particularly of Shah Alam and his successors, should have viewed the inevitable tension between Ahmedabad and Batwa as something of a deplorable turpitude on the part of the Sultans. History to him, as he wrote in the introduction of his book, is teaching by example; the actions of the great in the past are lessons for the present. The history of the Sayyids of Batwa was to him as rich as that of the Sultans in this respect.

It seems to me that what appears to us as deliberate exaltation was to Sikandar the proper perspective. In placing Makhdum Jahan-iyan, Sayyid Burhan and Shah Alam on a pedestal, he was reflecting a current and widely felt sentiment in Gujarat. With their collateral branch at Dholkah, he had personal experience. And since nearly a third of his history was devoted to the last forty years of the Sultanate preceding Mughal conquest—a period of politics sometimes by means other than diplomacy among the nobles, in which Sayyid Mubarak and his sons took active part, Sikandar recounts this in detail.

It is understandable that Sikandar betrays a partiality to the part played by his father in the service of Sayyid Mubarak. Much of the information for this period which he describes in great detail was derived from his father and elder brother, Shaikh Yusuf. It may, therefore, be that it is not filial affection alone which has placed this aspect rather out of proportion: the source material itself dictated it, helped as it was by a sympathetic rancour.

However, it is at this place that Sikandar reveals some of his less pleasant attitude, traits which are not uncommon in those who seek the favour of essentially capricious masters. Thus, he goes out of the way to run down a work written for Sayyid Mubarak by a fellow ‘scribe’—Aram Kashmiri, also in the same employ. It would appear that Aram Kashmiri and Sikandar were rivals and there was little love lost between them—or probably, Sikandar’s father and this author had been colleagues. In any case, Aram’s history has not come down to us, but Sikandar’s rather unfair remark
It does not leave the impression, taken with the paragraph which follows it, in which Sikandar quotes the authority of his father and brother, that this interpolation is rather uncalled for and not quite in the best of taste.

Likewise, Sikandar has been less than fair to his earlier predecessors. His diatribe on them has already been quoted and, from what we know, they deserved it—but with at least one exception, the Tarikh-i-Bahadur Shahi.

From what we know, Sikandar derived the bulk of his information from this work, celebrated as it must have been in his days. In fact, Sikandar’s historiography is at its best when he is following this author; in later pages, where he relied upon ‘trustworthy persons’ he is prone to indulge in lengthy anecdotes and to collate information rather than to sift it. But it is surprising that though Sikandar must have had this work almost constantly by this side, must have known in detail about it and its author, he never cites him by name. It is not through the Mirat but by Zafar-ul-Walih that we are able to identify Husam Khan as the author.

In fact, the omission of any direct reference to the author by name is so glaring that Sir Denison Ross termed it as a ‘conspiracy of silence’. It does not seem fair to accuse Sikandar of deliberate suppression; at one point he does go out of his way to point out a high noble of Mahmud Shah Begada as the ‘forbear of the author of Tarikh-i-Bahadur Shahi’. But Sikandar’s initial reference to ‘a person (shahs) as being the author of this work when he should have known the name, the title, and the designation of the person concerned, the total absence of Husam Khan’s very name in Sikandar’s history and, finally, Sikandar’s slighting reference to the work he so largely depended upon—they indicate a person, who to say the least cantakerous and niggardly in acknowledging due indebtedness.

Sikandar’s work, like other creative writing, is an epitome of his personality, a reflection of his weltanschauung. He belonged to a class which primarily depended on landed aristocracy for its livelihood, and which was inclined not so much towards the profession of arms as to civil occupations. To his category belonged probably the diwans, naib-diwans and a host of other functionaries who administered the jagirs of Mughal nobles and looked after their other interests during their long absences. In other and parallel spheres, men of his class and ability functioned in the numerous civil and judicial positions opened up by the Mughal administration as qazis, as muhtasibs, and amins and a host of other posts.
Therefore, it is not surprising to find in him traits and attitudes of this class. He had prodigious learning, an ability to write the language with clarity and a degree of elegance and, in his own way, the capacity to sift evidence. He had his limitations; he could not see below the surface of events because, for him, history meant the recording of events with moral overtones—not their analysis or dissection to discover their inner logic. He had his prejudices, his jealousies which he could not succeed in keeping away from his work. He had also his beliefs which necessarily formed the infrastructure of his history.

Essentially, Sikandar appears to me as a typical Mughal intellectual—conservative, learned, opinionated but veracious, unimaginitive and highly responsive to the sanctioned social and religious attitudes. One of the chief qualities which his history possesses is that it mirrors these traits—and has thus become an excellent specimen of the age in which it was written.

REFERENCES

1. A full discussion of the sources of the Mirat, period of composition has been made in the Introduction to the Baroda edition of the work and is not repeated here. It also contains a full bibliography of the literature on this work. (The Mirat-i-Sikandari of Shaikh Sikandar ibn Muhammad urf Manjhu ibn Akbar : edited by S. C. Misra and M. L. Rehman : Baroda, the M. S. University of Baroda, 1961. Introduction, pp. 1–56 : Bibliography pp. 53–6.)

I should like to refer to two important articles which have appeared since this bibliography was prepared. They are : Z. A. Desai, Mirat-i-Sikandari as a source for the study of cultural and social conditions of Gujarat under the Sultanate (1403–1572), Journal of the Oriental Institute, Baroda, Vol. X No. 3 (March 1961) ; and Jean Aubin, The Secretary of Mahmud Gawan and his lost chronicle, Journal of the Research Society of Pakistan, Vol. I Part II (October 1964) pp. 9–13.

3. Aubin op. cit. p. 11.
4. Ibid., p. 11.
5. MS., p. 2.
7. MS., p. 115–16 : Translation, p. 52.
10. MS. pp. 10–11, 71–7, 80–1, 90–1 et seq. For Shah Alam also see p. 123, et. seq. and for Shaikh Jiu, see pp. 170–1, 228–30 et seq.
11. For instance the story of Malik Muhammad Ikhtiyyar and Dawar-ul-Mulk.
MS., p. 161 et. seq.


15. MS., p. 126.

MIRZA NATHAN—A MEMOIRIST OF THE 17 CENTURY*

QEYAMUDDIN AHMAD

The discovery of the *Baharistan*\(^1\) was hailed as an ‘epoch-making achievement for the reconstruction of the history of North-Eastern India’ by Dr. Borah who edited and translated the full manuscript\(^2\). Prior to its discovery the contemporary sources of information on the history of Bengal and Assam were of a limited utility. They contained very little about the details of the political and social history of the area. The debt which the history of the region owes to Mirza Nathan is indeed great, and it has been acknowledged by the discoverer of the work, Dr. J. N. Sarkar, in the following words, ‘No period of the history of Medieval Bengal is now known even in half such fulness and accuracy of detail...as the reign of Jahangir (1601–1627)\(^3\). This aspect of the work has rightly been emphasised by all the writers who have noticed it since its discovery\(^4\). But the pre-occupation with only one aspect of the work has resulted in a neglect of its basic nature and parts of its content.

The *Baharistan* is essentially a memoir of Ala-ud-Din Isfahani (alias Mirza Nathan), entitled Shitab Khan. It has the format of formal Persian chronicles with its division into four *Daftars* each with its headings and sub-headings\(^5\). But the central character of the whole work, like all good memoirs—is the writer himself. It is around his activities that the whole story is woven. The main purpose of the book is to narrate a part of the memoirist’s career. The details of the provincial history and the military expeditions come in secondarily, as parts incidental to the expounding of the careers of the memoirist and his father.

The author begins the work in the usual style of formal chronicles. ‘As it occurred to the mind of this most insignificant one that if a small portion of the events of Bengal which took place during the prosperous reign of...Jahangir Badshah...be put into writing (then) the imprint of that writing will remain on the pages of time...
Therefore...it has been written with the hope that if it comes before the scrutinising eyes of the scholars...they will adorn it with the pen of correction, and incorporate its contents into the history of Jahangir.'

But a close perusal of its contents shows that they are more like the entries of a personal diary. Events and incidents are not described in their entirety at one place, but are scattered over different pages (perhaps as they happened or as the author recalled them).

The book is divided into four Daftars, three of them relating to the events of three Subadars of Bengal, Islam Khan, Qasim Khan and Ibrahim Khan. The fourth contains an account of the events in Bengal and Bihar during the rebellion of Shahjahan. Daftars I and III are dedicated to the respective Subadars and named after them. The real link between the three Subadars is Mirza Nathan himself. The period has not been selected because of any intrinsic merit or historical importance, but because it coincides with the active military career of the memoirist himself. The first Daftar begins with the appointment of Islam Khan as the Subadar of Bengal, but that is about all. Thereafter the chief topic is the appointment of Ihtimam Khan, father of Mirza Nathan, as the Mir Bahr and his journey towards Bengal. Even the story of the suppression of the provincial chiefs is told more in terms of the exploits of Mirza Nathan and his father. Minor events of disagreements between the Subadar and Mirza Nathan and his father are described in disproportionate lengths (pp. 33–34, 115, 147, 154, 156, etc.) The importance of the memoirist and his father in these minor disputes is exaggerated much—after all they were the subordinate officers of the Subadar, but one is made to feel as if the disputes related to important matters of state policy between officers of equal rank. The same is true of the other Daftars. If someone statistically inclined took up the checking of the space allotted in each of the Daftar to the Subadar, on the one hand, and the memoirist and his father, on the other, he may well find the ratio at 1 : 2, or even more.

The discoverer of the manuscript Dr. Sarkar also refers to this point. ‘The Baharistan’, he writes, ‘professes to be a history of Bengal and Orissa under the three Subadars...but it is as much a very detailed record of the doings of the Shitab Khan and of his father Ihtimam Khan as a history of the Subadars, and nearly half of the book can be better styled ‘the Memoirs of Shitab Khan.’ But he goes on to add that its real value lies in the ‘full details which it supplies
of the complete subjugation of the Bengal and Orissa zamindars...and of the long and endless wars of the Mughal empire with the Mongoloid Kingdom on its eastern border.'

Prof. Sharma, who examined the work at some length, puts it under the section of Provincial Histories in his *Bibliography of Mughal India*, although it has a Section on Memoirs too. He criticises the 'vaingloriousness' of the writer—he is one of the most vainglorious writers of history, whose one aim seems to have been to exalt his own services...whenever the Mughals win a victory he is the mainspring thereof; whenever a disaster befalls them it is due to the jealousy of his superiors.' The egocentricity, and even boastfulness, of the author is quite evident, but the point is that it is in keeping with the basic nature of the work—a memoir. All memoirists tend to see things from their own angles and to emphasise the crucial importance of themselves in shaping the events. But while good memoirists are able to guide and control the projection of their images, Shitab Khan sometimes makes himself appear ludicrous. This is a defect common to many memoirists but is in keeping with the nature of the work.

Attention may also be drawn in this connection to the informal style and the personalised nature of some of the entries and to the intimate portrayals of the rebel-prince (pp. 763, 769, 772, 775–776) and other high dignitaries (pp. 115–116, 155–156). The vivid sketch of a defeated, harried and hungry Shahjahan sleeping under a tree with his quiver as his pillow and breakfasting on the roasted meat of a goat caught in the jungle near Sasaram (p. 763); of Shahjahan walking upto Mirza Nathan and picking up the letter he was writing to his family (p. 772); of the young prince Aurangzeb (the stern puritan Emperor of the future) surreptitiously eating some of the Martaban bananas kept aside for Mirza Nathan by Shahjahan (p. 780), are in refreshing contrast to the conventionalised character portrayals in the official chronicles.

Another daring and vivid sketch is that of Islam Khan, the great Subadar, getting annoyed with his son, Hushang, over some trifling matter and beating him up in the presence of all the courtiers. "Before the whip was brought, he put his head below his knees and taking hold of an ewer, began to beat him with it...an order was given to Khwaja Danish to beat him with the bamboos of the canopy. When he began to cry saying,—'You beat me yourself; please do not allow the Khwaja to strike me with the sticks' he ordered the attendants to beat him." The *Diwan* and some other officers who
tried to save him also ‘received several blows.’ (pp. 155–156). Entries like this are more fitting to a personal diary than to provincial history.

A peculiar feature of the work is its rather stilted style. Unlike all other memoirs, the narrative is, in many parts, not in the first person, which makes some of the entries appear affected and artificial. The author frequently refers to himself simply as Nathan or uses the customary humble epithets about himself. In the concluding portion he uses the title of Shitab Khan. If one did not know about his title or alias one might feel that the author is writing about someone else.

In fact there is a marked dichotomy of style throughout the work. It is a curious mixture of affected formal passages along with informal intimate pieces.

The end of the work is also noteworthy. It is abrupt and quite unlike that of a formally prepared work. The story begins somewhere in the middle and ends much before the logical conclusion. One feels as if a cinema reel has been snapped in the middle. Even the story of Shahjahan’s rebellion, which is the main topic of Daftar IV. has not been narrated to its full extent.

Dr. Borah feels confident that the work, as it was found, is complete. However, there are sufficient grounds to doubt whether the extant copy is complete or whether it represents the finished form. It appears more likely that the present copy is an incomplete draft copy based on some casual notes which Shitab Khan maintained; and he, subsequently, tried to convert it into a formal history. He made some preliminary arrangement of the assorted materials (viz., the division into Daftars, the Introductions to the different Daftars and their dedication to the Subadars, etc.), but could not complete the work.

As pointed out by Prof. Sharma, the table of contents attached to the manuscript contains summaries of chapters. But the summaries are not reliable—‘the author not infrequently taking the wish for the deed, and thus mentioning many things in the summaries of the chapters which he probably intended to put therein but ultimately decided otherwise.’ This also lends credence to the doubts about the extant copy being a tentative draft. As remarked earlier, the pre-occupation with only one aspect of the work has resulted not only in the neglect of its basic nature but in the non-utilisation of a lot of other materials scattered in its pages. Apart from the account of the expansion of Mughal rule in the area, which has already been
closely examined, there is good deal of information about administra-
tive, military and social matters which deserve our attention. The
instances mentioned below are by no means exhaustive. They have
been selected only to illustrate the point.

Prof. Sharma, too, refers to the ‘manifold interest’ of the work.
But many of the instances, noticed here, are not included in the
summary abstracts published by him or passed over briefly without
comments.

**ADMINISTRATIVE MATTERS**

At the end of the first **Daftar**, while describing the consequen-
tial official changes, following the death of Islam Khan, the author
mentions a significant administrative point. He writes, ‘It was laid
down in the imperial regulations that when the **Subadar** of Bengal
died, the highest imperial officer who stayed at Monghyr was to take
charge of that office...If there be no man of this position at Monghyr,
then the **Subadar** of Bihar should go to Bengal.’ This order of
precedence has not been mentioned in any **Dastur-ul-Amal** or official
history. It raises many questions. What was the idea behind this
rule? Obviously, the **Subadar** of Bihar was a man of much higher
rank than the highest imperial officer who stayed a Monghyr. Why
then should the latter claim precedence in succession to the **Subadari**
of Bengal? Was it because the latter was in a position to reach
Dacca more quickly and thus obviate the dangers which a long gap
could cause to the stability of the **Suba**? If so, was it a rule applic-
cable only to Bihar and Bengal? Or were there similar rules in
regard to the other **Subas**? Even though the work does not give
any answer to these questions it is important because it enables us to
raise them.

Nathan goes on to add that Zafar Khan, the **Subadar** of
Bihar, in his eagerness to succeed to the **Subadari** of Bengal, violated
this rule, and bypassing the claims of Qasim Khan, the brother of
Islam Khan, who was then at Monghyr, went to Dacca to assume
charge. However, the **Diwan**, the **Bakhshi** and the Newswriter of
the **Suba** informed the Emperor that Zafar Khan was then engaged
in besieging the Raja of Kukradesh (modern Chotanagpur area), and
that if he had persisted with the siege for sometime more he could
have secured from the Raja ‘diamonds weighing thirty two **misqals**
as **peshkash.**’ The Emperor got annoyed and ordered Zafar Khan
to finish his incompleted task and appointed Qasim Khan (who was
entitled under the rules) as Subadar of Bengal. The incident shows that the rule was observed. It also shows that the subordinate provincial officers, particularly the Newswriters, did sometime report on the violations of rules and regulations by the Subadar. They must have enjoyed adequate departmental security to enable them to work fearlessly.

We get another instance which amply illustrates the fearlessness and ingenuity of the Provincial Newswriters. During the interval after the departure of Islam Khan's son to Agra and the arrival of Qasim Khan at Dacca, the men of Mirza Husain Beg, the Provincial Diwan, took over control of some of the market-places, formerly under the charge of the Kotwal of Islam Khan. The control of market places being a lucrative charge, Qasim Khan after his arrival appointed his own Kotwal of markets, and he tried to take possession from the Diwan's men. It led to a fracas between the Diwan's sons and their armed men and the Subadar's contingents. The former were suppressed, beaten and arrested, and their properties were confiscated.

Khwaja Yaghma, the Newswriter, was in a fix as to how to report the matter to the Emperor. Qasim Khan controlled the frontiers so tightly that 'even a bird cannot fly from this side to Upper India (Hindusthan) without his knowledge and orders, not to speak of letters of the Khans and the reports of the chroniclers.' At the same time if he failed to report the incident and the Emperor learnt about it from some other source, 'how shall I stand an enquiry?' So he thought of a good device. He got two of his runners disguised as jogis and sent them to Anirai Singh Dalan, a close attendant of Jahangir. They were to present themselves along with the Rai, under the Jharoka-i-Darshan and to report the matter to the Emperor. The runners 'with many false pretences' went all the way from Dacca to Agra and did as instructed. The Emperor took cognizance of the matter and deputed an officer, Saadat Khan, to enquire into it. Qasim was warned that 'in consideration of the services of the Chishti family and our own favours to them we do not desire to ruin his career.' He was ordered to pacify the Diwan, obtain a letter of satisfaction from him and send it through Saadat Khan. Qasim Khan pacified the Diwan and his sons by various favours. He gave them one lakh of rupees and also the pargana of Madhopur Bhagwan, which belonged to his personal jagir. Over all these the Imperial enquiring officer took a public attestation of the whole incident with the seals of the nobles. He also took the representation of the
aggrieved Diwan and submitted the documents to the Emperor.

Thus we have a full account of the incident which shows that the Newswriter’s report were not just filed, but looked into and that the departmental machinery worked it out to its successful conclusion.13

Attention may also be drawn to the episode of the deputation of an Imperial Officer with Farmans and oral instructions regarding the respective duties of the Subadar and the other provincial officers. The instructions, described within quotation marks, are valuable as administrative documents.13

*Over-assessment of Revenues*

The variations between the actual and nominal revenue yields (jama) of most of the parganas and areas was a crying evil of land revenue administration under the Mughals. The official jama statistics, jama-i-raqmi as they were called, of Akbar’s reign had been inherited from the Sur regime and were found to be grossly inflated. As a result many of the officers found their jagirs yielding much less revenue than their official estimate and it caused much dissatisfaction among the jagirdars and mansabdars. The problem constantly engaged the attention of Akbar and he made several attempts, first with the help of Qamungoes and then through directly supervised surveys of land to collect a more reliable estimate of revenue. Some improvement was effected by these but the malady was never fully removed. In fact variation between official and actual estimates was accepted as an unavoidable evil. Dr. Irfan Habib shows on the basis of a large number of 17th century documents, that a new method of month-ratio was developed in the reign of Shahjahan to overcome this evil. Under it the jagirs were classified into different categories, depending on the ratio between their actual and nominal yields. Thus in a first class jagir the revenue yield corresponded fully with the official estimate, and it was known as dwazdamaha jagir; one whose ratio was 50% was known as sashmaha and so on. Dr. Habib mentions an example of this system from the reign of Jahan- gir but goes on to remark that it came into general use in the reign of Shahjahan.14 Mirza Nathan also mentions a case which appears like another instance of this system.15 The case is significant because it belongs to a period before the practice came into general use.

Sher Khan Fath Jung, an important Officer of Shahjahan while
he was in rebellion, was granted a Jagir in Tajpur—Purnea, but he had some doubts about the assessment of its revenue. Mirza Nathan, who was then practically the Faujdar of Akbarnagar, was ordered to enquire into the correctness of the estimate. Accordingly, an Afghan officer and Khaja Todarmal, the Mir-i Saman of Shitab Khan, were deputed to make a thorough enquiry so that 'neither the ryots and the jagirdars may be put to hardship nor the imperial revenues fall short.' They were warned that they must be strictly honest, for Shitab Khan might ‘send another party to make secret enquiries about the real state of affairs’ or he might go there personally. They were to prepare a correct register of revenues.. with the consent of the ryots, the signature of the Qamungoes and the deed of the agreement (Qabuliyat) of the Chawdhuiris, verified by the agent of Shir Khan (the grantee). The officers ascertained the revenues of the pargana as Rs. 1,20,000, and 'it was assigned to Shir Khan in lieu of his salary of Rs. 2,40,000 as a grant for six months.'

The concluding portion of Daftar II is also valuable. It relates to an important point of provincial administration—viz., the difficulties which sometimes occurred during the period between the departure of a dismissed Subadar and the arrival of the next one. The disloyal and fraudulent activities of the outgoing Subadar put the other subordinate provincial officers, particularly the personal officers of the Subadar, in a difficult situation. It severely tested their loyalty to the State, on the one hand, and their immediate employer, on the other. The whole problem is typified in the conduct of Qasim Khan after his dismissal.

Also of interest are the doings of Mir Safi, the Diwan and Bakhshi of the territory of Kamrup. He made changes in the assessment of revenues in the parganas. He started the innovation of charging the allowances for the archers on the rent-roll of the ryots. He divided the parganas in two classes, one portion entrusted to the Karories (under direct Government administration?) and the other to mustafirs (revenueframers) who enhanced the assessment for their 'own benefit and expenses.' All this caused much dissatisfaction and unrest and the Diwan was removed to 'counteract the sedition which had its origin in the enhancement of taxes on account of the paiks and arches.'
MIRZA NATHAN

MILITARY MATTERS

The book is particularly rich in military details—construction of forts, method of siege, instruments of war, categories of war-boats, etc. The author was a naval officer and a participant in most of the encounters described by him. As such his descriptions of the various naval engagements are not only vivid (viz., the pursuit by river of the defeated rebel, Udayaditya, and his hair-breadth escape by jumping from his heavy mahalgiri boat into the lighter and swifter kusa, Vol. I, p. 129) but also very informative. The Navy was the blind spot of the Mughals and information on the topic is scarce in Persian chronicles.

One instance showing the engineering skill of the author and illustrative of some of the problems of naval wars in the area is particularly significant. During the expedition of Islam Khan to Bhati, Ihtimam Khan was ordered to follow him with the fleet. It was to sail up the Kudia Canal to Siyalgarh, but the canal was found to be very shallow. A quick decision on whether or not to sail up the canal was necessary, for the canal might dry up further and then the fleet would have been stranded. Mirza Nathan was sent up-stream to check the depth. In the meantime ‘bunds of earth and straw’ were constructed to stop the outflow of the water. Nathan found that it was impossible to go up the canal but, luckily, he discovered two jallas or large sheets of water and a daha or deep marsh, situated at some distance from the canal. He got 10,000 boatmen to dig a deep channel ‘as deep as the height of a man’ to connect the waters with the canal. Another 25,000 boatmen were ordered to build an embankment at the mouth of the canal to stop its water flowing into the Karatoya river. Thus, sufficient water was collected in the canal for the fleet to move up.21

The description of a review of the fleet is more valuable. The different categories of the boats are named—katari, maniki, bathila, piara, kusa, balia, pal, ghurab (floating battery, gun boat) machua, paskta, jaliya, etc. The manner in which large cannons were mounted on the war boats, screened by a line of wagons or thatari, which could be lowered down at the time of firing the cannon, is thus described, ‘the big boats, which contained large cannons and zabarzangs (field pieces), were arrayed like battlements. On the gangway of each of these boats he arrayed (a line of) wagons called thatari and on them he arrayed a series of towers and on each of those towers a red flag was hoisted. Tigers’ and leopards’ skin were spread over the wagons.
and on each of the distinguished cannon, skins of tigers were laid. Every boat was covered with a gold embroidered canopy...if it was desired to discharge the artillery, these wagons, which stood like the wall of a fort on the boats extending from one side of the river to the other, could all at once be made to lie flat on the boats and when the dreadful cannon were discharged, by the time their smoke disappeared, these wagons could be raised to their former position. There follows a description of a floating bridge 'as has never been done by any leader at any time' made by grouping tying the boats in such a way that the whole structure could be made to sail straight or turn sidewise as desired. The sailors were dressed in steel uniform."

The details of land-warfare are no less valuable. Bamboo stockades were a common means of defence and fortifications. Elephants (which were commonly found in the area) were used in pulling down such fortifications. Sometimes bildars (sappers) were sent ahead, under protective artillery fire, to undermine the walls before the elephants charged. They used to charge under the cover of a heavy protective screen, mounted on wheels, known as thatari or gardun kalan. It must have been a heavy contraption because on one occasion, when it had to be moved, Mirza Nathan himself and a number of soldiers had to be engaged in pulling it. Individual elephant combats have also been vividly described.

There was a peculiar method of constructing raised platforms in front of a besieged fort and raising it to a height overlooking the ramparts, and then bombarding the garrison from the commanding height. Paiks and common labourers were used in large numbers to cut grass in the day and pile it up; in the night the heaps were plastered with mud to harden the surface. Such structures were raised either storeywise or gradually extended towards the besieged fort. But it sometimes boomeranged upon the besiegers for the enemy would make a sally, 'rush forward with burning thatches tied to long bamboo poles...set fire to the heaps of grass and before the perplexed water carriers could think of bringing water the fire caught on and in the twinkling of an eye all the bundles of grass were burnt to ashes...and the enemy became triumphant.'

SOCIAL MATTERS

The whole story revolves around wars. This leaves little occasion or scope for dwelling upon matters of social interest. But even
in the midst of marches, sieges and campaigns one gets glimpses of matters of social interest—festive and funerary ceremonies, superstitious beliefs,²⁸ taking of auguries (p. 487),²⁹ practising of witchcraft,³⁰ prevalence of slavery, practice of jawhar ceremony among Muslims, etc.

Of particular interest is the description of a grand feast given by Mirza Nathan on the occasion of the expiry of six months after the death of his father, which marked the end of the period of mourning. It fell on a Friday, the day of the congregational prayers. Islam Khan himself attended the prayers, and it was proclaimed that those who would abstain from the prayers will be fined. Many of the participants wanted to leave but Nathan persuaded them to stay on by saying that ‘if you are thinking of the fine, then I hold myself responsible for it.’ The guests stayed on. As the party warmed up the guests began drinking heavily so much so that when Islam Khan came there ‘the comrades who were heavily drunk did not come near Islam Khan and they dispersed in every direction through corners of the house of Mirza Nathan. The servants of Mirza poured on their dress rose water and aroma of orange flowers and sprinkled scents of ambergris in the air in such a way that the room which was stinking with the smell of wine assumed the fragrance of paradise.’ The party went on for seven days and nights and Nathan himself remarks that ‘it was such a convivial meeting that it deserved to be noted in the histories of the world.’³²⁸

There is an interesting case of the performance of jawhar by the members of Nathan’s family themselves. Surprisingly, this important event has been passed over not only by Borah but by all other writers of the work. In the war against the Assamese the forces of Mirza Nathan had suffered a severe set back and their fort was in danger of being captured. Nathan wanted to send away the ladies of his harem on some elephants, but as the imperial artillery was loaded on the elephants only one was available. The ladies were sent away with a trusted servant with instructions that he should kill them after hearing about Mirza’s death. As the khidmatgaran of the harem could not be sent due to shortage of elephants, they were ordered to perform jawhar, and ‘fifty to eighty persons of Mirza’s mahal performed jawhar and many of the men of the army, who thought that they would lose their honour, also performed jawhar.’³²⁸ Even though Dr. Borah’s explanation about the prevalence of this awful and un-Islamic rite may be partly true, it is significant that these two rare examples should come from the outlying eastern
area. It is likely that some of Nathan’s wives also belonged to the area where he lived for so long. The performance of jawhar by them is more significant.

**MISCELLANEOUS MATTERS**

References are available to the hazards of transmitting the Bengal revenues to the capital. These relate to the 18th century when the Bengal revenue was one of the substantial sources of income left to the Emperor. The *Bahrastan* mentions another incident which not only illustrates the difficulties but also shows how they were sometimes overcome.

Shitab Khan was appointed by Shahjahan as the officer in charge of Akbarnagar. One of his important assignments was to transmit regularly the revenues and the strategic war materials (he despatched during this period 4,000 maunds of gun-powder, 8,000 maunds of lead, iron and stone hots on boats with loading capacities of 500–1,000 maunds). On one occasion a sum of Rs. 700,000 had to be sent but as it was the height of rainy season, the roads were inundated and the only way was by river. This too was subject to the danger of floods or the boats getting sunk. Shitab Khan therefore thought of the following novel way. He first calculated that at no point would the depth of the river be more that 600 ft. He then got one hundred ropes, each 600 ft. long and of the width of the middle finger. He also procured 500 small gourds used for practising swimming. The first instalment of Rs. 1,00,000 was divided into 100 bags each containing 1,000 rupees. One end of the rope was tied to each of the money-bags, while the other was tied to a gourd. The money-bags instead of being put in chests, as was the usual practice, were put on wooden planks with which the boats were covered. To complete the precautions some fishing boats were deputed to sail alongside with expert divers ‘who could dive to a depth of two hundred yards.’ The whole idea was this: If any of the boats got sunk the gourds tied to the money-bags would be floating like so many signals and the fishermen would simply pull up the bags of money ‘like buckets.’ If perchance the bags got entangled in any object in the bed of the river the divers would dive down and extract them.

Shahjahan the Magnificent, the builder of the Taj and a host of other exquisite buildings is well-known. The *Bahrastan* provides evidence of his architectural interests since his earlier days. Even
when he reached Akbarnagar in a distracted condition with the Imperialists in pursuit, he found time to enquire about the completion of a royal mansion he had earlier ordered to be built. He remembered even minute details of the proposed layout and called for explanations for the slightest changes made. He got annoyed with Daragha-i-Imarat and ordered him to be given sixty stripes. He ordered new changes and immediate improvisations were made for the construction of a special bedroom. The Jharokha and the Ghusul-khana buildings were made. What is more important, all the 36 workshops of furniture—Karkhanajat-i-Rakhwati—which were in use were set in order—Shitab Khan contributing Rs. 17,000 for it from his private purse. 32

A distinguishing feature of the Mughal period is the abundance of contemporary and near-contemporary chronicles. Most of these are not only Court-oriented, but they deal mainly with important personalities and major political events. This has led to a rather lop-sided view about many things of that period. The two royal memoirs of Babar and Jahangir are in a class by themselves and represent a refreshing contrast. But being the memoirs of emperors their view-points are, naturally, limited to a particular high social level. The Baharistan is the memoir of a provincial military officer. His observations and descriptions present a view of a quite different level. But for a correct over-all idea of the period such works are also essential. The Baharistan does contain some descriptions that are credulous, even trifling. However, they contribute to its value, as correcting our perspective on many points. We could do well with a lot more of such works.

REFERENCES

1. The original manuscript belongs to the Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris; Gentil–42. Supplement 252. It was first brought into public notice by Dr. J. N. Sarkar, who published some articles on it in the Bengali monthly journal Prabasi. Later, he wrote an article in the JBORS, 1921, giving an account of its discovery and a full table of contents.

2. Published by the Government of Assam, in the Department of Historical and Antiquarian Studies, 1936. My article is based on this edited text. Dr. Borah used a rotagraph of the manuscript which belonged to the Dacca University. Apart from a transcript and a rotagraph which Dr. Sarkar got done for his use, no other copy of the Persian text is available in the country. The Sarkar transcript is now in the National Library, Calcutta, but I have not been able to use it.


5. Not all the headings and sub-headings as present in the printed text are from the original; some were added by the editor. But the four Daftars, their titles and dedications are as in the original.


7. JIBORS, op. cit., p. 3.

8. Sharma, 'Bibliography of Mughal India', pp. 69–70.

9. No definite assertion can be made on this point in the absence of more positive information. But this suggestion is supported by internal evidences.


11. Surprisingly, Dr. Borah does not refer at all to this table in the manuscript. Prof. Sharma consulted the rotograph copy of Dr. Sarkar and must have seen it. Dr. Sarkar himself published a full table of contents in his article in the JIBORS but does not specifically state that it is based on the one attached to the manuscript itself.


13. Ibid., pp. 309–10. See also p. 213.


As explained at the outset (viz. footnote No. 2) this article is based on the published English translation of the text. The translation of this passage does not exactly support my interpretation. But a close perusal of the episode makes one suspect that actually it is a case of month-ratio grant of Habib’s description.

16. It is a typical case of the Mughal system of double checking, prevalent in the different branches of administration. While it may be argued that the practice shows the prevailing state of corruption among officers, it may also be taken to indicate the painstaking efforts of the Government to know the real state of affairs and to collect correct information.

17. The details illustrate the procedure by which the system worked.

18. This is how Dr. Borah translates it. But I suspect that what has been translated as salary for six months actually means the month-ratio system.


20. Ibid., p. 289.

21. Ibid., pp. 45–47.

22. Ibid., pp. 48–49.

23. Ibid., pp. 235–237.

24. Ibid., pp. 181–82, 238.

25. Ibid., p. 168.

26. Ibid., p. 487.

27. Ibid., p. 273, and Vol. II. p. 626.
32. Ibid., pp. 769–772.
There is such a dearth of scholars actively interested in the history of this vast sector called the Deccan that it is to be expected that very little should be known regarding the sources of the history of a part of the region called Golkonda or, as I put it, Tilang-Andhra. It may seem strange to scholars that an eminent historian has ascribed to Ferishta the abridged translation of the book by an 'Anonymous Writer' which Briggs has appended to the third volume of his *Rise and Fall of the Mohomedan Power in India*. Again we seem so much indebted to Elliot and Dowson that the only thing we know about Abd-ur-Razzaq's book, the *Matla-us-Sadain*, is his description of the City of Vijayanagar which he visited as the accredited envoy of the king of Hirat to the court of the Raya.

There is such an enormous historical data about the history of the Qutb Shahi dynasty that it is impossible to analyse it in a short paper. I, therefore, propose to limit myself here only to the contemporary works written in the Deccan.

For the purpose of clarification the paper is divided into the following sections:

Section 1: Contemporary Indo-Persian histories written in the Deccan in prose, including certain letters written by Abdullah Qutb Shah and others.

Section 2: Contemporary Indo-Persian histories written in the Deccan in verse.

Section 3: Telugu poems with a bearing on the history of the Qutb Shahi dynasty.

I

Contemporary Indo-Persian Histories in Prose

1. Burhan-i-Maasir

It is noteworthy that *Burhan-i-Maasir* is the first Indo-Persian chronicle bearing on the history of the Qutb Shahi dynasty compiled
in the Deccan. The author, Sayyid Ali b. Azizullah Tabatabai, came to India from Iraq and entered the service of Ibrahim Qutb Shah (1550–80). He was present at the siege of Naldrug, which started in the reign of Ibrahim in September 1681 and continued to the first months of the reign of his successor, Muhammad-Quli, in January 1682. But it was probably not long after this that he quitted Qutb Shahi service and entered the service of the Nizam Shahis. It was Burhan Nizam Shah II (1591–95) who commissioned him to compile the chronicle which has been named after him. The title of the work, *Burhan-i Maasir*, is a chronogram and answers to 1000/1592 (which, incidentally, is the year of the foundation of Haidarabad) and this may be regarded as the date of the commencement of the compilation. The author says that he completed the work on 14th Rabi II, 1003/17.11.1594, but the narrative is continued right up to the prolonged Peace Conference between Chand Bibi Sultan and Prince Murad, which was concluded on 27th Rajab 1004/14.3.1596. There is an interesting colophon at the end of the Cambridge manuscript from which the printed edition has been copied, saying that the manuscript was copied by the author's own son, Abu Talib, on 22 Muharram, 1038/11.9.1628.

The chronicle is divided into three *Tabaqat* or Sections of unequal size. The first Section deals with the Bahmanis of Gulbarga, the second with the Bahmanis of Bidar and the third, with the Sultans of Ahmadnagar as the central theme, up to the peace treaty of March 14, 1596. The first Section is the shortest, covering barely 52 pages in print, the second covers 115 pages, while the last covers nearly 470 pages and gives a detailed account of the Nizam Shahi kings up to the reign of Burhan II. As the author was in Qutb Shahi service before he migrated to Ahmadnagar, he pays special attention to the history of Golkonda—Haidarabad. He deals with the reigns of Sultan-Quli Qutb-ul-Mulk, his son Jamshid, but he practically skips over the short reign of his son Subhan (whom he does not name) and passes on to the reigns of Ibrahim Qutb Shah and Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah. He describes the reign of the last two monarchs with some interest, though he does so only in connection with the events of the Nizam Shahi kingdom. He is full of useful details about the Qutb Shahi dynasty, while he refers to the rulers of Berar as simply Imad-ul-Mulk and the second of the line as Shaikh Ala-ud-Din Imad-ul-Mulk, perhaps because the Imad Shahi's were at daggers drawn with the Nizam Shahis.

As has been mentioned elsewhere (Sherwani, *Bahmanis of the
Deccan: an objective study), Burhan provides correctives to Ferishta so far as the Bahmanis are concerned. In the case of the post-Bahman period, Tabatabai was an eye-witness to many events of his day, while his information about past history may also be regarded as fairly trustworthy. He was present at the two sieges, one of Naldrug, where he was in the service of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah, and the other of Ahmadnagar, where he appears as a high dignitary in the entourage of Chand Sultana. Moreover he gives such a vivid account of the Peace Conference, which ended the Ahmadnagar-Mughal conflict for the time being, that one may surmise that he was personally present at the Conference itself.

The first two tabaqaos were translated and abridged by J. S. King and published in 1900 as 'The History of the Bahmani Dynasty,' while the third tabaga was likewise abridged and translated by Sir Wolseley Haig and published in 1923 as The History of the Nizam Shahis of Ahmadnagar.

2. Gulshan-i-Ibrabimi, generally called Tarikh-i-Ferishta

Muhammad Qasim Hindu Shah, surnamed Ferishta, was born at Astrabad in Iran in 1552 and died at Bijapur in 1623. He was brought to Ahmadnagar when still a child and remained there till 1591, when he joined service at the court of Ibrahim Adil Shah II of Bijapur.

His monumental work, the Gulshan-I-Ibrabimi or Nauras Nama, generally known as Tarikh-i-Ferishta, was presented to the king in 1606 in a complete form, though subsequently the author enlarged it, bringing it to 1606. It is certainly one of the most important chronicles relating to the medieval period of Indian history. Its importance is such that the chronicles compiled after it may be regarded either as supplementary to the respective themes or else mere copies of Ferishta dealing with specified areas.

In his Introduction the author has given a list of thirty-two works on which he has drawn for his information, but not one of these was a history of the Qutb Shahi dynasty. In the very brief section 4 of volume 2 (Lucknow edition) devoted to Rulers of Tilang he only refers to one work, the Waqai Qutbshahiya, which was supposed to have been written by Shah Khurshah of Iraq in the time of Ibrahim Qutb Shah (1550–10), but he confesses that he did not have recourse even to that work. As a matter of fact no such work by Shah Khurshah exists. There is a fine copy of Tarikh Ilchi Nizam Shah (by Khurshah b. Qubad-al-Husaini) prepared for the royal library of Abdullah Qutb Shah in 1038/1628–9 (Salar Jung Museum,
Haidarabad, Mss. No. 118 B), in which the author describes the history of the world right up to the Bahmanis of the Deccan, including the Turkoman ancestors of the Qutb Shahis. But when he comes to Muhammad Shah Lashkari (1463–82) and the disintegration of the Bahmani Empire, he stops there and promises to write later detailed histories of the Bahmani Succession States, namely, the states ruled by Nizam-ul-Mulk, Adil Khan, Qutb-ul-Mulk, Imad-ul-Mulk and Qasim Barid. Even if he did write a history of the Qutb Shahis we are not aware of it, and at least Ferishta did not have recourse to it.

In the Lucknow edition of Ferishta barely five pages are devoted to the Qutb Shahis, while 92 pages have been taken up by the Adil Shahis and 74 by the Nizam Shahis. Even in these five pages the author has made certain palpable mistakes due to his ignorance of facts. A few instances of his faux pas may suffice: (1) He says that Muhammad-Quli ascended the throne in 989/1581 at the age of 12, although he himself says that he was born on 1st Ramazan 973. (2) Writing in 1018/1609–10 he says that the Persian envoy, Aghuzlu Sultan, was still in the Deccan waiting for the acceptance of the proposal for the marriage of the son of Shah Abbas II of Iran to the Sultan’s daughter, Hayat Bakhshi Begum; although her marriage with the Sultan’s nephew, who later became Sultan Muhammad Qutb Shah, had already taken place two years earlier. (3) Ferishta is so much interested in the supposed romance of Muhammad-Quli with the ‘zan-i fahishah’, Bhagmati, that he calls the newly founded capital ‘Bhagnagar’ in 1018/1609–10, when we have a number of coins struck at ‘Dar-us-Saltanat Haidarabad’ in 1012/1603. He forgets his own theory when he says categorically that the Qutb Shahi army, which had been sent to Ahmadnagar in 1005/1597, was routed by the Mughals and fled back to ‘Haidarabad’.

Thus, so far as the Qutb Shahi dynasty is concerned it cannot be said that Ferishta’s Gulshan-i-Ibrahim is to be relied upon.

3. Tazkirat-ul-Muluk

Mir Rafi-ud-Din Ibrahim bin Nuru-ud-Din Taufiq Shirazi was born about 947/1510–11. He came to Bijapur with his father as a merchant in the time of Mahmud Shah Bahmani, but gyrated into government service in the time of Ali Adil Shah (1557/79) apparently as a Khwan Salar or Steward of the Royal Household. He rose step by step till Ibrahim Adil Shah II (1579–1626) sent him on an important mission to Ahmadnagar in 1005/1596–7. He also served as governor of Bijapur for some time.
Rafi-ud-Din began writing the *Tazkirat-ul-Muluk* on 19th Ramazan 1017/17.12.1608 and completed it at Nauraspur, a suburb of Bijapur (which, he says, was renamed Bidyapur), on 6th Jamadi II, 1024/23rd June 1615. The *Tazkira* is primarily a chronicle of the Adil Shahis of Bijapur, prefaced by a chapter on the Bahmanis and ending with two chapters on the Mughals from Amir Timur to Akbar. The remaining seven chapters are taken over by the history of the Adil Shahis right up to Ibrahim Adil Shah II. But the politics of the Bahmani Succession States were so much intertwined with each other that a detailed history of the Adil Shahis was bound to have a fairly important niche for the Qutb Shahis as well. It is interesting to note that the author calls the first four rulers of the Adil Shahi dynasty by their names without the suffix of Shah, thus denoting that they did not proclaim their kingship. It should, however, be noted that there are certain inscriptions of the fourth ruler, Ibrahim Adil, dated 945/1538–9, in which he is called Ibrahim Adil Shah. It is also interesting that he traces the genealogy of Yusuf Adil Khan to Mahmud Beg of Sawah in Central Asia, and not to Mahmud I or II, Sultans of Turkey, as is sometimes asserted.

The author devotes considerable attention and space to the Qutb Shahis. He is all praise for Ibrahim Qutb Shah, and gives some very useful information about the foundation of the new capital Haidarabad. He describes its *raison d’etre*, its general lay-out, the details of the part of the royal palace and the position which men of learning and wisdom occupied in the State. On the whole the book is a fairly good authority for the earlier period of the Qutb Shahi dynasty.

4. *Tarikh-i-Muhammad Qutb Shah.*
5. *Maasir-i-Qutb Shahi.*

The *Tarikh* is a comprehensive and detailed history of the Qutb Shahi dynasty. It was compiled under the order of Sultan Muhammad Qutb Shah in 1025/1616. The author, who chooses to be anonymous, says in his Introduction that he had before him a larger history ‘by one of the servants (Chakiran) of His Majesty’ which he has condensed and added on certain other facts which have a bearing on the history of the period. As a history of the dynasty with an official hallmark, it begins with a description of the Qara Quvinlu background of Sultan-Quli’s family before he and his uncle Allah-Quli first came to India, and goes on to the history of the dynasty in all its aspects. The book is divided into four ‘Accounts’ and an Epilogue as follows.
(1) Account of Sultan-Quli Qutb-ul-Mulk.
(2) Account of 'Jamshid Qutb-ul-Mulk' and his son 'known as Subhan-Quli.'
(3) Account of the life and reign of Ibrahim Qutb-Shah.
(4) Account of the life and reign of Sultan Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah.
(5) Epilogue: Account of 'some of the events' of the reign of Sultan Muhammad Qutb Shah.

The book not merely describes the events at the court, the campaigns undertaken and the conquests made, but also surveys the public works of the Qutb Shahis, their patronage of literature and their constructions. He gives the *raison d'etre* of the foundation of Haidarabad, the scheme of its lay-out, various edifices and roads which went to and from the new capital, the relative importance of Golkonda and Haidarabad and numerous facts not found elsewhere. He is very punctilious about dates, and his survey of facts is chronologically correct to a large extent. The author completed the work in Shaban 1026/July-August 1617.

Another author, Mahmud b. Abdullah Nishapuri, has brought the narrative to 1038 in his *Maasir-i-Qutb Shahi*. He entered the service of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah in 995/1587 and compiled the book between 1033/1624 and 1038/1629. It was originally in three volumes but was 'several times altered and enlarged.' The only portion extant today is the one in the India Office Library and even that is defective at the end. Apart from the history of the Qutb Shahi dynasty up to the year of Muhammad-Qutb Shah's death in 1035/1626, he deals in some detail with the history of his home country Iran, and stops at the death of Shah Abbas II in 1038/1629.

6. *Hadīqat-us-Salatin*

*Hadīqat-us-Salatin* is a voluminous history of the first nineteen years (not 16 as in Storey) of the reign of Abdullah Qutb Shah (1626–72) written by Mirza Nizam-ūd-Dīn Ahmad at the instance of the well-known Peshwa or Prime Minister of the kingdom, Shaikh Muhammad bin Khatun. It purports to be a day to day chronicle of Abdullah's life from his birth on November 21, 1614, to January 1, 1644. The period was one of extreme decline of the political power of the Qutb Shahi kingdom. It had become a virtual protectorate of the Mughal Empire by the fateful 'Deed of Submission' of January 1636, and whenever a Mughal envoy arrived at the capital the king received him at the farther end of the bund on the Husain Sagar, five miles from the royal palace. He was forced to mint money with
Shahjahan’s name and to have the *khutba* read on Fridays with prayers for the long life and prosperity of the Emperor and for the success of his arms. The Sultan had to seek favour from those in power at the Imperial capital and to write abject letters to Dara Shikoh, Prince Aurangzeb and Imperial ministers and envoys, such as no independent sovereign would ever care to write (*Makatib-i-Sultan Abdullah Qutb Shah*, for which see later). And yet the author of the *Hadiqat* represents him as the most mighty monarch, and relates that when he was born astrologers predicted that ‘he would be like Alexander and Solomon, and issue orders to all the kings of the world.’ He describes him with great bombast and details the various functions connected with the celebration of various festivals ‘when flowers abounded, casks of scent distributed, lakhs of lamps lit and thousands and thousands of *huns* distributed.’ The progress of the king to the east coast is described in words which would put the Field of the Cloth of Gold to shame. And just then Mir Jumla was conquering the Rayalsima with his centre at Gandikota and unfurling the Qutb Shahi flag on eminences south of St. Thomas’ Mount and preparing for the day when he would cross over to the Mughal camp and put the Court to shame.

*Hadiqat-us-Salatin* is like a diary of the Qutb Shahi Court in which not merely the pomp and merriment are described but also the way the country was administered, the ways of the great lords, the duties and functions of the Peshwa and other ministers, the establishment of the *Majlis-i-Diwandari* or Privy Council, the administration of justice and even the day to day posting of various high civil and military officers. It gives a fairly correct picture of the social life of the people, their superstitions, their rites and ceremonies, and what is significant, of the cordial relations which existed between the different sections of the population, chiefly the Hindus and the Muslims. Finally we can glean from it the international set-up, the position which foreign *hajibs* or envoys, both permanent and extraordinary, occupied in the capital. The diction of the book is such that in spite of the wealth of facts the book contains the reader is not bored, and in fact his interest increases with almost every page.

7. *Hadaiq-us-Salatin*

The full name of the book is *Hadaiq-us-Salatin fi Kalam-i-Khawaqin* or ‘The Gardens of the Sultans and the Poetic Compositions of Kings.’ The author, Ali ibn Taifur al-Bustami, says that he was a pupil of Muhammad ibn Khatun, and it was at the instance of Sultan Abul Hasan Qutb Shah (1672–87) that he completed this
work in 1092/1681. The Hadaiq is not a book on history but is a compendium of Persian poetry and some letters written by the Kings of Iran and of India as well as of some of their ministers and learned men. Although it was barely six years before the fall of the dynasty and the life-incarceration of the last of the Qutb Shahis at Daulatabad, the author ends his narrative with a prayer that the power and prestige of the king should last for ever!

The book is divided into three Hadigas or Gardens and each divided into a number of Tabagas or Sections:—

(i) Pre-Islamic Iranian Kings from the Pishdadas to 30/650–51.
(ii) Muslim Kings and Emperors of Iran, Central Asia and India, including Ghoris, Seljuqs, Khwarizm Shahis, Turkish Sultans, the Mughals from Timur to Jahangir, the Qaraqyinlus, Safawis, Bahmanis, of whom only ‘Mahmud Shah’ (meaning Muhammad I) and Firuz are mentioned, the Adil Shahis and finally the Qutb Shahis, of whom only ‘Sultan-Quli known as Bara Malik’ Jamshid Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah and Sultan Muhammad Qutb Shah’s reigns are touched. It is strange that Abdullah Qutb Shah and Abul Hasan Qutb Shah do not appear as poets or patrons of poetry at all.

(iii) The life histories, poems and some letters of certain ministers, amirs, judges and learned men. These include more than thirty names, but north India is represented only by Abd-ur-Rahim Khan Khan-i-Khanan, Ali Quli Khan, Faizi and Abul Fazl, while the Deccan is represented by Mahmud Gawan, Mirza Amin Isfahani Mir Jumla of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah, and Riza-Quli Beg entitled Neknam Khan.

The subject matter of the book is mainly poetry and the poet as the name of the book itself connotes, but the life history of each of them gives certain historical data, though, as the author himself admits, culled from Indo-Persian and other chronicles. Out of more than 200 folios only about 20 have a bearing on the history of Golconda-Haidarabad, but even here certain new facts are mentioned which bring the Hadaiq into line with the source books of Qutb Shahi history. It must, however, be stated that the standard of the work is definitely inferior to the standard maintained by such histories as Tarikh-i-Muhammad Qutb Shah, and, considering the steep downward political trends of the region, it was only natural that it should be so.


(2) Araiz wa Ittihad Namajat wa Faramin Abdullah Qutb Shah (MSS. Anjuman Taraqqi Urdu, Karachi, No. 7/27).

(3) Insha-i-Abdul Ali Khan Taligani (MSS. Salar Jung Library, Adab, Nasr Farsi, No. 15.)

These three collections of letters and farmans of Abdullah Qutb Shah and certain other important personages of his reign give us important data regarding the political position of the kingdom after the fateful Deed of Submission signed by the king after the defection of Muhammad Said Mir Jumla to the Mughal camp. The manuscript in the Karachi collection is virtually a copy of the MSS. Salar Jung Library, No. 295 with certain additions and deletions which are not of a very great importance. The last actual date mentioned in the collection is Rajab 1072/February-March, 1662, being the date of the marriage of the king’s third daughter to Mirza Abul Hasan who was destined to be the last ruler of the Qutb Shahi dynasty. The third book, Insha-i-Taligani is obviously meant to be a collection of certain choice letters illustrating the Persian diction in vogue in the Deccan of the seventeenth century, and contains not only some letters common to the other two collections, but also other letters which have no bearing on the history of the period.

The letters in the first two collections roughly cover the period from Mir Jumla’s treason in 1065/1654 up to 1072/1662. Most of the letters are undated, some have only the month and the year while a few have the full dates. There are letters of Abdullah Qutb Shah addressed to Shah Abbas II of Iran, to Shahjahan, Dara Shikoh, Prince Aurangzeb, Shahjahan’s daughter (may be Jahanara), to Ali Adil Shah to Abd-us-Samad Dabir-ul-Mulk, Qutb Shahi envoy to the Mughal Court, Haji Nasir, Qutb Shahi envoy to Bijapur and many other personages.

The range of these interesting letters, some of which are very important, is such that they throw a flood of light not merely on the complete dependence of Abdullah’s Haidarabad on the Mughal power, but also the utter despondency of the King who stooped low to complain of his plight to the Shah of Iran and his own brother-in-law of Bijapur. The first letter in all these collections is to Shah Abbas II in which Abdullah bitterly complains to him of Mir Jumla’s treason and the ‘faithlessness of Sultan Khurram.’ On
the other hand his 'Petitions' not merely to the Emperor but also to Prince Dara and Aurangzeb are couched in the most abject terms. Thus, whenever he mentions the Emperor's name it is with a profusion of laudatory epithets running sometimes to many lines, while he says that these petitions are 'entreaties.' He calls Prince Aurangzeb 'the Pearl of the Great Caliphate.' Even when he sends a farman to his envoy at Delhi he refers to his letters to the Emperor as 'arz dashts' and the Emperor himself as 'the Abode of the Refuge of the Khilafat.'

The letters, therefore, are valuable for they furnish us a correct estimate of the foreign, diplomatic and, to a certain extent, of the domestic policy in the later part of Abdullah's reign.

II

Contemporary Indo-Persian histories, written in the Deccan, in verse

(1) Nisbat Nama-i-Shahryari
(2) Nasab Nama-i-Quth Shahi
(3) Tawarikh-i-Quth Shahi (London)
(4) Tawarikh-i-Quth Shahi (Haidarabad).

The Nisbat Nama-i-Sharyari was compiled by Husain Ali Shah Furshi who completed it in 1016/1607, and it was copied at Lahore in 1019/1610. The name, Tawarikh-i-Quth Shahi, occurs in one of the lines at the commencement of the book. It is divided into 4 cantos and 'appears to be an abstract of the Nasab-nama.' The takhallus of Fursi appears on page 5, but the book is ascribed to Hiralal Khushdil, Secretary (Munshi) of Haidar-Quli Khan, and the takhallus, 'Khushdil' appears in one of the odes in the book.

There are two copies of the name Nasab Nama-i-Quth Shahi in the collection of the Asiatic Society of Bengal (Ivonow, 690 and 691) both ending at the beginning of the rule of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah (1580–1611).

The book is divided into four Magalas or Theses; namely
(i) Introduction and the early history of the dynasty ending in the death of Mahmud Shah Bahmani (1518).
(ii) Decline of the Bahmanis and the rise of Bare Malik.
(iii) Inter-statal wars of the Deccan Sultanates, up to the death of Ibrahim Qutb Shah, with odes in honour of Ibrahim and his son Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah.
(iv) The first year of the reign of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah up to the celebration of the King's marriage with Mir Shah Mir's daughter.

The book contains three fine vignettes. The first part was copied from the library of Muhammad Qutb Shah by 'Ali b. Abi Muhammad and completed on 22 Shawwal 1022/25.11.1613, while the remaining parts were copied by Said-ud-Din Isfahani. Ivonow says that the word 'Lahore' has been added as it is in a modern hand.

The narrative goes on to the first year of the reign of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah before the king's father-in-law was deposed from his office and ordered to leave the kingdom; but it seems to have been copied down in the first year of the reign of Sultan Muhammad Qutb Shah, in 1021/1613, not in the reign of his predecessor Muhammad-Quli as Ivonow would have it.

The other book also called Nasab Nama-i-Qutb Shahi by Ivonow (No. 691), is 'a poem of the same content but half its size', while the name of the author, 'Farsi' appears in a number of places.

Tawarikh-i-Qutb Shahi (Ette, No. 1486). This book is similar to the two books described above, and it was likewise dedicated to the reigning Sultan, Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah. The author 'who conceals his name', was engaged in this compilation for ten years. It is also divided into 4 parts, namely,

Part 1: Genealogy of the Qutb Shahi family up to the birth of 'Sultan-Quli Qutb Shah'.

Part 2: Reign of 'Malik Sultan-Quli Qutb Shahi' and of Jamshid.


Part 4: Reign of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah.

As in the case of other books the frontispiece is illuminated in gold. There are 137 folios, i.e., 274 pages written in clear nastaliq.

Tawarikh-i-Qutb Shahi (Salar Jung Library, Adab, Nazm-i Farsi, No. 1101). The work which is, like the above three books, a history of the early Qutb Shahs in verse, and was compiled in the reign of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah as the author indicates in the beginning. It covers barely 55 folios with 21 lines to a page and is a beautifully gold illuminated book written in fine nastaliq and an embellished frontispiece in gold. It traces the history of the dynasty from its inception and deals with certain events in great detail, some of which may have been the product of the fertile imagination of the author. There are blank spaces left for vignettes on folios 9 (a),
30 (b) and 35 (b). The manuscript is incomplete, for while it was written in the time of Muhammad-Quli Qutb Shah, it ends the narrative with his accession in 1580. Evidently the last few folios of the manuscript have been lost.

Although it is not so mentioned, the book is virtually divided into four sections, each beginning with the praise of God, a device which ends a narrative and begins another with *aghaz-i-ulastan* or 'Beginning of the Story.' The four sections are as follows:

1. The reign or rule of Sultan-Quli Qutb-ul Mulk to the successful campaign of Kovilkonda and the death of Ismail Adil Shah of Bijapur;
2. From the accession of Mallu to the Bijapur throne to the murder of Sultan-Quli Qutb-ul-Mulk.
3. From the accession of 'Jamshid Khan' to his return from Sholapur.
4. The remaining period of Jamshid's rule, Subhan's interlude and Ibrahim's reign.

The work contains certain useful data which is not found in any other work. Thus the interesting episode of Jamshid going to pray at the grave of his martyred father, the search for his father's murderer and his execution shed some light on the problem of the complicity or otherwise of Jamshid in his father's murder. There are also some interesting details of the battle 'on the banks of the Krishna' of January 1565. These and certain other episodes described in the manuscript are both interesting and useful. As has been mentioned above the book has not been listed in any of the Catalogues published so far.

III

**TELUGU POEMS WITH A BEARING ON THE HISTORY OF THE QUTB SHAHI DYNASTY**

1. *Long Poem*:

There is no history proper of the Qutb Shahis in Telugu. Apart from inscriptions, with which we are not concerned here, there are some long poems which throw some light on certain aspects of Qutb Shahi political and social history. Thus, Addanki Gangadhara Kavi's *Tapati Samvaranamu* describes the extent of the conquests of Sultan Quli Qutb-ul-Mulk and praises his character as a king. He also gives an account of Ibrahim Qutb Shah's campaigns against
Rajahmundry and Srikakulam and further up to the confines of Orissa as well as a full pen-picture of Ibrahim’s court. Similarly, the anonymous writer of the long poem Chatupadyamanimanyari describes in some detail the patronage accorded to Telugu by Ibrahim. The third important Telugu work which has a bearing on the social set-up is Yayaticcharitramu Ponnaganti Telegannarya. It is a mythological poem consisting of the story of Yayati who was descended from the Moon and from whom all the Chandravasis were supposed to be descended. It is a poem in atsa or pure Telugu without any tatsam Sanskrit word, and is dedicated to Amin Khan of Pancheru. From the historical point of view we are more concerned with the dedicatory introduction than with the story, for in it the author gives a fairly long account of Amin Khan’s family, its position in the field of diplomacy and public service and the general set-up of the village society. Although the three books mentioned are not books dealing with history as such, they give us the Telugu view point of the events mainly of the time of the early Qutb Shahs.

2. A very interesting set of compositions in Telugu are long laudatory odes sung generally every morning at the courts of the kings and other feudal rulers. They are compositions of the bards of varying knowledge, capacity of understanding, and are therefore of a heterogeneous variety. The most famous of these are the Velugotivari Vamsavali and Chikkadevaraya Vamsavali which describe the deeds of valour of the members of the families in question. There is also the Ramarajavijayam containing odes in praise of the Aravidu family of Vijayanagar. All these are just family chronicles, and when they ostensibly sing praises for the subjects of their adoration, we should expect the description to be one-sided and at times exaggerated. Moreover, as no dates are mentioned we have to draw from other chronicles for the chronological sequence.

3. The Mackenzie Collection :—

We have a mass of village accounts called Kaifiyats. These originated in the dandakaviles or kaviles which were kept by the village karnam or revenue officer (patwari), and contained information about the political, religious, social and economic conditions of the village, including an account of the contemporary events which had bearing on the locality. Entries were made by each karnam during his incumbency, who then passed them on to his successor. It was Col. Mackenzie who realized the value of these village kaviles, literally hundreds in number, and tried to collect them or have their copies prepared. But the karnams as well as the clerks who were
sent to copy the documents thought that it was futile to copy down the long accounts fully, and made their gists according to their predilections. It is these gists which are called kaifiyats or ‘Narratives’ and they are collectively known as the ‘Mackenzie Manuscripts’ or Mackenzie Collection.’

These kaifiyats are ‘an admixture of legend and history—the legendary element preponderates in the account of the early period, but it leaves the later period free.’ The research worker, therefore, must use them with great caution especially as the karnams were sometimes ignorant of even elementary facts. The most important of these kaifiyats from our point of view are those of Chittiveli, Cuddapah, Hanamkonda, Kondavidu, Nandyala, Sara, Siddhavatam (Siddhout) and Tadpatri.

Included in the Mackenzie Collection is Ramarajna Bukhair which is supposed to give an account of the decisive battle wrongly called the Battle of Talikota. The Bukhair furnishes us with a bewildering mass of statistics regarding the battle. Among other things it says that ‘Akhabara Jaladin Mogal Padusaha,’ the lord of Jahalnapura’ took part in it, and the army which he contributed to the joint forces included 2½ crores of foot-soldiers, a lakh of elephants, two lakh camels, 5 lakh archers, about 12,000 guns and 12,000 riderless horses. That was only ‘Akhabara’s’ contribution. On the other side Rama Raja’s resources included 65,50,000 horses, nearly 19 lakh camels, about 20,000 elephants, 9,87,76,413 maunds gunpowder and 9,87,65,43,21,00,000 cannon balls! On the basis of such a data one of the foremost of modern historians thinks that ‘this chronicle furnishes us with the Hindu version of the great battle and enables us to investigate the problem afresh.’
'From the eleventh year of my age till now', Babur wrote in 1527, 'I had never spent two festivals of the Ramazan in the same place. Last year’s festival I had spent in Agra. In order to keep up the usage, on Sunday night, the thirtieth, I proceeded to Sikri to keep the feast there. This was the man who never claimed to be a historian, and yet the testimony of his Memoirs has not only been accepted as sufficient proof, as Lane-Poole says, but all the later historians, whether contemporary, British or modern, seem to have treated the Babur-nama as an indispensable source material. Mirza Haider Dughlat’s Tarikh-i-Rashidi and Gulbadan Begam’s Humayun-nama do throw some light on the lacunae occurring in Babur’s Memoirs, but whatever he has recorded himself, with a very few exception, has stood the test of time as well as criticism. Beveridge has said: ‘His autobiography is one of those priceless records which are for all time and is fit to rank with the confessions of St. Augustine and Rousseau and the Memoirs of Gibbon and Newton. In Asia it stands almost alone.’ Babur was quite conscious of his standing. He knew that his records would be scrutinised by posterity. He writes: ‘I have no intention, by what I have written, to reflect on anyone; all that I have said is only the plain truth...I have only spoken of things as they happened. In all that I have written, down to the present moment, I have in every word most scrupulously followed the truth. I have spoken of occurrences precisely as they really passed; I have consequently described every good or bad act, were it of my father or elder brother, just as it occurred and have set forth the merit or demerit of every man, whether friend or stranger, with the most perfect impartiality. Let the reader therefore excuse me, and let not the hearer judge with too much severity.' Babur was proud of his imperial heritage. His ambition was to follow Timur in his military exploits and in compiling a Memoir. If, on the one hand, Babur wanted to become a Padishah in deed, on the other hand he wanted to leave a record of everything he did. In fact, it was expected of all the Timurid princes that they would use the pen and the sword with equal skill, and they were judgedby
the same standards. Babur writes about one of his uncles, Sultan Husain Baykara: 'No person of the race of Taimur Beg ever equalled Sultan Husain Mirza in the use of the scimitar. He had a turn for poetry and composed a diwan. He wrote in Turki. His poetical name was Hussaini. Many of his verses are far from being bad, but the whole of Mirza's diwan is in the same measure.' Mirza Haidar wrote about Babur that 'in the composition of Turki poetry he was second only to Amir Ali Shir. He wrote in Turki and invented a style of verse called Mubaiyan.' Babur seems to have been in the habit of noting down all the occurrences, although it is not known when he sat down to write his Memoirs, the first portion of which he could clad in a fine literary style, subtle prose sprinkled with verses in Turki and Persian, while the latter remains in the original form of a diary which perhaps he had no time to re-write. For this inference he gives us one clue, and that is of his notes and papers being blown away in a violent storm on his return journey from the eastern provinces in 1529. 'That same night after the tarawih prayers......the clouds of the rainy season broke and there was suddenly such a tempest, and the wind rose so high that most of the tents were blown down. I was writing in the middle of my pavilion, and so suddenly did the storm come on that I had no time to gather up my papers and the loose sheets that were written, before it blew down the pavilion, with the screen that surrounded it, on my head......The books and sheets of paper were drenched and wet, but were gathered again with much trouble, folded in a bed cover of scarlet wool, and placed on the throne over which carpets were thrown. The storm abated in two garis. We......kindled a fire with much difficulty and did not sleep till morning, being busily employed all the while in drying the leaves and papers.'

The historical truth presented by Babur in his Memoirs is mixed up in an almost inextricable manner with his own opinions, sentiments, judgements and his philosophy of life. His predilections colour all his observations, and while reading his Memoirs we seem to live with him, to think with him, move with the hectic speed that was peculiarly his, and yet stop to reflect on the surroundings. Babur combined chronology with a deep knowledge of geography. This formed a definite corollary to historical events and helped him in forming the estimate of the resources, the climate, and the habits of the people of a particular place. Farghana, according to him, was 'situated in the fifth climate......Farghana is a country of small
extent, but abounding in grain and fruits." The same was the case with Samargand. It was pleasantly situated in the fifth climate in lat. 39° 37', and long. 90° 16'. But Babur could not stop there, as he had the mathematician's bent of mind always ready to make calculations. 'I directed its wall to be paced round the rampart and found that it was ten thousand six hundred paces in circumference.' After this he writes about its people. 'The inhabitants are all orthodox Sunnis, observant of the law, and religious' and then proceeds to describe the eminent theologians of Mawera-un-Nahr. Then he comes to its boundaries, rivers, fruits, public buildings, bazaars, its bakers and cooks, and finally he says: 'The best paper in the world comes from Samarkand......Another production of Samarkand is Kermezi (or crimson velvet), which is exported to all quarters.' The meadows are not overlooked either. It was one of his passions to alight from his horse and sit down to relax in the meadow threaded by a stream. Yuret-Khan was one of such meadows. 'The river winds round the Yuret-Khan in such a manner as to leave room within for an army to encamp......Perceiving the excellence of this position, I encamped here for some time during the siege.' He completes his observation by giving a description of the provinces and tumults. Does this not resemble the modern gazetteer? Information of every kind can be gleaned from his pages. When he goes to Kabul he turns eloquent again, saying 'From Kabul you may in a single day go to a place where snow never falls, and in the space of two astronomical hours, you may reach a spot where snow lies always......' And then follows the usual description of the place, animals and fruits, birds and the manner of fishing and catching water fowl.

Then he proceeded to Hindustan. A man of his calibre could not rest content with the kingdom of Kabul. It did not even justify his title of Padishah for which he gambled with his life, his convictions, his belief. The target was to become King of Kings, on the one hand, and to become the custodian of his heritage on the other. Uzbeks and Persians had deprived him of both in the land of his own people. His generosity had taken toll of Badakhshan, which he had given away to the grandson of Shah-begam. His knowledge of history must have pointed out the plains of Hindustan, which once Timur had conquered. And he crossed the hurdles of Afghans who, he says, 'are provocingly rude and stupid' to come to the country that could satisfy the political and economic dreams of this student of the Shah-nama. He reflects in his Memoirs: 'Sultan Mahmud,
at the time when he conquered Hindustan, occupied the throne of Khorasan, and had absolute power and dominion over the Sultans of Khawarizm and the surrounding chiefs (Transoxiana). The king of Samarkand, too, was subject to him. When Babur became Padishah, he was indeed exultant with joy. 'This success I do not describe to my own strength, nor did this good fortune flow from my own efforts, but from the fountain of the favour and mercy of God.'

After the fall of Panipat he reflected on the inherent weakness of India. 'All Hindustan was not at that period subject to a single Emperor: every Raja set up for a monarch on his own account, in in his own petty territories.' He makes a study of the different petty kingdoms, Muslim as well as non-Muslim, and then proceeds to his favourite subject, the geography of the country. 'Hindustan is situated in the first, second and third climate. No part of it is in the fourth....Its hills and rivers, its forests and plains, its animals and plants, its inhabitants and their languages, its winds and rains, are all of a different nature.'

The plains of India could not satisfy the aesthetic sense of Babur which was rooted deep in his personality. He always ventured to look for the pure pleasures of nature which had always soothed his ruffled mind. The vast stretch of the Indo-Gangetic plain could not yield any such pleasure for him. He has referred to the perennial problem of the people who never had any inclination to pay the taxes, and whenever it suited them could and did rise in revolts. His observation about the cities being completely abandoned within a single day or a day and a half symbolises the standard of living of the people. Obviously the masses did not have much to pack up. They did not use much of clothing. He writes: 'Their peasants and the lower classes all go about naked. They tie on a thing which they call a langoti......The women, too, have a lang—one end of it they tie about their waist, and the other they throw over their head.' The rich people must have been very few. The nobility aided by soldiers did the fighting and the zamindars lived in their own mud forts with their army of disaffected peasantry, and had to be reduced one by one, if the ruler was strong enough to do so. Otherwise they were an open challenge to him and increased their power at the cost of his authority. 'The peasantry and soldiers of the country avoided and fled from my men. Afterwards, everywhere, except only in Delhi and Agra, the inhabitants fortified different posts, while the governors of the towns put their fortifications in a
posture of defence, and refused to submit or obey.  

Indian society was caste-ridden and any kind of social intercourse could not have existed. But it was not possible for him to understand the complexities of the caste system. The man who was used to the drinking parties of his father, the display of friendliness and ceremonial gatherings of the Khans, and who had been holding such parties himself, could only sit back and think as to what was amiss, and state his conclusion that the people of India 'have no idea of the charms of friendly society, of frankly mixing together or of familiar intercourse.' The only good thing he could say about the caste system or whatever he understood of it was that there was an abundance of work people. 'The workmen of every profession and trade are innumerable and without end. For any work, or any employment, there is always a set ready, to whom the same employment and trade have descended from father to son for ages.' He has touched upon the aspect of administration also when he says that the countries from Bhera to Bihar yielded a 'revenue of fifty two krores, as will appear from the particular and detailed statement.' The parganawise revenue has been given by him, but Babur throughout his life had been too much of a soldier to be a good revenue administrator. And one does not find any permanent settlement of any kind made by him. He seems to have been conscious of the fact that his could not be the last word in the description of Hindustan. He had written whatever came to his knowledge and whatever he had been able to verify. He adds: 'Hereafter, if I observe anything worthy of being described I shall take notice of it; and if I hear anything worth repeating, I will insert it.'

Though he may have ignored or disregarded certain injunctions, Babur was a deeply religious man. This attitude he had inherited from his father. 'He (Umar Shaikh) never neglected the five regular and stated prayers and during his whole life he rigidly performed the kaza (or retributory prayers and fasts). He devoted much of his time to reading the Koran. He was extremely attached to Khwaja Obeidullah, whose disciple he was, and whose society he greatly affected.' Two main trends of Islamic religious thought were obvious in his character. He was orthodox in the performance of his prayers in the prescribed manner, and nothing short of serious illness perhaps prevented his performance of religious duties. 'It was wonderfully cold,' he writes, 'and the wind of Ha-derwish had lost none of its violence, and blew keen......I required to bathe on account of my religious purifications, and went down for that pur-
pose to a rivulet, which was frozen on the banks but not in the middle, from the rapidity of the current. I plunged myself into the water and dived sixteen times. The extreme chillness of the water quite penetrated me.\textsuperscript{26} He did not even think twice when on his way to India he ordered the tomb of a heretic Qalandar, Shabbaz, situated at the hill of Mukam to be pulled down.\textsuperscript{27} On the other hand we find him translating the Risala-i-Walidiyah of Khwaja Ubaidullah Ahrar in the hope of an early recovery from his illness.\textsuperscript{28} But he was not blindly superstitious and believed in exerting himself in order to achieve his ends. In his letter to Humayun he had written:

\begin{quote}
Ambition admits not of inaction;
The world is his who exerts himself,
In wisdom's eye, every condition
May find repose, but royalty alone.\textsuperscript{29}
\end{quote}

The philosophy of his life was action with a tenacity of purpose. He could proclaim a jehad and build towers of human skulls, or leave the Hindu temples untouched as the situation demanded.

Babur, the Great Mughal, could never think of India as his home or of the Indians as his people. His dream of Samarqand and its 'Garden Palace' with its minarets being reflected in the aqueducts could not be realised in India. When he wanted to build a palace and a garden at Agra, he felt that the whole place was 'ugly and detestable.'\textsuperscript{30} However, he accomplished all that he wanted, although the manner of working was not up to the standards. 'In this way, going on without neatness and without order, in the Hindu fashion, I however produced edifices and gardens which possessed considerable regularity......In every garden I sowed roses and narcissuses regularly and in beds corresponding to each other.'\textsuperscript{31} Till his end he cherished a desire to go back. He wrote to Khwaja Kalan on the 11th February, 1529: 'As soon as matters are brought into that state (i.e., completely settled), I shall, God willing, set out for your quarter without losing a moment's time. How is it possible that the delights of those lands should ever be erased from the heart?...... They very recently brought me a single musk-melon. While cutting it up I felt myself affected with a strong feeling of loneliness, and a sense of my exile from my native country; and I could not help shedding tears while I was eating it.'\textsuperscript{32} No Indian fruit had risen to the standard of a musk-melon. He wrote: 'Many praise the mango
so highly as to give it the preferences to every kind of fruit, the musk-melon excepted; but it does not appear to me to justify their praise."\textsuperscript{233} Incidentally, Jahangir, Babur’s great grandson, who had all his associations with India only, had observed in Kabul: ‘Notwithstanding the sweetness of the Kabul fruits, not one of the them has, to my taste, the flavour of the mango.’\textsuperscript{234} Much before Jahangir’s time, Babur’s descendants had made India their home, and there was no thought of returning to their ancestral lands. Still, Babur remained the ideal, and the utmost desire of every prince and reigning sovereign was to follow him in word and spirit.

REFERENCES

2. Stanley Lane-Poole, Rulers of India—Babur, p. 13.
3. The most important one being his attitude towards Shaibani, and his efforts to gloss over the fact of his sister being given over to the same formidable adversary, p. 157.
9. Ibid., p. 76.
10. Ibid., p. 83.
11. Ibid., p. 84.
12. Ibid., p. 220.
15. Ibid., p 195.
16. Ibid., p. 194.
17. Ibid., p. 201.
18. Ibid., p. 208.
22. Ibid., p. 241.
23. Ibid., p. 244.
24. Ibid., II, p. 245.
25. Ibid., I, p. 11.
27. Ibid., Vol. II, p. 90.
28. Ibid., p. 347.
29. Ibid., p. 352.
30. Ibid., p. 257.
31. Ibid., pp. 257-58.
32. Ibid., p. 372.
33. Ibid., p. 225.
BADAUNI

MUHAMMAD MUJEEB

"I am not concerned with those who are not bound by the sharia, and who disown it in principle and in detail," Badauni says in the short introductory statement to his work, 'for such persons do not deserve to be addressed in this way. They are not fit to be included among the trustworthy, among those possessing vision and mastery of affairs." He has stated a little earlier: 'We must realise...that the reading and study of this branch of knowledge'—that is, history—'has been a cause of deviation from the straight path of the illustrious shariat of Muhammad...for those of weak faith, who are filled with suspicion and doubt. It has landed them in different positions and in the turbid ways of caprice and innovation, and has therefore become a source of disappointment. Such people as are by nature not disposed towards faith become hardened and suffer abiding loss (even) when they read the Eternal Word...How could they attain to a true knowledge of history'?!

Why, then, did Badauni write at all? History is too important to be ignored. 'How can one deny absolutely the value of a branch of knowledge, which is one-seventh of the Seven Sections and is the foundation for the strengthening of faith and certainty?" 'History is in itself a noble branch of knowledge and a refined art, as it is a means of warning to those who are aware and a source of experience for those who have intelligence and insight." And, after all, not everybody is predisposed to error. So Badauni could say: 'I address myself to those people who have a healthy nature, a keen mind and the habit of judging justly," and proceed to write what he wanted, and as he wanted.

He was very fortunate, indeed, in the time during which he lived. He was born in 1540. The fate of the Mahdavi leaders hung in the balance, and hardly anyone could get educated without becoming aware of the deep rift among the ulama caused by the teachings of Syed Muhammad of Jaunpur and being affected by the personalities and opinions of the different parties to the conflict. There were among the sufis those who possessed and enjoyed as well as those who despised wealth and influence, and both types had
admire and followers. The struggle for power between Afghans and Mughals put the loyalties of many to the test and must have made many more reflect on the nature and value of loyalty itself. And finally, by the time Badauni was qualified and mature enough to undertake literary work, Akbar’s intellectual curiosity was demanding satisfaction, and he was collecting men, ideas and books. After a period of necessary apprenticeship in the households of government officers, Badauni was presented before Akbar by Jamal Khan Qurehi and Hakim Ain-ul-Mulk. Abul Fazl found his way to the court about the same time. Shaikh Abd-un-Nabi was the sadr, and Akbar was uneasy under his dominance and that of other ulama. ‘As learning was a merchandise much in demand,’ Badauni says, ‘I had the privilege of being addressed (by His Majesty) as soon as I reached (his presence). I was included among the members of the assembly and was thrown into the discussion with the ulama who blew the trumpet of profundity and thought nothing of anybody... By the grace of God, the power of my mind, the sensitiveness of my intelligence and that boldness which is a natural quality of youth, I often proved myself the superior.’ For now on Badauni was in the thick of the battle. He was fighting for the shariat, and anyone who got hurt was the enemy: Akbar, Faizi, Abul Fazl, all intellectuals, all infidels, all accursed Shias, all fanatical Sunnis, all impostors. Could one want better hunting ground and more varied game?

But let us try to understand him. He received his education at the hands of persons like Miyan Hatim of Sambhal who, even if they cannot be called liberal in our sense of the term, were men of goodwill and free from fanaticism and the conceit of the learned. He seems to have studied also under Shaikh Mubarak of Nagor, the father of Faizi and Abul Fazl and a supporter of the Mahdavis. His father took him round to visit sufis and devout persons, and seems to have cultivated in him an attitude of reverence. He was learned enough in theology and jurisprudence to be able to meet the ulama on their own ground and emerge victorious. In fact, he found favour with Akbar because of his literary ability and his success in argument against the ulama of the court. He was willing to join in the fight because he was angered by the conceit, the fanaticism, the intellectual crudity and the bad manners of these ulama. What he writes of Maulana Abdullah Sultanpuri and Shaikh Abd-un-Nabi, and even more his sympathetic account of the Mahdavi leaders, Miyan Abdullah Niyazi and Shaikh Ali, should convince us that he was orthodox, but not insensitive or narrow-minded. He is sarcastic
and contemptuous in his treatment of impostors exploiting the good name of the sufis to win favours from kings and courtiers; he shows no respect for sufis who amassed wealth. But he makes no adverse comments on sufis whose life and conduct was obviously idiosyncratic and could easily be construed as heretical. He always speaks of Shaikh Mubarak of Nagor with respect, although the Shaikh was the originator of the idea of the superiority of the Imam-i-Adil over the ulama and himself drafted the fatwa, and although the Shaikh said on one occasion to Bir Bal—whom Badauni disliked intensely—in the presence of the Emperor that there were interpolations in the books of the Hindus, and many accretions also in our religion (of Islam) and one could not trust anything. His chronogram for the date of the Shaikh's death is 'The perfect Shaikh,' which means that his reverence for him lasted till the very end.

Badauni is fairly proud of his literary competence and his ability as a disputationist, but he has no illusions about his own piety. We may disregard as purely formal his frequent references to his own sinfulness, but he mentions, without trying to extenuate his own folly, an incident when he was wounded, and might easily have been killed by rowdies for making love to the wrong woman in the wrong place. If his sense of truthfulness is perverted, it spares him as little as anyone else. He seems to be aware that while others have their faults, he himself is bold and blunt and cannot resist the impulse to be mischievous.

Why is it, then, that Akbar and Badauni changed their opinions about each other, and while Akbar began to suspect that Badauni was at bottom a fanatic, Badauni became severely and maliciously critical of Akbar, his ideas and policies. Badauni relates how once Akbar asked him to come forward and then said to Abul Fazl: 'I thought this young man had attained the state of annihilation and followed the path of the sufis, but he has turned out to be such a fanatical theologian that no sword could cut through the jugular vein of his fanaticism.' Akbar had misunderstood the purport of a verse which Badauni had inserted in a translation of the Mahabharata, and Badauni was able, with Abul Fazl's support, to clarify his position. But Akbar's suspicion would seem to indicate, as Badauni continuously affirms, that his own attitude had somewhat hardened, and he was not inclined in principle, even if he was in practice, to allow a wide latitude to his Muslim courtiers and favourites in the matter of belief. We must not, therefore, dismiss Badauni's bitter criticism of Akbar's favourites and his reforms as
deriving from fanaticism, ingratitude or sheer perversity.

We know what Badauni thought of Shaikh Abd-un-Nabi, Maulana Abdullah Sultanpuri and in general of all the ulama who frequented courts, whether Akbar’s or Islam Shah’s. But was this a valid reason for condemning all the ulama and denying the value of theological study? Was it at all a plausible reason turning away from the shariat? If the nature and conduct of particular ulama could serve as an argument against the ulama as such, what about the courtiers, in particular those who were close to Akbar? Badauni could have felt that they did not deserve lenient treatment if, fault for fault, they were no better than the official ulama. Both in their own ways offended against the shariat, which for Badauni was the final criterion of judgement.

But could the shariat itself be defined precisely enough to serve as a criterion? That is Badauni’s weak point. How can one choose between wicked fools who claim to represent the shariat and wily intellectuals, poets and courtiers who make a fashion of deriding it? Badauni is vexed enough to lose his balance, and he touches the depths of meanness in the aspersions he casts on Faizi and Abul Fazl, his benefactors throughout his career at the court. But he was not really mean. He seems to have felt, like many educated Indian Muslims towards the close of the nineteenth and the beginning of the twentieth century, that while the ulama could not be defended and a liberalisation of the Indian Muslim way of life was essential, respect for the shariat must be maintained at all costs. And not Indian Muslims only. I remember Dr. Behjat Wahbi of Egypt, who came to lecture at the Jamia Millia in 1934, saying that if one did not pray, one should admit it was something wrong, not make a principle out of not praying. Badauni saw in his time the righteous ulama being persecuted, the wicked in the seat of judgement, and he must have felt that if, in such a contingency, the example and the influence of the court reinforced the general sentiment against the official ulama and their enforcement of the shariat, the shariat itself, which was the mainstay of Muslim life, would be destroyed. Therefore, he utilises his command over language to vent his spleen on those who were impudent and supercilious in their attitude towards the shariat and who ultimately succeeded in eradicating all reverence for it from the heart of the Emperor.

Badauni had no taste for investigation and research, no desire to add to existing historical knowledge. He states quite ingenuously that for the period beginning with the establishment of the Delhi
Sultanate up to his own time his account is just a selection from the Tarikh-i-Mubarakshahi and the work of Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad Bakhshi, which he calls the Nizam-ul-Tawarikh and also the Tabaqat-i-Akbari. But he has ‘added something of his own.’

When we examine this ‘something of his own,’ we find that Badauni was not interested in political history. Indeed, his lack of interest is much more than is indicated by his remark in the introductory statement that he would briefly relate something about each king. Not only do we find his narrative interspersed with verses, quatrains, gasidas and chronograms; he seems to think the production of poetry of equal if not greater importance as compared to political events. He discusses a poet and quotes his poems in between the accession of Razia and an account of her reign, and of the two, the poet seems to be the far more significant personage. Nasir-ud-Din’s reign occupies four pages as against thirty-one allotted to gasidas written during his reign. The death of Balban’s crown-prince, Sultan Muhammad, provides opportunity for inserting long elegies. What he thinks of political ideas and policies is evident from his passing over the advice given by Balban to his son by saying that it has been mentioned in the histories of Delhi, and from his giving more space to Kaiqubad than to Balban. His values do not change when he is writing of his own time. Momentous administrative decisions are thought worthy of only this brief reference: ‘And in this year His Majesty ordered the institution of branding and muster under the guidance of Shahbaz Khan Kamboh, the appointment of Kuroris in all the territory under control and the reversion at one stroke of all land to Khalsa.’

The ‘something more’ which Badauni has added to his selection of events from his two sources includes also continuous references to sufis and poets. The references are not particularly helpful, except perhaps in fixing dates, for hardly has anyone’s death been mentioned without a chronogram being given. Badauni was also fond of relating anecdotes. He has not the rambling imagination of a story-teller, and he would have regarded telling stories a frivolity. He has no taste for the supernatural. In the account he gives of natural portents and calamities that followed the killing of Sidi Maula by Firuz Khalji he is quite restrained as compared to Barani, and he qualifies his statement about the drought by saying that it may have been due to natural causes. But anecdotes do enrich his narrative. There is the story of slave-girl of a Ilutmish who is found to be his sister. There is the romance of Sayyid Musa and Mohini,
the goldsmith's daughter. This is something that happened in his own time. Badauni interrupts his narrative to tell this story at length; one feels that here, at last, he has stopped looking at persons and actions through the glasses of the shariat and has identified himself completely with the persons whose fate he describes. The story is a literary masterpiece.

But most characteristic of Badauni are his epigrams and sarcastic remarks. It would not be easy to find a more accurate and incisive summing up to Muhammad Tughluq's reign than Badauni's: 'The sultan was relieved of the people and the people were relieved of the sultan.' The following are typical examples of naughtiness.

'And in this year the Scholars of the Age, Mir Murtaza Sharifi Shirazi, departed from this inn of unreality. First, he was buried at Delhi, in the neighbourhood of the grave of Amir Khusrau (May God have mercy on him). Then, because the Sadr and the Qazi and the Shaikh-ul-Islam represented (to His Majesty) that Amir Khusrau was an Indian and a Sunni and Mir Murtaza an Iraqi and a rafizi, there was no doubt that Amir Khusrau would find his company a torture...His Majesty commanded that his body should be removed and buried elsewhere.'

'And in this year Shaikh Ibrahim Chishti died a natural death at Fatehpur. He bid farewell to mountains of gold and rendered his account to the Creator of life. Out of his wealth twenty-five crores in cash, in addition to elephants, horses and other goods were taken into the treasury, the rest fell to the share of his enemies—his sons and representatives.'

'Makhdum-ul-Mulk died at Ahmadabad in the year 990/A. H. Qazi Ali was sent from Fatehpur to Lahore to make an inventory of his property. He uncovered so much wealth and buried treasure that one could not open its lock with the key of the imagination. A part of the treasure found in the family grave-yard of Makhdum-ul-Mulk were boxes filled with gold bricks, which had been buried under the pretence that they were corpses. What was apparent to the eyes of men was so much that only God the Creator could make a reckoning. All those bricks, along with the books, which counted for no more than mere bricks, were confiscated to the Treasury.'

There are chronograms which are not only naughty but nasty, such as 'the miserly Shaikh' for Shaikh Ibrahim Chishti and 'carcase of a swine' for Shaikh Gadai.

It goes without saying that Badauni's Muntakhab-ul-Tawarikh is obviously and intensely subjective. It belongs to the category of
Memoirs rather than histories, and indeed often reminds one of the Memoirs of St. Simon. But perhaps the value of Badauni's work lies just in this. He wears no disguise; he writes as he feels. He has no affiliations of class or interest, he is a free-lance. He has no idea of pleasing anyone, and no conception of the historian's function that can make him diffident. If we agree that he means by the *shariat* only an attitude of reverence for God, the Prophet, the revelation, we shall realise that he has allowed himself and would allow to others latitude for difference of opinion and for living as one liked. We may still sometimes feel irritated, but we shall also feel that here is someone who enjoys looking at life from all sides, who writes with relish and writes well, who has not searched for facts that were obscure or had escaped the notice of others but has given us something live and vibrant, reflecting him and his age.

REFERENCES

The significance of the millennium did not remain a subject for discussion confined to the theologians and sufis, but had been a subject of popular speculation for many centuries, so much so that even poets loved to recite verses on the above theme. Shaikh Abul Fazl has quoted the following quatrain composed by Khaqani (d. 582/1186) in his Akbar-nama.

They say that after every thousand years of the world,
There comes into existence a true man,
He came before this, ere we were born from nothingness,
He will come after this when we have departed in sorrow.

Elsewhere the same poet wrote:

Every now and then, the world is saturated with wretches,
Then a shining soul comes down out of the sky,
Khaqani! Seek not in this age for such a thing,
Sit, not by the way for the Caravan will come late.¹

In India, the Mahdavi movement was already on the wane in Akbar’s reign, but there did exist an increasing tension among the Muslims as the completion of one thousand years after the Prophet Muhammad’s death drew near. It was in about 1573–74 that Mulla Abdul Qadir Badauni visited Shaikh Daud (died 982/1574–5) and informed him through one of the Shaikh’s favourites, Miyan Abdul Wahhab, that the masbaikh of Hindustan were planning to start an uprising under a descendant of Sultan Ala-ud-Din bin Muhammad Shah bin Mubarak Shah bin Khizr Khan, the last Sultan of the Sayyid dynasty. They professed to have received directions from Ghaus i-Azam Shaikh Abdul Qadir Jilani. Some amirs of the frontiers had also joined them². The proposed uprising did not materialise, but the political adventurers were too ready to exploit the hopes and fears of people to their own advantage. Akbar was not seemingly disturbed by these movements. He is said to have observed: ‘Although I am
the master of so vast a kingdom, and all the appliances of the government are to my hand, yet since true greatness consists in doing the will of God, my mind is not at ease in this diversity of sects and creeds; and apart from this outward pomp of circumstances, with what satisfaction in my despondency, can I undertake the sway of empire? I wait the coming of some discreet man of principle, who will resolve the difficulties of my conscience.\textsuperscript{13}

He, however, ordered to commemorate the millennium of the Islamic era by getting the 'Era of the Thousand' stamped on the coins and a \textit{Tarikh-i-Alfi}, commencing with the death of the Prophet, written. The orders in no way sought to proclaim the end of Islam or to flout its ordinances as the following account of Mulla Abdul Qadir Badauni tends to indicate. 'And since, in his Majesty's opinion, it was a settled fact, that the 1000 years since the time of the mission of the Prophet (peace be upon him!), which was to be the period of the continuance of the faith of Islam, were now completed, no hindrance remained to the promulgation of those secret designs, which he nursed in his heart. And so, considering any further respect or regard for the Shaikhs and Ulama (who were unbending and uncompromising) to be unnecessary, he felt at liberty to embark fearlessly on his design of annulling the statutes and ordinances of Islam, and of establishing his own cherished pernicious belief (in their stead).\textsuperscript{16} However, Badauni, after giving a brief account of some of the ordinances of Akbar's reign, which according to him were issued in 990/1582-83, again observed in a rather sober style: 'The year 1,000 of the \textit{Hijrah} era, which is in general use, being now on the point of completion, the Emperor ordered a history of all the kings of Islam to be written, which should in reality supersede all other histories, and directed that such a name should be given to the work as to denote the year of its composition. It was for this reason that the work was entitled \textit{Alfi}.'\textsuperscript{16}

The work was intended to serve the same broadly based motives with which a sort of translation bureau was established. Asaf Khan (Jafar Beg), who after the death of Mulla Ahmad Tattawi completed the \textit{Tarikh-i-Alfi}, after extolling the high sense of justice which Akbar sought to dispense, observed in a short preface to the portions written by him that the Emperor always made strenuous efforts to mobilize his energies in making every one acquainted with 'perfect knowledge' and in making the followers of different religions and diverse faiths realise the truth underlying each religion and faith and give up their innate bigotry. It was with this
view that the Emperor ordered that the principles of different religions, which were based on reason, should be translated in different languages. He also ordered that as far as possible the rose garden of the principles of traditional knowledge of every religion should be cleaned out of the thorns of bigotry, for in India innovations had been contrived in every religion and thousands of undesirable regulations had been carved out. *Azan* was quoted by him to substantiate the thesis. It was pointed out that *azan* was being regularly repeated for five times since the days of Prophet Muhammad, but the Sunnis and Shias, on the basis of the traditions of their own faiths, sharply differed from each other on the mode of its calling. Similarly people of nefarious designs found a wider scope for giving vent to their peculiar feelings and sentiments in the narration of the events relating to the past rulers and their policies.

A board of seven scholars was originally constituted to undertake the compilation of the *Tariikh-i-Alfi* which was commenced in 993/1585. The account of the first year was assigned to Naqib Khan, of the second to Shah Fathullah, of the third to Hakim Humam, of the fourth to Hakim Ali, of the fifth to Haji Ibrahim Sarhind, of the sixth to Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad and of the seventh to Mulla Abdul Qadir Badauni. The board comprised the scholars of all shades of opinion. Indeed, Akbar had ordered that a very high degree of objectivity and perfection should be reached in the compilation of the *Tariikh-i-Alfi*. The account of the first thirty-five years after Prophet Muhammad's death was distributed for compilation to the members of the above board. Akbar himself supervised the progress of the work. Mulla Abdul Qadir Badauni says: 'During the time that I was compiling the events of the seventh year, and was engaged on the life of the second true Khalifa (may God be propitious to him!) one night, when the Emperor heard the account of the foundation of Kufa, and the building and destruction of Qasr-ul-Imarat, which was narrated in detail together with the cause of its destruction, and the marriage of *Umm-i-Kulsam*, daughter of the Amir-ul-Muminin Ali (God be propitious to them both!) as well as the institution of five stated times for prayer, the fall of the city of Nasibin, and the scorpions as big as cocks, which were made use of to effect its capture, he raised great objections and would not accept the truth of it. Asaf Khan Salis, who is the same as Mirza Jafar, helped me but in a poor way, but Shaikh Abul Fazl and Ghazi Khan Badakshi, on the other hand, confirmed my assertions. When I was asked whence I got this information, I replied that I had
seen it in books, and had written accordingly, and that it was not my own invention. Immediately, the Rauza-ul-Akbab and other historical books were called for from the library, and given to Naqib Khan to verify the accuracy of the statement, which by God's grace being found correct, I was relieved from the charge of invention.\footnote{17}

It seems that the board could not get on with the work satisfactorily and Mulla Ahmad bin Nasrullah Dai-buli Tattawi was ordered to undertake the compilation of the work from the thirtysixth year, at the recommendation of Hakim Abul Fath. He was asked to write in a simple and easy language, and was ordered that, on introducing the founder of an empire, an account of his ancestors and of the manner in which he rose to power should invariably be given.\footnote{18} Mulla Ahmad brought down the account to 693/1294 (683 RIhat) within three years. He was murdered by Mirza Faulad Beg Barlas in 994/1588 and Asaf Khan Jafar Beg was ordered to complete the work. He commenced the compilation with the reign of Ghazan Khan (694/1295 to 713/1304) and added a brief preface comprising a short account of the motives of Akbar in getting the work compiled, a brief reference to the murder of Mulla Ahmad, the punishment awarded to the murderer and his being commissioned to complete the work.\footnote{19} He must have brought down the account to 1000/1591-92, but none of the existing manuscripts exceed beyond 997/1588-89. Mulla Abdul Qadir Badauni was subsequently ordered to revise and collate the work in collaboration with Mustafa Katib of Lahore. He seems to have hurriedly revised the first volume of the work and his labours were duly recognised. He was then ordered to revise the second volume for, according to him, it comprised highly biased material. Badauni says: 'In the course of one year I sufficiently collated it, but on account of my own taint of bigotry I did not interfere with the book, except as regards the order of the years, and did not alter the original, but laid the blame on my state of health; and may it not, God grant! be a cause of any further injury. My condition with regard to these books was like that of one who casts dates together with the stones, and another says to him, 'Why don't you throw away the stones?' and he answers, 'They have apportioned me only just this amount.'\footnote{20}

The work was originally divided into three volumes. The first two volumes, written by Mulla Ahmad, brought down the account to Ghazan Khan, while the third volume was completed by Asaf Khan.\footnote{21} Badauni seems to have confused Ghazan Khan with Chingiz Khan. The existing manuscripts do not strictly adhere to
the original plan, and the copyists, binders and owners of the manuscripts have divided the volumes according to their whims and convenience. Abul Fazl, who claims to have written a preface to the work, says; ‘As His Majesty has become acquainted with the treasure of history, he ordered several well-informed writers to compose a work containing the events which have taken place in the seven zones for the last one thousand years. Naqib Khan, and several others, commenced this history. A very large portion was subsequently added by Mulla Ahmad of Thathah, and the whole concluded by Jat Bar Asaf Khan. The introduction is composed by me. The work has the title of Tarikh-i-Alfi, the History of a thousand years. None of the known existing manuscripts contain the preface written by Abul Fazl. If it is found, it would, like his preface to the Mahabharat, throw considerable new light on the scheme of the work.

The portions of the Tarikh-i-Alfi comprising the history of Timur, Mirza Khalil, Mirza Shah Rukh, Ulugh Beg, Abul Qasim Babur, Sultan Husain Mirza, Babur, Humayun and Akbar (984/1577) seem to have been compiled into a separate continuous volume in the reign of Akbar shortly after the completion of the work by Mirza Jafar Beg Asaf Khan. 112 large miniatures, some of which cover two opposite pages, were added by the Emperor’s order. Shahjahan in an autograph note on the fly leaf of the manuscript preserved in Khuda Baksh Oriental Public Library Bankipore, Patna, wrote that the account of Timur and his descendants and that of Akbar down to the 22nd year of his reign, was composed in the time of Shah Baba (Akbar). The work was subsequently entitled Tarikh-i-Khandan-i-Timuriya.

Tarikh-i-Alfi was based on the best available sources. Objectivity in approach and simplicity in expression were particularly emphasised. The work is arranged strictly in chronological order. The events have been recorded year by year beginning with the first years of Prophet Muhammad’s death i.e., 11th Hijri. Careless copyists have frequently confused the rihlat date with the hijri dates. Sir H. M. Elliot and Professor John Dowson have pointed out: ‘But a much greater objection to be made to the Tarikh-i-Alfi is the plan of the work; it is constructed in the form of Annals, like the tedious Historical Library of Diodorus; and thus we are compelled to turn over page after page of this voluminous history, before we can trace the connection of events in any particular country which may happen to be the subject of our investigation. Nothing but an excellent
Index could remedy such a defect. Elliot and Dowson have rightly pointed out that the compilers apparently availed themselves of all the best sources of information open to them; often applying a very judicious criticism in selecting the most trustworthy records, and rejecting the fabulous legends with which so many of them were full. Badauni, in his own peculiar style, has observed that Akbar did not approve of the legendary material being incorporated in the work. The earlier portion of the work is, on the whole, based mainly upon Rauzat-ul Ahbab fi Siyar-un-Nabi wa'l Al wal Ashab of Amir Jamal-ud-Din Ataullah b. Fazlullah al-Husaini al-Dashtaki-al-Shirazi (died 926/1520). He was an eminent theologian and flourished in the reign of Sultan Husain (873–911/1469–1506) at Herat. The third volume of the work was not, however, popular with the orthodox theologians in India. Badauni says that when he went to pay a visit to Makhdum-ul-Mulk along with Shaikh Abul Fazl and Haji Sultan of Thaneswar, he found that Makhdum-ul-Mulk had before him the third volume of the Rauzat-ul-Ahbab. He said to them: 'See, what mischief those who are followed in this land have wrought in the faith', and he showed them the following couplet which occurred in the encomium of Ali:

This alone is sufficient to prove his resemblance to God.
That it has been doubted that he himself was God.

He said that the author had passed beyond rif' and had placed the question of his misbelief to the stage of hulul. He informed them that he had finally decided to burn the book in the presence of a Shia. Though Badauni had never previously met Makhdum-ul-Mulk, he boldly told him that the couplet was a translation of those verses which were attributed to Imam Shafi. Makhdum-ul-Mulk and Badauni tried to defend their points of view very enthusiasmatically. Makhdum-ul-Mulk added that the second volume of the work also comprised passages which proved the heresy and misbelief of the author of the work.

It was not possible to steer clear of the controversies and to face the intolerance of the orthodox. Mulla Ahmad, the principal author of earlier portions, was a zealous shia. It was probably to satisfy the orthodox susceptibilities that Mulla Abdul Qadir Badauni was asked to revise the portions written by Mulla Ahmad.

The accounts relating to the history of Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq, of the Afghans, of the Provincial Dynasties of the fifteenth
century and of the Sur dynasty have not been given chronologically under respective years, but the above have been dealt with continuously at different places. Adequate justice has not been done to the history of the Sultans of Delhi. The history of the Indian Timurids from Babur to Akbar has been dealt with at some length. The account of Babur is mainly based on the Tuzuk-i-Baburi, but the accounts of Humayun and Akbar, as also of Persia, Central Asia and Turkey, are based on informations available in the imperial archives and on those collected from oral evidence of eminent nobles and other people. The memoirs of Mihtar Jauhar Aftabchi, Bayizid Bayat and Gulbadan Begum, which provided valuable strands to the scholars who were interested in Humayun’s reigns, were probably not available to the compilers of the Tarikh-i-Alfi. It seems that the compilers had an access to the works of Muhammad Arif Qandahari and Mir Ala-ud-Daula Kami Qazwini, but the concluding portions of the Tarikh-i-Alfi comprise the first official history of Akbar’s reign, compiled under the Emperor’s own supervision. Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad has based his account of Humayun’s reign mainly on the Tarikh-i-Alfi, and has extensively drawn upon it for an account of Akbar’s reign. The work sprang from the tension that is fully reflected in the Muntakhub-ut-Tawarikh of Mulla Abdul Qadir Badauni, but it sought to ignore petty squabbles and prepared the people for adjusting themselves to the new values of life which were gaining increasing importance on account of Akbar’s policy of ‘peace with all.’

Portions relating to Babur, Humayun and Akbar comprise a detailed account of the principal incidents that took place in Iran, Central Asia and Turkey, and give a new dimension to the understanding of the policies and politics of the courts of Humayun and Akbar. The importance of India has not been unduly emphasised, but the leading role which the country had started playing in the policies of Iran and Central Asia is adequately reflected from the accounts of the Tarikh-i-Alfi.
REFERENCES

6. Ibid., p. 327.
7. Mirza Qiyam-ud-Din Jafar Beg of Mirza Badi-uz-Zaman Qazwini reached India in 985/1577 and was presented to Akbar by Mirza Ghayas-ud-Din Ali Asif Khan Bakhshi, his uncle. He was a scholar of considerable eminence and a free-thinker. He died in 1021/1612.
8. Abul Fazl wrote in his preface to the Persian translation of the Mahabharat: 'Akbar was anxious to introduce reforms among all classes of his subjects and did not discriminate between a friend and a foe. As he found that there were exceedingly great differences amongst Hindus and Muslims, and there was no end to the polemics and refutations of each other, he decided to get the reliable books of both the religions translated in the language of their opponents, so that shaking off their enmity they should try to search for truth. However, having been acquainted with their respective weaknesses, they should try to reform themselves. Secondly, in every religion there were a number of ignorant ones who always thought themselves to be great scholars and misrepresented the original works of the masters. Common people took these misrepresentations for the real religion and were often misled. Akbar thought it essential to protect the people from becoming a victim to the nefarious designs of such custodians of faith and came to the decision that if the books of different religions could be translated into a simple language, the common people would be able to know the truth for themselves. (Abul Fazl, Preface to the Persian Translation of the Mahabharat, Lytton Collection, Maulana Azad Library, Aligrah Muslim University), f. 9 b.
9. Tarikh-i-Alfi (Bodleian 99/Ousely 341), f. 333a.
10. Mir Ghayas-ud-Din Ali bin Abdul Latif Qazwini, the grandson of Mir Yahya Qazwini (died 962/1555), the author of Lubb-ut-Tawarikh, arrived with his father in India, when Akbar after his accession had not yet left the Punjab. (Akbar-nama, Vol. II, p. 230). He soon became a personal friend of the Emperor. He generally read out the books to the Emperor and supervised the translation of Sanskrit works into Persian. He excelled in the art of writing history and was said to have committed all the seven volumes of Rawza-t-us-Safa of Mir Khwand to memory. Jahangir also highly extolled the virtues of Naqib Khan.
11. Mir Fathullah Shirazi, after his arrival in India, served Ali Adil Shah I (1557-1580), fifth king of the Adil Shahi dynasty of Bijapur. He was an eminent Mathematician and Scientist. He reached Akbar's court at the Emperor's invitation in 991/1583-84. His name is associated with many inventions in the field of mechanics. He died in Kashmir in 997/1588-9.
12. Hakim Humân, son of Mir Abd-ur-Razaq Gilani, left Iran after 974/1566–67 and reached Akbar’s court with his brother Hakim Abdûl Fath in the 20th year of the Emperor’s reign. He was very intimate with Akbar, and was sent with Sadr Jahan to Turan as an ambassador in the 31st year of the Emperor’s reign. He died on 6 Rabi I, 1005/9 November, 1595.

13. Hakim Ali Gilani reached India from Iran in Akbar’s reign. He soon acquired a high position by the dint of proficiency in medicine. In the 39th year of the Emperor’s reign he constructed a wonderful reservoir; was raised to the command of 700 and given the title of Jalûnus-us-Zaman. He attended Akbar in his last illness. He died in 1018/1609.

14. Haji Ibrahim Sarhindi was one of the leading theologians of Akbar’s court. He had an immense influence over the Emperor in the early part of his reign and was a keen debater. Later on he was required to collaborate with the scholars who were ordered to translate Sanskrit works into Persian. He died at Ranthambor in 994/1586.

15. Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad son of Muhammad Muqim Harawai was appointed Bakhshi of Gujarat in the 37th year of Akbar’s reign and died on 23 Sâfar 1003/6 November, 1594. He was the author of Tabagat-i-Akbari which he completed in 1001/1592–93 but subsequently brought down the account of Akbar’s reign to 1002/1593–94.

16. Abdul Qadir ‘Qadiri’ bin Mulluk Shah bin Hamid Badauni, the celebrated author of Muntakhab-ut-Tawârikh was an active member of Akbar’s translation bureau and was associated with the compilation and translation of a number of works.

18. Tarikh-i-Alfi, (British Museum) Riu 118b–119a, Or. 142 f. 498a.
19. Tarikh-i-Alfi, (Bodleian 99). ff. 332b–33a; British Museum, Or. 465, f. 97a.
25. Elliot and Dowson, The History of India as told by its own Historians, Vol. V, p. 156.
27. The work was completed in 900/1494–95 and is divided into three maqâsads (Volumes) 1. Prophet Muhammad. 2. The First Three Caliphs. 3. Ali and the Twelve Imams.
28. Hamîn bîn bûd hûq numâlî ș, ke kardand shâk dar khudânî ș.
29. Being a Shia
30. Belief in the transmigration of soul
32. Mulla Ahmad bin Nasrullah Dai-buli Tattawi was converted to Shism in his early life and studied at Mashhad, Yazd and Shiraz. Before coming to Akbar's court (989/1581) he served at the court of Qutb Shah of Golconda. He was murdered in 996/1588 at Lahore.
SHAIKH ABUL FAZL

NOMAN AHMAD SIDDQUI

Historiography in Medieval India attracted the attention of scholars and learned men who cherished and cultivated it as an independent discipline in its own right. Some of them, such as Zia-ud-Din Barani, Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad, Abdul Qadir Badauni, Muhammad Qasim Ferishta and Khafi Khan were eminent historians and made contributions to Medieval historiography. They were influenced by earlier traditions of historical writings, but on account of their individual academic training and accomplishments, their position in society and their particular outlook on religion and politics, they chose to approach and treat historiography in their own way. Among them, however, Shaikh Abul Fazl occupies a place of distinction and has left his mark on the traditions of historical writings in Medieval India.

His chief claim to the title of a distinguished historian is due mainly to the predominant intellectual element in his writings, to his unfailing appeal to reason as against religious and cultural traditions, to his broader view of history, to his attempt to interpret the contemporary history in terms which took a note of the political and administrative realities of the period, to the new methodology which he sought to apply to his task and to the unique and masterly literary style of his prose. Finally, his most significant achievement as a historian is the fact that in the pages of the *Akbar-nama* and the *Ain-i-Akbari* he did succeed in giving Akbar’s greatness a concrete and palpable form.

It may be contended that Barani and Badauni excelled him in capturing the spirit of their respective ages which they sought to depict. Similarly, Nizam-ud-Din and Ferishta can be regarded as more successful historians, because they approached their subject matter in a non-partisan way and recorded the facts more objectively and clearly. No one should hesitate to concede that Khafi Khan duly deserves the credit of perceiving and recording the important developments which brought about change in society or in the administrative institutions and the relationship which subsisted between the two. Abul Fazl may be found failing in these qualities as
a historian, but, except for him, no other medieval historian can lay a claim to a rational and secular approach to history and to the application of a new methodology to collect facts and marshal them on the basis of critical investigation. These are the hallmarks of Abul Fazl’s historical writings.

Secondly, he widened the scope of history by recording a mass of facts pertaining to political, social, economic and cultural life, and by incorporating chapters on administrative regulations and procedures and topographical account of various provinces. He laboured hard for the collection of material, and selected important facts after careful enquiry and investigation, and then presented them in a clear and systematic manner. He questioned the validity of a source and accepted it only when it satisfied the principles of historical investigation formulated by him. In other words, he created a new idiom for understanding and interpreting history, widened its range and scope, and laid down the principles of historical investigation. It may, therefore, be suggested that in Abul Fazl’s writings we can discover a philosophy of history, i. e., a definite concept about the nature and purpose of history, principles for interpretation of history, and the critical apparatus for the collection and selection of facts of history.

Abul Fazl’s achievements as a historian, summed up in the preceding lines, are by any standard quite impressive. However, in our evaluation and assessment of him as a historian some of his limitations need to be noted. His limitations owed their origin to his position as the favourite courtier and trusted secretary of Akbar, to the official nature of his history, to his genuine or feigned veneration for Akbar as a perfect man and an ideal king. As a courtier and an official historian with the feelings of veneration for Akbar, Abul Fazl could not but defend and extol him and his activities, policies and measures. In his zeal for depicting his hero as a perfect man and ideal king he often fails to listen to the dictates of reason, moderation and restraint. This has made the account not only partisan but at times has degenerated into a panegyric.

Abul Fazl, the son of Shaikh Mubarak, was born at Agra on 14th January, 1551. He was gifted with an extraordinary intelligence and showed signs of precocity in early age. He studied under the care of his father, one of the most accomplished scholars of the age. Shaikh Mubarak was widely respected for his learning, his broad and liberal views and his attachment to the mystic way of life. The impact of Shaikh Mubarak’s personality on Abul Fazl
SHAIKH ABUL FAZL

was profound and abiding. Abul Fazl mastered all branches of knowledge known as *mangul* at the early age of fifteen. He himself began to teach at the age of twenty.

The most important event which left a deep impression on the religious and political outlook of Abul Fazl was the protracted persecution which he and his family suffered at the hands of the powerful *ulama*. Shaikh Mubarak was suspected of being a Mahdavi and even a Shia. Abul Fazl, however, refutes these charges against his father. The persecution continued for about two decades, and the family was compelled to lead the life of fugitives, whom nobody befriended or offered shelter and refuge. However, in the early 1570s, the days of suffering came to an end. Akbar received the family in 1574, and gave protection and patronage to them. Abul Fazl was himself presented to Akbar as Faizi's brother in 1574 and was received with special favour. After sometime Abul Fazl joined the service of the Emperor as a courtier.

It appears that Abul Fazl was torn by a deep and intensive inner conflict before he made up his mind to join the imperial service. He doubted the wisdom and propriety of becoming a courtier. The saintly and intellectual traditions of the age were very strong against seeking the royal service. Abul Fazl's intellectual predilections and the yearnings for the attainment of ultimate truth through meditation and contemplation further strengthened him in his resolve to lead the life of an ascetic and a philosopher. The life of a courtier was a complete negation of the tradition of Abul Fazl's own spiritual urges. However, the persiant persuasion by Shaikh Mubarak and Faizi, combined with prospects and hopes of worldly advancement, set the conflict at rest. Abul Fazl was induced to accept the bondage of a courtier. This proved to be a turning point in his life and career. His rise in the imperial rank was slow and protracted. He began his career as a *mansabdar* of 20, and was in 1885 promoted to the rank of one thousand. Eventually he attained to the rank of five thousand, but the same year in August 1602 he was killed at the instigation of Prince Salim.

The chief interest of Abul Fazl's career does not lie in the rank which he attained or the offices he held, but in the great influence which he wielded over the Emperor in the initiation and execution of policies. The most significant role which Abul Fazl played was his skilful manipulation and exploitation of the religious discussions against the orthodox *ulama*. The persecution to which the family of Shaikh Mubarak had been put by the *ulama* had left a
lasting impression on him and his sons. It had made them uncompromising opponents of the ulama. Abul Fazl and Faizi skilfully exploited the situation, discredited the ulama in the eyes of Akbar by their superior reasoning and immense learning, and eventually brought about their fall from the position of power. Secondly, it was in this school of misfortune that Abul Fazl learnt the lesson of toleration, which brought about a profound change in his social and religious ideas. It also served as the basis of friendship with Akbar and provided Abul Fazl with a new concept of Indian history. The idea of religious toleration runs like a thread throughout his writings. Again, the same school of adversity stimulated him to unusual exertions in his studies, which subsequently proved of great value to him, and helped him to lead the opposition successfully and overthrow the orthodox ulama.

The decade between 1575 and 1585 constitutes the most tumultuous and, at the same time, the most formative period of Akbar’s reign. Political, administrative and religious issues of great magnitude and consequence came up before Akbar; most fierce controversies raged about religious questions and the position of the ruler in the Muslim community. The religious discussions held in the Ibadat Khana released the forces of critical enquiry. Abul Fazl undertook to champion the cause of reason and religious toleration. Eventually the opposition led by Abul Fazl and supported by Akbar completely disarmed the orthodox ulama; they were compelled to acknowledge Akbar as the Mujtahid or the Imam-i-Adil—the infallible leader of the Muslim community and the final authority to interpret controversial issues of Muslim law and religion. The orthodox ulama were deprived of their offices and position of influence. They vacated the key positions in the administration of religious affairs; and because of the drastic reforms introduced in it the power and prestige of the office of the Sadr decreased, and the political and economic stability of the Madad-i-maash holders, who were the staunch supporters of the orthodox ulama, broke down. Thus Abul Fazl had eventually won against his ideological and personal opponents.

His role in bringing about the fall of the orthodox was at once motivated by personal considerations as well as by his belief that the orthodox stood for fanaticism, blind acceptance of tradition and persecution of those who differed from them. The principles for which he stood and fought against the ulama, have been described in his writings on various occasions, sometimes casually, sometimes in detail and specifically. What is important for the present discussion
is that his active participation in the religious debates clarified his views on religion and politics, and later were repeatedly reflected in his writings. The second important influence, which had a bearing on his historical writings, was his scholarly training and temperament and his preference for philosophical speculations. It induced him to choose what was sober and grave in life in preference to what appeared to be trivial and commonplace. Consequently, his writings abound in generalisations and philosophical reflections and form a part of his historiography. His intellectual bias also largely determined his style and literary value. He choose to write, as he declares in the Akbar-nama, for the elect few; it did not matter to him if the majority of the illiterati of his age failed to understand his language and style.

Abul Fazl's political and religious views deserve attention for two reasons. In the first place, they determined his selection of important facts of history. In the second, they affected the treatment of subject matter. It is true that Abul Fazl ascertained the individual facts with great care, but both the selection of facts, which he recorded, and their evaluation and presentation were coloured by his outlook on the contemporary political and religious issues.

Abul Fazl postulates that the institution of monarchy is divine in its origin. It is a light which emanates from God. The monarch owes his position, without any intercession, to the grace of God. The institution is necessary, as well as desirable, in order to keep the antagonistic forces of society under control. In the absence of the institution the conflicting forces working within the society would destroy themselves in a self-consuming struggle. However, the monarchy should not be an instrument in the hands of the sovereign to seek his personal gratification, physical pleasure and lust for power and prestige. On the other hand, the sovereign should devote himself to the welfare of his people. He should maintain law and order in a world which is full of conflicting forces. The monarch should be just, wise and brave, and he should possess great physical strength. Toleration, broad-mindedness and a strong sense of justice are the requisite attributes of an ideal monarch. Abul Fazl, to his great satisfaction, found such an ideal monarch in Akbar. What was more, Akbar possessed the requisite qualifications for looking after the religious as well as the temporal needs of the people.

His evaluation of the Mughal Empire under the leadership of Akbar, as a symbol of the forces of consolidation, stability and good government, ensuring economic prosperity, peace and safety, and
religious freedom and toleration to all, was a natural corollary to his basic political views. From the above it naturally follows that the policy of territorial expansion was necessary as well as desirable in the religious, political and economic interests of the people. Thus Abul Fazl's political views, expounded again and again in his writings, serve to provide moral and intellectual justification for the imperialist policy of the Mughals.

Abul Fazl's religious views are an enigma to the student of Mughal history as they were to his contemporaries. The author of the Maasir-ul-Umara has summed up the views held by Abul Fazl's contemporaries about his beliefs. Khan-i-Azam in a chronogram described him as a rebel against the Prophet. Jahangir held the same opinion about Abul Fazl. It was a commonly held belief that Abul Fazl was an infidel. He was also accused of being a Hindu, a fire-worshipper, secular and an atheist. However, according to the author of the Maasir-ul-Umara, it was more correct to say that he believed in 'peace with all' and was a free thinker, believing in the goodness of all religions. The author of the Alamara-i-Abbasi has described him as a Nuqtavi. Urfi considered the two brothers responsible for leading the people to apostacy. Abul Fazl himself confesses that he had attained the path of sulh-i-kul. In a passage in the Ain-i-Akbari he has referred to the controversial views held about him by his contemporaries, both his opponents and supporters. It deserves to be quoted at some length.

'Although the son of Mubarak is at the present time the object of resentment and held up as a warning to mankind, and a strife of love and hate is kindled in his regard, the worshippers of God who seek truth give him the name of Abul Wahdat, and account him a unique servant of the Supreme Giver. The valorous in the field of bravery style him Abul Himmat and deem him one of the wonders of carnal self-denial. Wisdom proclaims him Abul Fitrat, and considers him a choice specimen of that sublime house. In the writings of the vulgar herd which are noisy dens of ignorance, some attribute worldliness to him and hold him to be one of those plunged into this whirlpool, while others regard him as given up to scepticism and apostacy, and band together in reproach and condemnation.

Of me a hundred fictions rumoured fly,
And the world stares if I a word reply.

God be praised that I am not moved from these honourable
dispositions by watching the strange vicissitudes of life, nor turn from well-wishing both to those who blame and those who commend, and defile not my tongue with reproof or praise."

A careful study of the *Akbar-nama* and the *Ain-i-Akbari*, however, will suggest that he was a rationalist and free-thinker. His final appeal was to reason. He ridicules those who appealed to traditions and conventions and to the opinions expressed in old religious books. He dubs these people as *taqlidi*, the followers of old traditions and precepts. He considers them as foolish and ignorant. In other words, the orthodox *ulama* were *taqlidi*, as they appealed to past traditions and to the holy law and practice of the Prophet. They failed to realize that with the passage of time truth expressed in books on religion and law had become obsolete and out of date. But at the same time Abul Fazl appears to have been a duly religious man. It is difficult to describe the exact views he held about God and other religious concepts. But his writings make it clear that he believed in the One Supreme God and respected the saints and their spiritual attainments. For formal religion and for its law and for the social practices inspired by religion, he showed scant respect, and in a way ridiculed them. Consequently, the Muslims in general and the orthodox in particular doubted his faith in Islam. However, the charge of atheism against him cannot be substantiated. While believing in One Supreme God he attached no importance to the formal religion, and emphasised the spiritual content in religion. His religious views naturally brought him in a headlong clash with the orthodox. In the contest Abul Fazl finally won. But in doing so he antagonised the majority of the *ulama* and the Muslims. He gained a reputation for being an enemy of Islam, the Prophet, Tradition and Muslim law. He realized the unenviable position which he held in the society, and was constrained to explain, elucidate and justify his ideological position in the *Ain-i-Akbari* and the *Akbar-nama*. Consequently, his work contains discourses on his liberal religious ideas, on the doctrine of ‘peace with all’, and on his faith in the supremacy of reason as against tradition.

His liberal views on religion have been set forth in a passage in the *Ain-i-Akbari*, entitled the conditions of the Pepole of Hindustan. The main points contained in the passage may be summed up as follows:

1. The main source of religious antagonism and bitterness between Hindus and Muslims was the belief that Hindus committed the *shirk*, i.e., associated the attributes of God with human
beings and their images. The charge against the Hindus, Abul Fazl asserts, was baseless. Careful investigation and enquiry has shown that the Hindus subscribed to the concept of one God.

2. Nevertheless, the misunderstanding was deep-rooted and led to bitter antagonism and even to bloodshed.

3. The sources of misunderstanding were many—
   (a) Complete ignorance about the languages and modes of thought of each other.
   (b) Reluctance on the part of the majority to know the inner truth through the path of research and investigation.
   (c) General acceptance of established traditions, as against rational approach, because of the general belief that understanding acquired through careful enquiry amounted to kufr.
   (d) Lack of a meeting ground for the learned and the wise of the different religions, where they could exchange their views in an atmosphere of sympathy and understanding and judge the controversial views on their merit.
   (e) Failure of even the first king to take initiative and create the necessary conditions for a free exchange of views, enabling the learned to speak out the truth in clear terms.
   (f) People lacked wisdom and good nature to abstain themselves from the level of vulgarity and barbarism. They interfered with the religion of others, killed them and dishonoured them. They failed to realise that religious persecution was irrational and futile. Even if the opponents were on the wrong path, it was because of ignorance for which they deserved consideration and sympathy rather than hatred and bloodshed.8

The views summarised in the above lines clearly bring out that Abul Fazl believed in complete religious toleration and regarded the Hindus as the worshippers of one God. In the second place, he refuses to accept the accepted views and traditional beliefs as valid truth unless and until they satisfied the demand of reason. The inner truth can be attained only through the path of enquiry based on reason. Persecution for religious differences was futile and irrational, because even those who were guilty of shirk committed the sin on account of ignorance and therefore deserved kindness. He advocated political action on the part of the monarch to create necessary conditions for free exchange of views among the wise and
the learned of different religions, and thereby dispel misunderstandings which led to hatred and antagonism.

The intellectual and liberal outlook of Abul Fazl on religion considerably influenced his historical works.

**VIEWS ON HISTORY**

Abul Fazl has expressed his views on history and historiography at some length in the second volume of the *Akbar-nama,*9 It appears from his account that for a long time his intellectual preoccupations were religion and philosophy. History offered him no attraction, and he looked upon it with scant respect. It was, for him, in no way better than any mythological account. To study history was futile and a waste of time. Its study did not lead to the realization of truth. Moreover, histories written in the past suffered from many defects. They were written by selfish and self-seeking persons who, in order to achieve their personal gains, had recorded incorrect statements and mixed up falsehood with truth. Those of the writers who were upright and honest, were well-meaning simpletons; they were also ill-informed. Consequently their accounts were foolish and ridiculous. Again, with the passsage of time the original sources had disappeared. It was a great obstacle in the way of writing history, especially when historians lacked the spirit of critical enquiry. Moreover, some of the historians had added something of their own. Therefore, what was false and unauthentic passed as history. Histories containing false accounts had misled a large number of readers. Lacking a critical approach they had developed an attitude towards the past which was misleading and did much harm to the people.

This criticism of historical works in general terms obviously refers to the history of Islam and the Muslim rulers of India. The criticism would imply that Abul Fazl completely disagreed with his predecessors who wrote an account of the Muslim conquest of India and dealt with the activities of Muslim rulers. They saw Indian history as a conflict between Hindus and the followers of Islam. It was by this interpretation of Indian history that the preceeding historians had misled the people and caused great harm to Indian society. Abul Fazl's criticism also seems to have been directed against those facts of Islamic history and institutions which appear to have been irrational in his eyes.

It appears that at a certain stage Abul Fazl began to question
his own views about history. He pondered over the whole question thoroughly and accordingly revised his attitude towards it. Gradually the conviction came to him that past experiences and achievements of man, recorded in history books, were a positive source of enlightenment and wisdom. He points out that histories recorded the knowledge and wisdom of the sages and philosophers and thereby transmitted them to posterity. Therefore, in spite of the obvious limitations of history it was worth cultivating.

Moreover, according to Abul Fazl, the study of history is a source of nourishment and strength to reason. He sees a definite relationship between maqul and mangul. He postulates that Irfan, i.e., the realization of truth, was the ultimate end of man's life. It is possible only with the light of reason, but reason itself obtains light through senses, especially through eye and ear, i.e., seeing and hearing. It is obvious that through seeing and hearing the accounts of those who lived in the past, reason is enriched.

Finally, the study of history helps the individual to overcome his feelings of grief and sorrow. Abul Fazl compares history with a dispensary where one can get medicine for sorrow and remedy for melancholy. It consoles the unfortunate and the grieved where in a world mutual relationships commonly lead to grief and pain.

An examination of the foregoing summary of Abul Fazl's views on history, written in the past, reveals that he attached great importance to a rational approach to history. He also had a clear idea that the facts and statements, incorporated in a historical work, should be based on original sources, and that facts should be recorded only after careful enquiry and investigation. In case a historian lacked a rational approach and critical faculty to sift fact from fiction, his work would be worthless and in no way better than a collection of stories dealing with imaginary creations. Writings that mixed up facts with fiction can hardly be regarded as history.

In the second place, it is important to note that he does not regard history as an allied branch of the Tafsir or Fiqh. In fact, he is inclined to establish a close relationship between history and philosophy. For him they are not only allied subjects, they also complement and supplement each other. This idea about the nature of history constitutes a distinct departure from that which was cherished by Barani and Badauni. Moreover, Abul Fazl makes no reference to the generally accepted view of Muslim historians that history served to enlighten and warn the 'believers' only. Obviously, the note in his concept of history is secular rather than religious.
History, according to Abul Fazl, records the festivities and convivial parties as well as battles and campaigns. It embraces both what is serious and non-serious (but Abul Fazl did not deal with non-serious things); it deals with acts of kindness and cruelty, of generosity and meanness, of valour and cowardice; it describes the condition of the people and the policies of governments, and it includes the wisdom of the sages and the learning of the scholar. History also, according to Abul Fazl, embodies all the changes that take place in the world.

The Akbar-nama and the Ain-i-Akbari together constitute a single book. The first part of the Akbar-nama contains an account of Akbar’s ancestors, including that of his father Humayun. The second part gives the most complete account of Akbar’s reign up to the 46th year, in a chronological order. The work was undertaken in 1595, and after five revisions was completed in 1602. The Ain-i-Akbari is the third part of the book. ‘It is a unique compilation of the system of administration and control throughout the various departments of government in a great empire faithfully and minutely recorded in their smallest detail, with such an array of facts illustrative of its extent, resources, condition, population, industry, and wealth as the abundant material supplied from official sources could furnish.’\(^{10}\) It also contains an account of the religious and philosophical systems of the Hindus, as described in their ancient books, and of their social customs and practices. Thus, Abul Fazl widened the range and scope of history as no medieval historian before him had done.

Abul Fazl is the first medieval historian who realized and recognized the importance of original sources and gave his utmost attention and care to their study. He did not depend on a single source or account in order to ascertain a fact, but obtained as many versions as could be collected. They were put to a critical examination before they were accepted. He states that he has formulated a set of questions which were put to the reporter of an event or fact. This procedure, he points out, is of great help to the historian in ascertaining the truth.\(^{11}\)

His source material consisted of accounts of events written by those who were eye-witness to them. Reports, memoranda, minutes prepared by the officers, imperial farmans, and other records were carefully consulted. He heavily drew upon the daily proceedings of the court recorded by the Waqai Navis since the nineteenth year of Akbar’s reign.\(^{12}\)
He obtained information, written accounts and reports about military campaigns, administrative measures and other events from different sources. He inquired from the principal officers, grandees, well-informed dignitaries and old members of the royal family. Not satisfied with the oral accounts, which were conflicting, he requested them to put their accounts in writing. He thus obtained written accounts from twenty persons who were well-known for their sobriety, moderation and integrity. He examined these accounts with care and put them to the test of reason. The conflicting accounts, furnished by distinguished persons, were reported to the Emperor, who verified a particular account or made suggestions for necessary corrections. Similarly, the accounts which contradicted the personal knowledge and experience of the author were also referred to the Emperor. Through this process of historical investigation, the truth was ascertained and recorded.

The measure of Abul Fazl’s success and failure as a historian was largely determined by the conditions under which he worked. His limitations and achievements both may be traced to the position he held in society, to his academic training and accomplishments, to his experience as a youth and to his religious and political views. He took an active interest in the political and religious issues of the period, and his outlook on these issues gave a definite shape to the treatment of subject matter in his great work.

In the first place, as noted earlier, he was the most favourite courtier and a friend and supporter of Akbar against the forces which challenged the new concept of the Mughal Empire. He was Akbar’s trusted secretary and confidant. At the same time, as his writings emphatically suggest, he genuinely entertained a feeling of adulation and reverence for the character and personality of Akbar. Such an attitude might have been partly inspired by considerations of personal advancement, but it is important to note that his own views on politics and religion were similar to those of Akbar. His firm belief in religious toleration owed its origin to his formative years, when he and his family experienced the worst type of persecution at the hands of the orthodox ulama. This belief proved to be the basis of a lasting friendship with Akbar. Moreover, few will question that Akbar possessed the highest and the noblest qualities of head and heart. No wonder that Abul Fazl found in Akbar simultaneously the qualities of a king, philosopher and hero. Whatever the reasons for Abul Fazl’s adulation of Akbar, the fact remains that he completely identified himself with the policies and principles of government
initiated by Akbar. He also subscribed to the religious views held by Akbar. A careful study of the contemporary sources suggests that Abul Fazl might not have been the real man behind the formulation of Akbar’s religious and administrative policies; nevertheless, it was he who morally and intellectually sustained the emperor to remain firm and adhere to his policies which were quite unorthodox. His official position, as well as his personal views on religion and politics, required that he should defend, justify and extol Akbar and his activities. To record the activities and achievements of the ideal monarch was an act of worship for him. Hence the account, although correct in matters of detail, was written in a partisan spirit, and aimed at extolling Akbar’s achievements and glossing over his shortcomings and failures. To this task, he employed his extraordinary powers of intelligence, argument, learning and command over language. The vastness of the subject matter, the great issues which agitated the people of the age, and the extraordinary personality of Akbar, provided him with a theme and a subject well suited to write an epic. Abul Fazl, with his extraordinary command over language, attempted to combine history and epic into a single piece of literary creation. Few will doubt that he has not succeeded in his attempt. This is his measure of success as well as failure as a historian.

The result of this literary attempt is a most detailed and complete account of Akbar’s reign available to us. The most remarkable achievement of Abul Fazl as a historian is to produce a book of history which reads like an epic. It possesses something of an architectonic greatness, and the personality of Akbar sits over this edifice like a coping-stone. In the pages of the Akbar-nama and the Ain-i-Akbari, the greatness of Akbar has been given a concrete form. It reflects the extraordinary moral courage, the spiritual yearnings, the great vision and profound sagacity of Akbar. The reader is overwhelmed with the physical strength and prowess of Akbar, as also with his kindness and stern sense of justice, and with the awe and majesty of his ‘good fortune’ (iqbal).

Akbar’s new concept of the Empire, his unfailing interest in the improvement of the condition of the people through suitable and vigorous administrative measures, and his lofty concept and practice of complete religious toleration have been recorded in a language and a spirit which have immortalised Akbar. He has become a legend for the Indian people as one of the most benevolent and successful monarchs dedicated to the welfare of his subjects. This
is no meagre achievement. Few historians can claim the same good fortune. Abul Fazl has evidently succeeded in the task he set before himself, as stated in the preface of his great book on Akbar.

This, to me, appears to be the most significant achievement of Abul Fazl as Akbar's historian. Equally important is Abul Fazl's treatment of contemporary history. He made a departure from the established and accepted historical traditions in many respects. He did not believe that Indian history should concern itself only with the achievements of the Muslim rulers in India; nor did he try to establish any relation with the past of Islam. He refused to agree with the view held by his predecessors that Indian history essentially constituted a record of the struggles between the forces of Islam and Hinduism. For Abul Fazl the conflict was between the Mughal Empire and the Indian Princes, Hindu and Muslim alike. In essence, it was a conflict between the forces of stability, consolidation and good government, under an ideal monarch who was qualified to lead the people in temporal as well as spiritual affairs, and the forces of disintegration, and bad Governments led by the 'Zamindars'. For Akbar and Abul Fazl the Mughal Empire was an Indian Empire in the real sense, because it was no more an exclusive concern of a racial group or a combination of racial groups or only those of the Faithful. The religious, political and economic claims of the Hindu and Rajput landed aristocrats were fully recognized. These changed conditions left no justification for the Indian princes not to join the imperial confederation which would bring unity, stability and economic prosperity to the country. Abul Fazl's treatment and presentation of the important military expeditions against the Rajputs clearly brings out the point made in the above lines.

The new view of Indian history is best expressed by the change in the terminology for the imperial warriors. Abul Fazl describes them as mujahidin-i iqbal and ghaziyan-i-daulat; they are no longer the mujahidin-i-Islam, and ghaziyan-i-Islam i.e., victorious soldiers exerting in the way of Islam. The treatment of contemporary history in these terms struck a new note in medieval historiography; it was a definite contribution to the idea of history. It is, no doubt, true that Abul Fazl's new concept of history failed to win many converts for some time. Nevertheless, his new outlook on Indian history proved to be of abiding value. It went a long way to popularise the secular nature of the Mughal government, and also considerably affected the outlook and attitude of the imperial officers and the Hindu landed aristocracy. In the long run Abul
Fazl's secular interpretation of Indian history gained ground, and the historians of the later Mughals, whether Hindu or Muslim, looked on the political developments in the country in terms of the Mughal Empire and those who were opposed to it.

No less significant was Abul Fazl's deep interest in the ancient philosophical and religious systems of the Hindus and in their social customs and practices. He studied these aspects of the Hindu society with care and sympathy. These studies are the best examples of the historical objectivity and detachment in his writings. After al-Biruni his was the first systematic attempt to understand the Hindu religion and society in a proper historical perspective. Moreover, his attempt to understand the contemporary Hindu society with reference to its past history of ideas was an approach which was original and resembles the modern sociological studies.

These achievements entitle Abul Fazl to an eminent position among the foremost historians of medieval India. However, in any realistic evaluation and assessment of Abul Fazl as a historian, it is but fair that some of his limitations may be noted. It is true that about details of individual events, which he seems to have investigated and ascertained with great care, he is reliable. But in his treatment of the subject matter he is subjective, rather than objective. His phrases and adjectives, and his construction of sentences, imply his own assessment and evaluation of a particular event or situation. The narrative contains his judgment about an individual, or an event or a situation. He invariably, explains the motives which inspired Akbar in undertaking military action against a Rajput prince or a Muslim king, and these motives are described as just and laudable. Obviously such a treatment does not fulfil the conditions of historical objectivity.

Similarly, while Abul Fazl regards reason as his sole guide and precept, and ridicules those who follow the path of tradition as against reason, he does not apply the same standard to Akbar. When dealing with the extraordinary spiritual qualities of Akbar, or referring to his qualities of prescience, which amount to prophecy and reach almost to supernatural powers, or recording the achievements of Akbar's 'good fortune,' Abul Fazl ceases to listen to the voice of reason. It is really painful to keep company with Abul Fazl in these weak moments. The apostle of reason appears to have fallen a victim to credulity and superstition.

Secondly, there is some evidence to show that at times he glosses over certain events and facts which might cast some discredit
upon the wisdom or ability of Akbar. For example, the Akbar-nama does not say that the project of converting jagir lands into the khalisa and entrusting the administration of the karoris proved to be a fiasco; that it resulted in the ruin of large areas of cultivated land and of peasants, and eventually led to the harassment and punishment of the karoris. Abul Fazl's silence is ominous; he fails to write even a few sentences about the exertion of the karoris. Nor does he note that the grant of jagir lands was resumed by the 24th regnal year as the experiment had failed. These facts, however, have been recorded by Badauni and are corroborated in essentials by Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad. The internal evidence contained in the report of Todar Mal and Shah Fathullah Shirazi, incorporated in toto in the Akbar-nama, indirectly corroborates and confirms the accounts of Badauni and Nizam-ud-Din.

Similarly the reforms, spread over a long period, introduced in the department of the Sadr, do not find a place in the Akbar-nama, except a summary of the imperial order issued to separate the madad-i-maash lands from the khalisa and jagir lands. It is difficult to see why Abul Fazl chose to incorporate a brief account of the reforms in the Ain-i-Akbari. Even this account briefly refers to the corrupt practices that obtained in the department of the Sadr in general terms, and passes over the important issues which were responsible for the drastic reforms, aiming at the curtailment of the powers of the Sadr. Abul Fazl has also deliberately omitted the repercussions of the measures on the social and economic conditions of a section of the Muslim community and the deep resentment caused among its members. Badauni, as a spokesman of the class, gives comprehensive and convincing account of the adverse effects of the measure on the economic conditions of the madad-i-maash holders and their sharp reaction to these measures.

Again, the accounts of the religious discussions held in the Ibadat Khana, the origin of Akbar's disgust and breach with the ulama and the proclamation of Akbar as muftahid or Imam-i-Adil can hardly be regarded as complete and truthful. Abul Fazl himself was a party to these religious debates and the main instrument to disarm and discredit the ulama in the battle of arguments, and thereby to bring about their fall from the position of power and influence. Naturally, his account of the fierce religious controversies cannot be accepted as impartial and objective. Moreover, the relevant passages are full of contempt and ridicule for the ulama, though they are couched in a sophisticated and dignified language. Nevertheless,
the deep-rooted dislike of the ulama and of the values and principles for which they stood, has been underlined with vigour and eloquence. True that Abul Fazl scrupulously avoids attacking persons and individuals; but his old grievance against the class of ulama seeks full vengeance through his powerful pen. It may be conceded that the ulama stood for principles which had lost their vitality and validity in the new political contest; even some of their beliefs might have appeared to smack of a complete negation of reason and enlightenment. But even so they were, to argue in Abul Fazl's language, victims of ignorance and as such deserved consideration and kindness rather than persecution and eternal ridicule in the pages of history. In such passages Abul Fazl flagrantly violates those very principles of toleration and liberalism which elsewhere and in different context he so assiduously postulates and propagates. The fact is that it was as much a struggle for power as an ideological conflict between the ulama, who occupied a position of power and influence, and the erstwhile mendicants who had been leading a retired life of asceticism and poverty. When the latter came to power they were as relentless with their sword and pen against the ulama as the latter had been to the former. They saw to it that the power of the ulama was completely broken and their names in history should go down as ignorant, selfish, mean and self-seeking individuals.

Many examples may be quoted where Abul Fazl has failed to do justice to his duty as a historian. The account of Sher Shah, for example, is a case in point. His achievements are belittled, and his success is attributed to treachery, fraud and deception. No modern historian will agree with such an assessment of Sher Shah. Some of his reforms are mentioned, but Abul Fazl hastens, in order to belittle them, that they were in imitation of those of Ala-ud-Din Khalji or of the rulers of Bengal.

Abul Fazl's preoccupation with Akbar and his activities has resulted in the omission of many facts which would have presented the other side of the medal and imparted a proper perspective to his account. We know almost nothing about the Afghan or Rajput side of the story, the position taken by these people and the nature of the triangular conflict in which Akbar did succeed but not without strenuous efforts of diplomacy, combined with necessary military actions. The result is that the political account, as presented in the Akbar-nama, fails to infuse life and colour to the grim struggle for the Empire of Hindustan. His narrative seems to be an attempt to convince us that Akbar's good fortune (iqbal) and superb military
strength rode roughshod over the opposing forces, which were almost passive and served as a background to the triumphant military operations of the Mughal armies. Such an impression, which the account in the Akbar-nama invariably creates, fails to catch the realities of the political situation with which Akbar had to contend, for it was his foresight, diplomatic skill and the capacity to organise successful military operations that brought success to him and not only his good fortune, as Abul Fazl would like us to believe.

It is also important to note that Abul Fazl fails to give a faithful account of the political and social forces, which stood for regionalism, local patriotism and independence and racial conflicts which challenged the claims of Akbar as the rightful emperor of Hindustan. Consequently the depth, the magnitude and the intensity of the various types of conflicts of the period are not reflected in his writings.

Moreover, his preoccupation with the activities of the emperors, nobles, scholars and saints made his outlook on life rather narrow. He hardly took note of events and facts which appeared insignificant and trivial to the intellectual in Abul Fazl. These facts, if recorded, would have given a rare insight into the life of the common man and would have helped him in capturing the spirit of the age. His intellectual bias and his training as a scholar made him indifferent and contemptuous to what was non-serious, humble and ordinary in life. Consequently, he was generally interested only in those facts which were serious and consequential from the viewpoint of a king, a noble, and an accomplished scholar given to philosophical speculation and reflection. And these facts when selected were presented in an equally sober, pompous and terse language, and in a medium well-suited for a philosopher who chooses to record the higher and deeper truths of life. The net result is that the life of the age in its broader sense, embracing the serious and the non-serious, the high and the low, the grim and the humorous, the simple and the colourful, does not pulsate in the pages of the Akbar-nama and the Ain-i-Akbari. It is true that the Ain-i-Akbari abounds in economic details, but these details read like a railway time-table or a departmental report, shorn of everything which can tell us something about the real conditions of the people and give an insight into the content, purpose and meaning of their life. Abul Fazl never speaks of the wages and prices, and the revenue demands in the human context of individuals and groups. The Ain-i-Akbari merely furnishes us with certain statistical details which can hardly
be correlated with the living conditions of the people. Similarly, he
dees it below the level of an intellectual to record the habits,
customs, beliefs, social practices, and superstitions of common men
and women. This limitation which arose from his personality,
temperament and intellectual bias has left his story of the age one-
sided and incomplete. The Akbar-nama is more a story of Akbar
than a story of the society and the age in which Akbar and Abul
Fazl lived. And it is in this sense that Abul Fazl has failed to
capture the spirit of the age and to record in his book the story of
a society as an integrated whole.

REFERENCES

2. Abul Fazl, Akbar-nama, (Bib. Ind.), Vol. II, pp. 387–382; Ain-i-Akbari,
5. Nuqtavis : They considered the world to be eternal ; they denied Resur-
rection and the Last Day, and retribution for the good and evil, and made
paradise and hell to stand for prosperity and adversity in this world.
7. Ibid., pp. 523–524.
10 Ain-i-Akbari, Jarrett, Introduction.
PERSIAN HISTORIOGRAPHY IN INDIA DURING
THE 18TH CENTURY

Zahiruddin Malik

Historical studies formed an essential part of the general academic discipline in India during the 18th century. Though not formally prescribed in the system of higher education, history held sway over humanistic studies as it provided great intellectual stimulus. The output of historians in this period was consequently considerable. Besides formal political histories, many administrative manuals, and works on trade and commerce were compiled. Interest in documents led to the compilation of many epistolary and other collections of historical significance. Even the medium of poetry was not ignored by the historians and versified histories were produced in large number. Apart from this literature, the biographical accounts of amirs and saints form a monumental and scholarly product of the period. Above all, the 18th century is of particular interest on account of the enormous religious literature which include the celebrated works on the Quran, Hadis, Jurisprudence and mysticism. For an understanding of the various aspects of social life and the different facets of culture, the tazkiras and the divans of the poets yield valuable information. Thus the diversity and range of the writings of this period is very impressive. Perhaps in no other period of Indian history so much literature on the religious, political and social aspects was produced as in the 18th century.

The main theme of historians during the period under review was politics, and subjects of secular character were given great importance. They devoted a fair amount of space in their works to military operations, achievements at the battlefield and colourful activities of the Imperial court. Descriptions of administrative functions, acts of generosity and patronage of art and literature also absorbed their attention.

Khafi Khan wrote a political history, pure and simple, and he hovered around the Imperial court and camp to gather information. His work is a brilliant reconstruction of events, thorough, lucid and chronologically well-organised. His knowledge of facts is great, and the range of materials enormous. He has a conception of the
continuity of Mughal history. Besides his erudition, the beauty of form and expression is remarkable. He has the skill to correlate events in a wider context, drawing parallels and illustrations from the past. Perhaps he is the only writer who gives a connected and precise account of the reforms attempted at different times to reorganise the mansabdari system which was cracking under the weight of its own vast structure⁸. His passages on central administration, Maratha affairs, and conditions of jagirdars are unique; they not only contain new information, but show a deep insight of the author in these matters.

Analysing the process of decline that set in the Mughal administration during the reign of Bahadur Shah, Khafi Khan states: "Since the establishment of the Timurid rule in India, one title was not given to two persons, although a change of one or two letters was allowed. Safdar Khan Babi, posted at Aurangabad, possessed a hereditary title from the time of Aurangzeb. But Bahadur Shah gave this title to one of his old servants. Safdar Khan represented for the restoration of his title which he had lost without giving any cause of disobedience. The Emperor wrote on his application, granted, granted, granted, though the same title had already been conferred on another person. Since that day the evil practice of giving the same title to two or three persons developed. In like manner, the grants of mansab, elephant, jaifah and serpanch were no longer made in conformity with the rank and dignity of the recipient.⁹

The treasury officers observed with distress the rapid deterioration in revenue administration and felt the need of reforms aimed at making the mansabdari system standardized and efficient. The reformed system, they hoped, could cope with a situation in which expenditure outran revenue, and reckless grants of jagirs were made by the Emperor when lands available for the purpose were limited. Ikhlas Khan, the Araz-mukarrar, reputed for his honesty and hard work drew the attention of Munim Khan, the Wazir, to the financial crisis caused by these problems⁵⁰. He suggested that the Wazir should personally scrutinize every application before sanctioning an appointment or promotion.

A reform of this character was bound to meet resistance from the vested interests at the court. Munim Khan, through fear of his own popularity among the job-seekers, declined to discharge the unpleasant duty and asked Ikhlas Khan to undertake the work of reform himself. Without the assistance and co-operation of his
superior, Ikhlas Khan found the task beyond his capacity. He refused to ride roughshod over the feelings of persons desirous to obtain ranks in the government.

In the end, the work of conducting an enquiry into the origin, rank and dignity of a mansabdar, was assigned to Mustaid Khan, the author of the Maasir-i-Alamgiri. He was to check and certify all applications of mansabdars before the Araz-nukarrar and the Wazir forwarded for final sanction of the Emperor. But his labours bore no fruits. The programme of reform was defeated not only by the resistance of fortune-seekers but also by the disinterestedness of Bahadur Shah. The Emperor would sign the applications of candidates presented by his two queens, Mihr Parwar and Ummat-ul Habib, without first referring to Mustaid Khan. “In consequence the signature of the Emperor lost its value. His Majesty would say to his officers that he had no alternative but to issue orders for the grant of jagirs to all applicants. His officers, however, were free to act as they thought best and as the occasion dictated.”

Khafi Khan’s knowledge of revenue administration at the local level seems to be authentic, as it stems from his practical experience in matters of revenue collection. He served the government for a considerable period as Amil, although he has nothing but outspoken contempt for the post. He calls the Amil wicked, corrupt and cruel. The revenue collector misappropriates the money of the government and plunders the helpless cultivators. The author himself confesses that he oppressed the peasantry and destroyed the property of Muslims. The work of leading pigs to pastures and herding dogs is, he thinks, better than that of revenue collection.

Besides condemning the high-handedness of revenue collectors, Khafi Khan draws indictment on other officers who do not give serious thought to the worsening of the political situation, improving the lot of the peasants, planting new habitations and increasing the land revenue. He brings forth in plain words the abuses of ijara dari or revenue-farming by which the ra‘iyat is ground down to the dust of misery and the countryside desolated. He pungently criticises the wealthy who provide no help to the needy and live a self-centred and luxurious life.

Another work on administrative details and description of commerce and trade is the Mirat-ul-Haqiq. Its author, Aitmad Ali Khan bin Aitmad Khan Alamgiri, was an inhabitant of Ahmadabad, where he passed the major part of his life. This voluminous work has been written on the pattern of the Mirat-i-Ahmadi. It is a diary of
day-to-day events and news concerning Gujarat and Delhi, the capital of the Empire. It is a mine of information for details regarding prices that prevailed in different parts of the country, and the taxes imposed by the government in the reigns of the Later Mughals. Unlike the Mirat-i-Ahmadi, this work deals with the economic conditions not only in Gujarat, but also in Delhi, Agra and Allahabad. The author explains in various chapters the causes of the break-up of the mansabdari system. The conditions of the mansabdars who lost control over their lands or possessed no jagirs have been clearly analysed.

The historians of the period believed that the march of time could be explained by glorifying the accomplishments of the chosen few and by painting their portraits with a brush of hyperbole. For them the key to history lay in the rise and fall of individuals who played definite roles in determining the course of political affairs: The king or amir was the centre and main-spring of all events; the different social strata were thrown into the shade. Although keenly aware of the material basis of Mughal civilization, these scholars failed to analyse the economic and social factors involved in the process of its decline.

While explaining the phenomenon of the decadence of Mughal power, these historians generally lay stress on the social and moral degeneration of the privileged few who grew indolent, self-satisfied and indifferent to their duties. For instance, Ahsan Ijad\textsuperscript{16}, the author of the Shah nama-i-Deccan, criticises the character of the nobility and attempts to interrelate its decline with the break-up of political power. His account of wars and administration given in the Shahnama i-Deccan is sketchy, but candid and accurate. He burns with indignation at the corrupt and luxurious life of Aurangzeb's successors, factional rivalries among the nobles, and their cowardly behaviour in dealing with the enemies of the Mughal government. He paints a lurid picture of the misery and poverty of soldiers, small mansabdars, low-paid employees and other respectable and educated persons whose means of subsistence depended on government patronage.

With the capture of two strategic and fertile provinces, Gujarat and Malwa, by the Marathas, a large section of subordinate officers and servants, engaged in the work of revenue collection, were faced with unemployment. In discussing political issues Ahsan Ijad upholds a vigorous and forward policy towards the Marathas and other disruptive forces in the Empire. Like other writers, he
censures the role of Raja Jai Singh who aligned himself with the Marathas, and who, in spite of the considerable resources placed at his disposal, was unable to protect the Imperial dominions from the Maratha inroads.

But his analysis of the complex causes—political, social and economic—that led to the disintegration of the Mughal Empire lacks depth and insight. He gives very simply the causes of what happened, but his investigation does not reveal the meaning or rationality behind the historical processes. He ignores the discussion of the conditions of the peasants and does not explain the evils which had crept into the Mughal military organization.

The age being one of political decline and economic distress, there runs a thread of gloom through the entire contemporary historical writings. The historians of this period rarely indulged in their rhetoric or florid style. Lucidity and simplicity alone could serve the objective they had in mind. Their concept of history was based on those moral precepts which had influenced the outlook and culture of the people. The historians liked to draw parallels from the past to compare similar situations facing the kings and nobles. Moral lessons derived from the past events were recommended to sovereigns and statesman. They sought to explain the course of history in terms of the struggle between the forces of good and evil. It was a philosophy teaching by examples, in the sense that those who followed cardinal principles of justice and public welfare attained power and progress; and those who went astray from this straight path faced rack and ruin.

Most of the historians recorded mainly contemporary events and incidents. They either attended the Imperial court or served the ministers in the capital. Some of them were in the service of officials and governors in distant provinces. In this way they had excellent means to obtain adequate and authentic information about different events. The information about incidents in which they did not directly participate, they gathered from those who had first hand knowledge of the incidents. Iradat Khan, author of the Tarikh-i-Iradat Khan, served as Fayjdar, first of Jagna and then of Aurangabad and Mandu in the time of Aurangzeb. Later he was appointed governor of Doab in the reign of Shah Alam Bahadur Shah. He says in his preface: 'As, on account of my office, and being engaged in these transactions, I have obtained a perfect knowledge of the sources of most events, and what to others even information must be difficult, it was planned and executed in my sight; and as I was a
sharer as well as spectator of all the dangers and troubles, I have, therefore, recorded them."17 In handling the historical material at their disposal, they were guided by their study of the earlier historians whose works abounded in their libraries. Animated by a passionate regard for truth, Khafi Khan emphasised the need of submitting the evidence to a thorough enquiry. He holds that a historian should be faithful and sincere in the presentation of facts. "He (the historian) should show no partiality to one side or animosity to the other."18 Shafi Warid, author of the Mirat-i-Waridat, asserts that he has recorded events and occurrences which either he himself watched or heard from others. He took utmost pains in investigating the statements of others; those found incorrect after a close and thorough enquiry were rejected by him.19

These historians generally had independent and individual methods of collecting data; and though the facts were the same, their interpretations varied. This variation was determined by their particular situations, social background and political interests. In faction feuds among the courtiers and amirs they aligned themselves with one or the other of the contestants. This identification with the interests of their patrons affected their approach. Consequently, the element of subjectivity influenced their attempts to explain the interplay of political forces.

These historians shared the widespread belief that the Mughal crown was a divine institution, pre-ordained to rule the country permanently; and as such it was a symbol of solidarity and strength of the ruling class, and the ultimate shield to defend the people from the depredations of adventurers and power mongers. But during the period under review the king was reduced to an almost helpless pawn in the game of group politics. The deposition and death of Farrukh Siyar demonstrated the final triumph of ministers and nobles over the Emperor. The later Mughals had received no thorough education in the art of government. They proved unequal to the task of dealing with the crisis that continuously threatened the Mughal government.

The contemporary writers, who saw the Empire passing into the turmoil of civil strife, and its vast structure ultimately breaking down before waves of insurgency and foreign invasions, did not hesitate to condemn the unwise policies of the Emperors and their inefficient conduct of administration. They denounced the kings for their impolitic and inexpedient acts in regard to military operations and administration; even matters relating to their private life were
subjected to severe criticism. Bahadur Shah was blamed for his extreme munificence in lavishing gifts and privileges of office and power on undeserving persons. Jahandar Shah was depicted as a drunken profligate while Farrukh Siyar was called a prisoner of indecision. Muhammad Shah was accused for his indolence and intemperance which made him incapable of holding the self-seeking nobles under control.

Nevertheless, any act of insubordination on the part of the nobles was unbearable to the historians. They gave full vent to their indignation at the local leaders who made a bid to secure shares, compatible with their might, in profits the Empire could offer. In the struggle for supremacy between the centre and the provinces the historians are divided into two groups; some display enthusiastic partiality towards the Imperial centre, while others lend their support to the local chieftains and provincial governors. Historians like Qasim Aurangabadi, Mansa Ram, author of the Masta-i-Nizami, Yusuf Muhammad Khan, author of the Tarikh-i-Fathiyah, and others who compiled their works in the Deccan, supported the Nizam-ul-Mulk in his conflict with the centre. But writers like Ashub, Rustam Ali, Shafi Warid, Mirza Muhammad held the Imperialist point of view. It appears, however, that their loyalty was to the Mughal crown and not to one who wore it.

The ruling class showed intellectual weariness and loss of creative vigour. The old spirit of service to the Mughal dynasty gave place to exploitation of the state for selfish ends. The big nobles monopolized all higher public employments, owned large lands as jagirs and undermined royal power. The small mansabdars led a life of humiliation and poverty. A class of newly-made nobles who could count on no claims of birth or merit rose to positions of power and prominence. The corrupt and clique-ridden nobility completely failed to respond to the challenges of the age. The political elite of the society sank into lethargy and remained throughout the period in a stagnant condition. Their intellect became morbid, their vision narrow, their morale undermined, and in its total individuality the entire class turned to be effete. The divisions among the nobility, its isolation from the rank and file of the people, and its indifference to the common good prepared the ground for the fall of the ruling class as a whole.

This degradation of the nobility has been presented by the contemporary writers with frankness and, sometimes, in strong language. Shafi Warid, discussing the Maratha affairs, records that
in the province of Agra five to seven thousand *mansabdars* possessing big forces lived; a large number of *zamindars* inhabiting the area had ample resources in men and material. But this whole class of *mansabdars* and *zamindars* could not prevent the Marathas from plundering the towns and villages of the Agra division. The author of *Hadisa-i-Nadir Shah* writes: 'The affairs of the government had been upset. The ministers of the Emperor, intoxicated with the pride of the extreme wealth, and the increasing status of men like Qamar ud-Din Khan and Khan-i-Dauran, had neglected the affairs of the government. They were indolent, commanded no respect, did not fear the Emperor, and except for indulging in corruption, they had no other work to do.'

In an atmosphere filled with faction feuds, historians felt constrained to take sides and advocate the cause of their group leaders and patrons. This partisan politics marred their perspective and closed the horizon of their ideas. The canvas of history was narrowed down to a simple discussion of group alignments in the ruling party unrelated with the broader aspects of the community life as a whole. History was reduced to a mere collection of facts to be read like political pamphlets; it was used as an effective instrument to buttress the interests of one group of nobles at the expense of another section of the governing class. They lacked critical sense to investigate the truth and recognise the importance of objectivity in the collection and use of their historical material.

To illustrate this observation three typical examples of varied interpretations on controversial issues have been chosen. They are as follows:

(i) Conflict between Farrukh Siyar and the Sayyid brothers,
(ii) Contest for power between the Mughals and the Sadaat of Barha,
(iii) The role of different nobles when Nadir Shah invaded India.

A critical study of these particular issues may help us to ascertain the prejudices which influenced the minds of contemporary historians.

(i) The prolonged conflict between Farrukh Siyar and the Sayyid brothers kept the Imperial court in a state of almost continuous alarm and unrest. Engaged in a severe contest for survival, the Emperor and his ministers neglected the state administration, and set themselves to organise plots against one another. With a combination of tact and firmness the Sayyid brothers were able to
establish their domination and take the supreme control of affairs into their own hands. While recording these momentous events the historians of the 18th century seem to be sharply divided in their attitude to the selection of facts and their interpretation. A set of writers bitterly criticised the Sayyid brothers for their misdeeds; others, on the contrary, lay the entire responsibility for all the evils of the government on the shoulders of Farrukh Siyar. The Sayyid brothers are referred to in disparaging terms for their acts of insubordination, inordinate ambition for power, and their indifference to the actual discharge of administrative duties.\textsuperscript{31} In like manner, Farrukh Siyar is accused of his feeble and fickle policies in dealing with the all-powerful ministers.\textsuperscript{32}

Khafi Khan explicitly states that Farrukh Siyar committed a serious mistake in conferring the highest civil and military posts on Sayyid Abdullah and Husain Ali who were untrained and inexperienced in administrative matters.\textsuperscript{33} On the other hand, Qasim Lahori, who calls himself a slave of the Sadaat, manifests enthusiastic partiality towards the Sayyids and holds the Emperor responsible for driving the Sayyids to desperation by his breach of faith and intrigues against them.\textsuperscript{34} Mirza Muhammad\textsuperscript{35} and Shafi Warid\textsuperscript{36} allege that nobles like Mir Jumla, a Mughal, and Khan-i-Dauran, an Indian born Muslim, having become jealous of the rise of the Sayyids to power, resolved to preserve their privileges by means of backstage intrigues. These nobles instigated the Emperor against the Wazir and the Mir Bakhshi, and thus fomented strife at the court.

Yahya Khan, the Mir Munshi of Farrukh Siyar, adds other factors which contributed to the widening of the rift between the king and his ministers. He writes that, apart from the dispute over appointments to the posts of wizarat, sadarat, and diwan, Farrukh Siyar expressly disapproved of the introduction of ijara\-dari, and abolition of the jizya.\textsuperscript{37} Muhammad Ashub surveys the whole situation from a sectarian point of view. He ascribes the cause of the conflict to an outstanding hostility between the Mughals and the Sadaat of Barha. According to him, the Sayyids monopolized all higher public employments, and the Mughals, the backbone of the Empire, faced unemployment and economic distress.\textsuperscript{38}

Rustam Ali Khan, author of the \textit{Tari\-kh-i-Hindi}, a highly summarised and condensed work, glorifies the spectacular feats of gallantry performed by Husain Ali Khan. His acts of generosity and liberal patronage to saints and men of letters are also praised.\textsuperscript{39}
But Ashub prefers to ignore these achievements and virtues of Husain Ali Khan. He takes pains to bring forth the vices of his character. Worthy of note is the fact that nearly all historians fail to reveal the underlying pattern of Husain Ali’s conciliatory policy towards the Marathas, Rajputs and Jats. They betray a spirit of prejudice against the Sayyids and misrepresent their methods of dealing with the zamindars and the regional leaders. True, their system of alliances with the local potentates was envisaged to isolate Farrukh Siyar, but this indirectly contributed to make the royal authority paramount in areas where disorders on a wide-scale prevailed.

The disgraceful deposition of Farrukh Siyar and his cruel treatment raised a storm of anger against the Sayyids. Not only the discontented nobles felt indignant at the wrongs done to the king, but the humble ranks of the society were also stirred to wrath. The victorious ministers dishonoured the Mughal throne, filled public posts with their relations and adherents and inflicted severities on the person of the fallen monarch. Even those historians who had, hitherto, justified the stand of the Sayyids suddenly change their attitude and use harsh language in condemning them for these wicked acts. This is particularly true of Mir Qasim Lahori and Muhammad Qasim Aurangabadi. In contradiction to their earlier observations in regard to the irresolute and weak-kneed policy of Farrukh Siyar these writers now censure the methods followed by the Sayyids.

(ii) Another significant issue on which the narrators of these events differ from one another, is the bitter struggle for supremacy between the Sayyids and the Mughals. For an understanding of the origin, scope and nature of the clash of interests between the two groups of the ruling party, it is necessary to explain the historian’s group alignments, his associations and source of inspiration which influenced his views. Most of the works were written either under the patronage of Muhammad Shah or the Nizam-ul-Mulk, the acknowledged leader of the Mughals. For instance Khafi Khan completed his work in the reign of Muhammad Shah and served for a long time under the Nizam-ul-Mulk. Muhammad Bakhsh Ashub was a Mughal, and he represents the Mughal view point in interpreting the scramble for power. Muhammad Qasim Aurangabadi, Ahsan Ijad, Yusuf Muhammad Khan, Munim Khan Aurangabadi, Mansa Ram and others compiled their chronicles when the Nizam-ul-Mulk was at the zenith of his power.
These writers, as employees of the government in the Deccan, were bound by strong ties of personal loyalty to the Nizam-ul-Mulk who patronised and encouraged them. The Sayyids have few historians to advocate their case. Rustum Ali Khan and Ghulam Husain Tabatabai might be included in this list of the Sayyids' supporters. Reflecting on these divergent opinions, Kha'fi Khan writes: ‘In the times of Farrukh Siyar men have shown a partiality or animosity to one side or the other exceeding all bounds. They have looked to their own profit and loss, and turned the reins of their imagination accordingly. The virtues of one side they have turned into faults, while they have shut their eyes to the faults of the others.’

Kha'fi Khan, in spite of his tall claims to honesty and frankness in recording events, could not conceal his sympathies for the Nizam-ul-Mulk. He tries to gloss over the faults of his patron and finds faults with his enemies. He holds that the Nizam-ul-Mulk was averse to the idea of calling the Sayyid brothers as namak-ba-haram and haram-namak. But the Nizam-ul-Mulk himself used these abusive terms for the two brothers in each and every arzdosht and letter he sent to the Emperor, and to his friends and subordinates.

(iii) The historians by no means agree whether Nadir Shah invaded India in 1738 on the invitations of Saadat Khan and the Nizam-ul-Mulk or it was Khan-i-Dauran who mishandled the situation and showed gross negligence in making preparations to stem the tide of Persian aggression. The anonymous writer of the Risala-i-Muhammad Shah wa Khan-i-Dauran and the author of the Jauhar-i-Samsam, openly accuse the two leading Mughal nobles of treasonable attempts to invite the foreign invader and upset the established order of the country. These allegations are contradicted by Ashub and Anand Ram Mukhlis who blame Khan-i-Dauran for his failure to support financially the governors of Kabul and Lahore in building up the defences of the North-West frontier. His policy of indifference towards Nasir Khan and Zakarya Khan produced an atmosphere of complacency and apathy, lulled the Emperor into a false sense of security, and aborted the efforts of government officials to meet the challenge of foreign invasion.

The Risala-i-Muhammad Shah wa Khan-i-Dauran, and the Jauhar-i-Samsam were written in a colourful and exaggerated style, and the avowed object of their authors seems to be to exalt the status of Khan-i-Dauran, their patron. They bitterly criticise the role of his opponents, the Nizam-ul-Mulk and Saadat Khan, at the battlefield of Karnal. Anand Ram Mukhlis, Divan of Qamr-ud-Din Khan, the
Wazir and nephew of the Nizam-ul-Mulk, and Ashub, a staunch champion of the Mughal cause, cast aspersions on the Mir Bakhshi and hold him responsible for the disastrous consequences of the foreign invasion. In view of mutual animosities among the nobles these statements of the historians should be submitted to a careful examination. There is no evidence, direct or circumstantial, to substantiate the charges of treason against Saadat Khan and the Nizam-ul-Mulk.

The historical literature of the eighteenth century is so extensive that it is not possible to analyse it fully in a single paper. However, this literature should not be evaluated by the modern standards of historiography. The historians recorded what happened without going beneath the surface of things. What a historian could not explain or wanted to conceal on grounds of expediency, he attributed it to chance or the Divine will by saying that only God knew the reality of the case. Reflecting on rumours that Sayyid Abdullah Khan was poisoned to death at the instigation of the Nizam-ul-Mulk, Khafi Khan tried to defend the position of his patron. Without going deep into the matter and investigating the truth, he concluded that God alone knew the reality. These writers were the products of their age and mirrored in their writings the attitudes and traditions of the governing class which exercised a determining influence on the political developments of the period.

REFERENCES

3. Musavi Khan Jurat Mumshat-i-Musavi Khan, Asafiyah Lib. MS. Hyderabad; Munshi Daya Ram, Balamkand-nama, Patna MS.; Saib Rai, Khajistah Kalam; Bhagwan Das, Aziz-ul-Qolub, Aligarh MS.
4. Nizam-ud-Din, Nadir-nama, Asafiyah MS.; Ahsan Ijaz, Shah-nama-i-Deccan, Asafiyah MS.; Mir Raza Zulfiqar, Sharf-nama-i-Muhammad Shah, B. M. MS.
6. For details of Shah Waliullah’s works, vide, Al-furqan, Bareilly, Islamic Culture, 1951; K.A. Nizami, Tarikh-i-Mashaikh-i-Chist, Delhi, 1953.
7. Writing in 1781, Muhammad Bakhsh Ashub says that during this period the art of history writing has fallen into disuse. But in view of the vast historical literature produced in the 18th century this statement seems to be incorrect. Tarikh-i-Shahadat-i-Farrukh Siyar wa Julus-i-Muhammad Shah B.M. MS. f. 13.
15. Ahsan Ijad is also the author of Farrukh Siyar-nama, which deals exclusively with the political history of Farrukh Siyar, B.M. MS. Gr. 25 (Rieu 1273a)
17. Irndat Khan, Tarikh-i-Iradat Khan, Aligarh MS. f. 2; Elliot and Dowson, Vol. VII, p. 535.
Khafi Khan was a government employee in the reign of Aurangzeb, when Farrukh Siyar came to the throne, he was appointed Diwan by Nizam-ul-Mulk. He gives his source of information in these words: “What he himself saw, what he heard from the tongues of men who from time to time were the associates of Farrukh Siyar, and from the Suyyids who were his companions at the banquet table and in battle, that he had honestly committed to writing, after endeavouring to arrive at the truth when statements varied.” Muntakhab-ul-Lubab, Vol. II, p. 727; Elliot and Dowson, Vol. VII, p. 44.
24. Tarikh-i-Shahadat-i-Farrukh Siyar wa Julus-i-Muhammad Shah, B. M. MS. f. 43a, Mirat-i-Waridat, p. 644–45.
25. For a detail discussion of this aspect vide, Studies in Islam, Delhi, January 1955, p. 33.
31. *Ahwal-ul-Khanawin*, f. 77a; *Tarikh-i-Shahadat-i-Farrukh Siyar wa Julus-i-
Muhammad Shah*, f. 42a.

32. Mirza Muhammad, *Ibrat-nama*, ff. 102-3; Mir Qasim Lahori, *Tarikh-i-


34. *Tarikh-i-Saltanat-i-Farrukh Siyar*, ff. 1b, 2a, 66b.


38. *Tarikh-i-Shahadat-i-Farrukh Siyar wa Julus-i-Muhammad Shah*, ff. 70a, 43.


42. *Tarikh-i-Saltanat-i-Farrukh Siyar*, ff. 76, 77, 80.


44. Munim Khan Aurangabadi, *Savanna-i-Deccan*, Central Record Office
Hyderabad MS.

45. Ghulam Husain Tabatabai, *Siyar-ul-Mutaakhkhirin*, (text), Calcu. II, 1836,
pp. 21, 22, 30, 37-39.


Khafi Khan was employed *faujdar* and *amin* in the *khalisa mahal* of Mus-
tafabad in the Deccan. This *mahal* had been destroyed by the officers of the
Subedar of Barhampur; the raiziyat had fled away and cultivation stop-
ped. Khafi Khan laboured zealously for the rehabilitation of the *mahal*
and spent money in recruiting soldiers for the collection of revenue. In
1718 Husain Ali Khan, governor of the Deccan, decided to march to Delhi
where his presence was urgently needed as new conflicts between Sayyid
Abdullah Khan, the *Wazir*, and Farrukh Siyar, brought matters to a head.
Husain Ali Khan demanded twenty thousand rupees from Khafi Khan in
order to meet the cost of his artillery. As the harvest time of *khorris* crop
had not reached, Khafi Khan failed to deposit the required money. The
governor collected money from other sources and dismissed the historian.
Perhaps this loss of post he had obtained after surmounting serious
difficulties rankled in the mind of Khafi Khan and made him biased


100, 103-105; Muhammad Muhssin, *Jauhar-i-Samsam*, B. M. MS. or 1898,
Elliott and Dowson, Vol. VIII, p. 75.

50. Anand Ram Mukhli, *Tazkira*, Aligarh MS. ff. 119-20; *Tarikh-i-Shahadat-
Farrukh Siyar wa Julus-i-Muhammad Shah*, ff. 162, ff. 162-64.
A COMPARATIVE STUDY OF THE HISTORICAL APPROACH OF MUHAMMAD QASIM AND KHAFI KHAN

MUHAMMAD UMAR

Muhammad Qasim and Khafi Khan are the two historians of the sixteenth century, a period characterised by feverished political activity, court intrigues and conspiracies, factional politics and changing loyalties of nobles and groups and, above all, the rapid political and economic decline of the Mughal empire.

Muhammad Qasim and Khafi Khan study this historical scene from two different angles, and a comparative study of their outlooks, attitudes, and prejudices, methods of collecting and representing the data can help us in forming an estimate of the historical writings of the eighteenth century.

Little is known about Muhammad Qasim in the contemporary literature. He was, perhaps, not well known as a scholar or a historian. He himself informs us that he was for sometime with the sons of Shah Alam (Bahadur Shah) in Bihar, where he was assigned the duties of attending on Ali Tabar and Bedar, the nephews of the Emperor. He served them well and won their favour. In consequence, they promised him high office in case any of them became Emperor of Hindustan.

Muhammad Qasim availed several opportunities to meet the Amir-ul-Umara, Hussain Ali Khan, at Aurangabad, where he had gone to participate in the marriage ceremony of his own son. However, he was much disgusted owing to the former’s arrogance.

Subsequently, he became Bakhshi in the army of the Nizam-ul-Mulk and served him while he was engaged against the Marathas. He enjoyed the favours and confidence of the Nizam-ul-Mulk and participated in his literary assemblies. The information supplied by him in the *Ahwal-ul-Khawaqin* is, thus, based on personal observation. He also cultivated an *intimate friendship* with Mulawassil Khan (d. 1158/1743-44), the Nizam-ul-Mulk’s son-in-law, and the *Faujdar* of Baglan.

The *Ahwal-ul-Khawaqin* is a history of Aurangzeb’s successors upto 1151/1738-39 which is also the date of its completion. It is
divided into two parts. The first part, which deals from the reign of
Aurangzeb to Farrukh Siyar's deposition, was completed on 2nd
Ramazan, 1147/1734-35. The second, which begins with the acces-
sion of Rafi-ud-Darjat, has been mainly devoted to the Nizam-ul-
Mulk's conflicts with the Sayyid Brothers and his wars with the
Marathas and ends in the year 1151/1738-39 before Nadir Shah's
invasion.

Muhammad Hashim Khafi Khan, author of the Muntakhab ul-
Lubab, belonged to a respectable family of Delhi. His father,
Khwaja Mir, also a historian, was an officer of high rank in the
service of Prince Murad Bakhsh and later on under Aurangzeb.
Khafi Khan grew up in Aurangzeb's service, and was employed by
him for political and military affairs. In the reign of Farrukh Siyar,
he was made Diwan by the Nizam-ul-Mulk.

The Muntakhab-ul-Lubab is a highly esteemed history, commen-
sing with the invasion of Babur and ending with the fourteenth year
of Muhammad Shah's reign. Since Aurangzeb had prohibited the
recording of the events of his time, Khafi Khan completed a minute
register of all the happenings of the period and published it after the
Emperor's death. His work is very valuable as it contains an account
of the entire reign of Aurangzeb.

Khafi Khan was Shia, and therefore, showed partiality to-
wards the Shia nobles in his work. He was prejudiced against the
Turani nobles, excluding the Nizam-ul-Mulk, whom he was serving
and for whom he is full of praise. Owing to this partiality he is
sometimes nicknamed Nizam-ul-Mulk.

Khafi Khan informs us about the methods and principles which
he has followed in compiling his work. He says that it is obligatory
on a historian to be truthful. He should rise above all hope of
reward and fear of harm. He traces the beginnings of partiality in
historical writings to the reign of Farrukh Siyar, when interested
people took advantage of the situation and got partial accounts
prepared in which mutual jealousies determined the assessment of
events. Such people considered only their interests and discarded
the requirements of truth. The good qualities of the opposite groups
were represented as vices, and the vices of the party to which they
themselves belonged were depicted as virtues. Khafi Khan then
refers to his own approach and method of dealing with the subject.

'I have neither supported friends nor condemned the enemies
for fear of harm. I have not followed anything particularly to
please any wazir or amir. I have recorded whatever I myself have
witnessed or heard from those persons who had access to the assemblies of Farrukh Siyar and the Sayyid Brothers and had full knowledge of their activities. After making a thorough investigation about the sifting of information received from different sources, I have recorded whatever seemed to me the truth.\textsuperscript{12}

It would appear from the above that both Muhammad Qasim and Khafi Khan were in the service of the Nizam-ul-Mulk and had, to that extent, identical backgrounds. In their works, they have dealt, besides other things, with the contemporary political scene. Khafi Khan begins his narrative from the establishment of the Mughal Empire to the fourteenth regnal year of Muhammad Shah. Muhammad Qasim surveys the political developments from the death of Aurangzeb to his own day. In their historical approach, representation of data, analysis of situations, they differ on many vital points. To Khafi Khan history connoted a catalogue of events, neatly presented in chronological sequence. Muhammad Qasim believed in analysing situations, discovering casual connections and tracing the sources of all troubles to the political atmosphere of the court. Muhammad Qasim concentrates his attention on the court and considers it the basis of all troubles. He goes into details about the life of the emperors, the palace intrigues, the cliques of the court, and their repercussion on the life of the people and the administration in general. Khafi Khan nowhere puts his fingers specifically on the role of the Mughal Emperors in accelerating the pace of political disintegration and administrative chaos. To him history is merely a jumble of facts without any co-ordination and coherence.

Holding the emperors responsible for the chaos and confusion that prevailed in the country Muhammad Qasim says:

'The king is sitting like a woman within the four walls (of the palace). If the kings follow the manners of women and act on what the effiminate say, then it is the more necessary that the Muslims should take up the path leading to Mecca and Madina, and if they do not have travelling expenses, in that case, they should, it is better, commit suicide by taking poison.'\textsuperscript{13}

Here he strikes a note of extreme anguish and despair and gives us an idea of the extreme helplessness of the people.

Muhammad Qasim analysed the character of the nobility more thoroughly than any other contemporary writer, including Khafi Khan. He finds the nobles of the period, in general, disloyal, treacherous and hypocritical. Their loyalty was skin deep and they could change sides without any qualms of conscience. He says that
the nobles of the period not merely lacked in statesmanship but also in courage, which had been a distinguishing feature of the nobility during the earlier period. Muhammad Qasim thought that the source of all confusion, dissensions and instability in society lay in the court conflicts and intrigues which filtered down from the palace to the huts and surcharged the atmosphere with conflicts and tensions. He writes:

'A king whose nobles are at daggers drawn with one another and are thirsty for one another's blood cannot survive long. It is incumbent on the kings to abstain from the pursuit of luxuries. They should devote their time in attending to state affairs. Every matter of the state, whether significant or insignificant, should be personally looked into by them. They should not allow themselves to be governed by any noble. Merit and ability should be the criterion for their appointments and promotions, and not sycophancy. He should not take into account whether one is loyal or disloyal to the person of the king; belongs to this group or that group. Then only is it possible that the kings can escape the misfortunes and calamities which follow in the wake of court intrigues and conspiracies of the sycophants.'

Muhammad Qasim also elucidates the functions of the kings which they had given up and had consequently brought untold miseries on themselves and their peoples on the one hand and disintegration of the state on the other. He observes:

'It is all the more necessary for the emperors to keep themselves busy (with administrative affairs), and should not waste it in trifling matters. Especially, he should devote more time to the pursuits of a soldier and reading of books on history, and should not deviate an inch from this dictum; for from such exercises the soldiers draw inspiration. It also increases the strength and stability of the army. The work of ten men cannot be expected to be done by one man. By reading history, a man gets access to past experiences and problems, and to the valuable measures of the (preceeding emperors). For there exists animosity between loyalty on the one hand, and wealth, dignity, honour and high status on the other. These things are not bad so long as one does not assume the royal airs. In case he takes the path of arrogance and error, God Himself will punish him. He should not give up justice and equity as they are the sources of perpetual bliss, and should not allow wicked ideas to enter his heart.'

Muhammad Qasim has also thrown valuable light on the causes
of the conflicts and tussles between the old nobles and the new from the time of Jahandar Shah. Khafi Khan tells us only about the division of the nobles into two groups—the Turanis and Iranis. Muhammad Qasim, however, divides the nobility and their conflicts into the old respected Mughal aristocracy and the new classes of upstarts whom he calls nau-daulatan (upstarts). He says:

'Those whosoever they may be, acted on the advice of the black-faced, blockheaded sycophants, and tale bearers, they had to lose both din (religion) and duniya (country). Do we not see how many states and (administrative institutions) have been ruined due to these wicked scandal mongers? They ruin the fasal (crops) of the Emperor for the prosperity of their khirman (the place where the crops are amassed after harvest).’

According to Khafi Khan the conflicts of the period could be explained only in terms of the conflicts of the Iranis (Shias) and the Turanis (Sunnis). But in Muhammad Qasim's opinion it was a class of newly promoted people from obscurity and poor social backgrounds that had upset the political equilibrium. To support his thesis he gives the following example:

After being appointed Wazir, the Nizam ul-Mulk, who was well acquainted with the administrative lacunae, pointed out to Muhammad Shah certain measures to be taken to remove all those abuses which were sapping the very foundations of the state and bring about efficiency and order in administrative and financial departments. But the upstarts strongly and stubbornly opposed all attempts at reform. Muhammad Qasim critically examines the nature and the reasons for such opposition. He writes:

‘How could they reconcile themselves to ride an ass instead of a horse? The nau-daulatan, who suffered from over self-complacency owing to their inferiority complex, though they had not even seen a donkey in a picture or on the screen, had all of a sudden become owners of horses, wealth and social status. How this group could tolerate any decrease in their mansabs and how could they reconcile themselves to ride an ass instead of a horse?’

Khafi Khan, however, gives a different picture of divided loyalties for he had connections with the Nizam-ul-Mulk and he had respect for the Sayyid Brothers. His attachment to the Sayyids was to some extent due to common religious affiliations. He, therefore, blames the Turani Party in order to justify the actions of the Sayyid Brothers. The circumstances under which the Nizam-ul-Mulk left for the Deccan have been discussed by both Muhammad Qasim
and Khafi Khan. The reasons given by Khafi Khan give an entirely different background to the Nizam-ul-Mulk's decision to quit the north. The account leaves upon one's mind the impression that Khafi Khan was anxious to justify that the Nizam-ul-Mulk's continued presence in the north was not in the interest of the people. He says that there were several reasons which led to an estrangement between the Wazir and the Emperor Muhammad Shah. These reasons are:

(1) It was during this period that the Mughal Court received the news that there was political unrest in Persia, and Mahmud Khan, the Afghan, had overpowered Sultan Husain Shah and had imprisoned him. He had annexed a considerable part of Persia and brought untold miseries on the people. The Nizam-ul-Mulk recalled before Muhammad Shah all the past events, when the Sultans of Persia had rendered great service to Babur andHumayun. He advised the Emperor to send his forces to help the Shah of Persia. He offered his services for this purpose. But when the Emperor consulted his upstart advisers, they imputed motives to the Nizam-ul-Mulk, and thus the scheme of sending the forces to Persia was dropped.

(2) The Nizam ul-Mulk advised the Emperor to abolish the *ijaradari* system and revoke the assignment of *jagirs* in the *Khalisa*. This proposal was also rejected.

(3) He advised the Emperor to stop the acceptance of presents in his name by his favourites, as it brought bad name to him. But the practice was not stopped.

(4) He desired the Emperor to agree to the re-imposition of the *Jizya*, but the Emperor did not pay any heed to this proposal.⁸

On the other hand, Muhammad Qasim gives us an entirely different version. He says: 'It is said that once Muhammad Shah suggested to the Nizam-ul-Mulk to give up his claims over the Deccan. But how could the Nizam-ul-Mulk frankly say in the face of the Emperor that he had conquered that area by his sword, and therefore the emperor should leave it to his humble servant. Instead he said: 'As Your Majesty desires.' But he was shocked and fell into a vortex of worries, and he argued with himself that the post of the *wizarat* was insignificant and meaningless if it could be retained at the cost of the Deccan, and besides, no one could say how long he would continue in that post. 'In case the Deccan slips away from my grip, I will be nowhere,' he said to himself and resorted to diplomatic tricks and stratagem and withdrew from the court and returned to the Deccan.⁹
Two or three incidents may be considered in order to bring the difference in the approach of Khafi Khan and Muhammad Qasim to the conflicting nature of data supplied by them regarding the death of Farrukh Siyar. The account of these two contemporary writers are basically different. They agree only in saying that Farrukh Siyar was seized in a most cruel and atrocious manner, but the two accounts vary in so far as the subsequent treatment of the Emperor by the Sayyid Brothers is concerned.

Muhammad Qasim says that immediately after his imprisonment, Farrukh Siyar was put to death by the Sayyids. Khafi Khan makes a subtle attempt to create an atmosphere in which the murder of Farrukh Siyar becomes inevitable and leads to a logical culmination of the tragedy. He says that during his imprisonment, Farrukh Siyar made an attempt to escape from the prison by offering bribes to persons in whose custody he was placed. He offered a mansab of 7000 to Abdullah Khan, if he successfully manoeuvred his escape from the prison and took him to Raja Jai Singh Sawai, with whose help, he thought, he would be able to re-establish himself.

The circumstances leading to the death of Rafi-ud-Daula and Rafi-ud-Darjat are similarly a moot point. Khafi Khan says that they died a natural death. Muhammad Qasim, on the other hand, says that their death was the result of slow poisoning. He gives several reasons which motivated the Sayyid Brothers to perpetrate the crime.

1. As both of the Princes were devoid of wisdom, lacked valour and were illiterate, the Sayyid Brothers found that they could not carry on the administration, as they desired. In consequence they removed them by slow poisoning.

2. Till then they had achieved success in all matters, but now they feared lest any discomfiture should befall on them and disgrace them. So, the Princes were removed.

3. From Muhammad Qasim’s account it appears that public opinion had played a very significant role in the politics of the period. The Sayyids feared that in case they murdered the Princes either openly or in secret, this would cause great resentment and commotion among the people, and in consequence they would fail to achieve their aims. They presumed that when no one in the line of Timur would be left alive, they would automatically occupy the throne. They made the following arrangement: Qutb-ul-Mulk was to govern northern India and the Amir-ul-Umara was to administer the Deccan and Malwa, with two different headquarters, as two independant
Emperors. The authors make us believe that the Sayyid Brothers desired to destroy the race of Timur and occupy the Mughal throne.\textsuperscript{10} Similar is the case with the accounts of the two historians regarding the assassination of Husain Ali Khan.\textsuperscript{11}

\textit{CONCLUSION}

Both Muhammad Qasim and Khafi Khan have critically examined the factors leading to the decay of the Mughal Empire. Both agree that court factionalism was the main cause of this decay. We find that Muhammad Qasim holds the Sayyid Brothers responsible for the murder of the Emperor Farrukh Siyar and Khafi Khan agrees with the version. But while Muhammad Qasim explains in full the motives of the Sayyid Brothers in causing the death of Rafi-ud-Darjat and Rafi-ud-Daula through slow poisoning, Khafi Khan states that it was due to natural death.

Muhammad Qasim has, instead of giving details of wars etc., picked up only those problems which were adversely affecting the Mughal ruler and integrity of the state, and has suggested in detail, more than once, the measures and steps to be taken by the emperors to check the disintegrating forces. He is more critical, outspoken and has highlighted the intrigues, conspiracies and factional politics in the court and, above all, the rapid political and economic decline of the Mughal Empire. Khafi Khan, on the other hand, following the traditional style of writing history, has devoted more space to describing the minutest details of wars and campaigns. He has avoided making suggestions to cure the malaise that was eating into the very vitals of the Mughal body politic.

A comparative study of these two contemporary authorities on the history of the Mughal Empire during its later years shows that the political conflicts and faction feuds had influenced the approach of the historians. Being a contemporary to a certain event or age is, therefore, not enough; the prejudices emanating from the social, political and religious sources have to be analysed in order to make a correct appraisal of the political developments during the eighteenth century. It is then that the authenticity or value of a historian’s statement can be determined for reconstructing the history of the period.
REFERENCES

1. C. A. Story: Persian Literature, Section 11, p. 464.
3. Muhammad Qasim Aurangabadi, Ahwal-ul-Khawaqin. (British Museum Rotograph in the Aligarh Muslim University) f. 196 b.
5. Ibid., ff. 105 ab.
6. Ibid., f. 183a.
7. Ibid.
10. Ibid., f. 172a
11. Ibid., ff. 176a–b; Muntakhab-ul-Lubab, 11, pp. 904–09.
PERSONAL HISTORY OF SOME MEDIEVAL
HISTORIANS AND THEIR WRITINGS

JAGADISH NARAYAN SARKAR

To understand the ideals and achievements of medieval Muslim historians of India, one has to take into account several factors, among which may be mentioned the nature of history, the general attitude of the medieval historians, the influence of the author’s personal history, his technique and style, and the extent of his success in fulfilling the mission of the historian. In fact the author’s personal history (e.g., his family background, training, education, official connections, character, idiosyncrasies and temperament) usually exercises a profound influence on his outlook and the nature of his composition. It affects his attitude to history and helps us to understand his ideas, attitude and outlook—whether he is an interested or disinterested observer. In this paper, an attempt has been made to emphasize the importance of the influence of the personal history of the writer on the history he wrote in certain representative instances only.

We do not know much about the personal history of Abu Raihan Muhammad b. Ahmad al-Biruni al-Khwarazmi (Ali Boron of Europe) (about A.D. 970-1 to 1238-9). He was essentially an intellectual of intellectuals. This famous encyclopaedic scholar, well-versed in philosophy, mathematics, astronomy, geography, medicine, logic, theology and religion is justly regarded as the first and greatest Muslim Indologist. What is the basis of al-Biruni’s interest in India and Hindu sciences? Was it due to his love of scholarship or anything else?

His earliest biographer (Shams-ud-Din Muhammad Shahrazuri) testifies to his studious habits and asks us to believe that he left his book and pen only on two days in the year, the Nauroz (New Year’s day at the vernal equinox) and the Mihrjan (the autumnal equinox), ‘when he was occupied, according to the command of the Prophet, in procuring the necessaries of life on such a moderate scale as to afford him bare sustenance and clothing.’ It is not clear whether this is a hint at his indigent condition during his student life. But we know that having distinguished himself in science and literature
he rose to be the councillor of the Khwarazm rulers of the Mamuni family. In that capacity he became an antagonist of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna and his chancellor, Ahmad b. Hasan Maimandi (1007–25), because the Sultan wanted to interfere in the affairs of independent Khwarazm. Subsequently, after the conquest of Khwarazm by Sultan Mahmud, he was carried as a hostage to Ghazna along with other hostages and prisoners of war (1017). He travelled extensively in India in the train of Mahmud and studied the language, sciences and philosophy of the Hindus extensively and embodied his observations on the religious condition and social institutions of the Hindus in his time (1017–30). But he received neither any official encouragement or inducement nor any hope of reward from Sultan Mahmud. According to Rashid-ud-Din, al-Biruni ‘entered the service of Mahmud b. Sabuktigin, and in the course of his service he spent a long time in Hindustan and learned the language of the country.\(^1\) But Sachau mentions that ‘there is nothing to tell us that al-Biruni was ever in the service of the state or court in Ghazna,’ and that ‘perhaps’ it was due to his ‘reputation as a great mumujijm, i. e., astrologer-astronomer’ that he ‘had relations with the court and its head.’ The way in which he mentions Sultan Mahmud does not tend to show that he was in the latter’s service or that he regarded the latter as his benefactor. ‘Mahmud utterly ruined the prosperity of the country, and performed there wonderful exploits by which the Hindus became like atoms of dust scattered in all directions and like a tale of old in the mouth of the people.’\(^2\)

On the other hand al-Biruni spoke very highly of Sultan Masud and dedicated his *Canon Masudicus* (*Qanun-i-Masudi*) to him because by conferring on him a special benefit (pension ?), Masud enabled the author (then 61 years old) to devote himself to the pursuit of science. So he exultingly wrote of the favours shown and support given to him and his studies by Masud. This would show that even a man of the type of al-Biruni was swayed by personal considerations in his outlook.

Al-Biruni’s interest in India, the Hindus and their world of thought was largely motivated by what Dr. Sachau calls ‘a community of mishap.’ This may be an exaggeration. But there is no doubt that al-Biruni and his native countrymen were as much the victims of Mahmud’s oppression as the Hindus of India, and this might have inspired al-Biruni with sympathy for them. If to Mahmud the Hindus were infidels fit to be slain for resisting plunder, to al-Biruni they were ‘excellent philosophers, good mathematicians
and astronomers...'. He also throws a 'hint to the Muslim reader not to be too haughty towards the poor bewildered Hindu, trodden by the savage hordes of king Mahmud.'

The idea of writing his book on India suggested itself to al-Biruni during his discussion with a friend on contemporary religious and philosophical literature. He wrote it to fill up a gap in the then Arab literature which contained only 'second hand and thoroughly uncritical account of the beliefs of the Hindus.' His book is not a professed history. It is a deep sociological study, characterised by a rare spirit of enquiry, modern scientific attitude and sympathetic insight. Al-Biruni himself says: 'This books is not a polemical one. I shall not produce the arguments of our antagonists in order to refute such of them as I believe to be in the wrong. My book is nothing but a simple historic record of facts. I shall place before the reader of the theories of the Hindus exactly as they are, and I shall mention in connection with them similar theories of the Greeks in order to show the relationship existing between them...' Of him Max Muller said: 'The world owes to him the first accurate and comprehensive account of Indian literature and religion.' Al-Biruni exhibited the rare spirit of impartiality and detachment. 'The work of al-Biruni is unique in Muslim literature as an earnest attempt to study an idolatrous world of thought not proceeding from the intention of attacking or refuting it but uniformly showing the desire to be just and impartial even when the opponent's views are declared to be inadmissible.' Further al-Biruni's treatment of his sources reveals his scientific mind. The Sanskrit sources of his chapters are almost always given, and Sachau's preface has listed the many authors quoted by him on astronomy, chronology, geography and astrology. He was also acquainted with Greek literature through Arabic translations, and in comparing its language and thought and those of Hindu metaphysics, selects his quotations......with judgement and rare ability. 'And he rarely fails to record his authorities......al-Biruni quotes freely from his authorities, and where these seem to exaggerate or to be inaccurate, his citations are followed by some sharp brief commentary which gives a ceaseless interest to his pages. His treatment of these topics is throughout scholarly, showing extensive reading and precision of thought acquired by a study of the exact sciences.' His 'masterly criticisms' give him a 'unique position among Eastern writers.' In fact al-Biruni's work was 'like a magic world of quiet, impartial research in the midst of a world of clashing swords, burning towns and plundered temples'—a spiritual retort to
Mahmud's oppression and iconoclasm.  

Abu Nasr Muhammad b. Muhammad al-Jabbar-ul-Utbi, belonged to the family of Utba. Many members of the family were important office-holders under the Samanid rulers. Being secretary of Sultan Mahmud himself, Utbi became thoroughly acquainted with his activities, but he did not accompany his master in his expeditions. His book *Tarikh-i-Yamini* or *Kitab-i-Yamini* which covers the whole reign of Subuktigin and a part of the reign of Mahmud (up to 1020 A. D.) is an original source of information of Mahmud's expeditions, but it is deficient in accurate topographical knowledge of India. His attitude is that of an orthodox writer who sees the order of God in the actions of Subuktigin and Mahmud: e.g., 'often times a small army overcomes a large one by the order of God'; 'The friends of God advancing against the masters of lies and idolatory...'; 'friends of God committed slaughter in every hill and valley'; 'God bestows honour on his own religion and degrades infidelity' etc.  

Khawaja Abul Fazl b. al-Hasan al-Baihaqi (C. 996–1077 A.D.) wrote 'a comprehensive history of the Ghaznavides in several (30) volumes'—*Tarikh-i-Baihaqi* or *Mujalladat-i-Baihaqi*, its various component volumes being severally known as *Tarikh-us-Subuktigin* or *Tarikh-i-Al-i-Subuktingin* or *Tarikh-i-Nasiri*; *Taj-ul-Futuh* (for Mahmud); *Tarikh-i-Masudi* (for Masud) etc. 

Baihaqi seems to have been closely associated with the court and the aristocratic classes of his time. 'The *Tarikh-us-Subuktingin* wears more the appearance of a gossiping memoir than an elaborate history. The author perpetually alludes to himself, his own intimacies, his own proceedings, and his own experiences. He gives us a graphic account of the contemporary nobles; the pursuits of the Emperor, Masud b. Mahmud; his dictations to his secretaries, the addiction to wine; and his repentance on the occasion of one of his visits to Hindustan, when he forswore liquor and threw the wine and drinking vessels into the river Jilam; which strongly reminds us of a later but identical freak of Babur's. We have a vivid representation of the court; the mode of transacting business, the agents by whom it was transacted, and the nature of subjects which came under discussion before the council at Ghazna. (All related with such detail and verbosity as to be open to the charge of prolixity which the author apprehended. But, although tedious, the work is eminently original, and it presents such a reflex of the doings and manners of the time that its minuteae and trifles frequently consti-
tute its chief merit. The writer may not inaptly be described as an oriental Mr. Pepys."

We do not know much about Hasan Nizami, the author of the *Taj-ul-Maasir* (Crown of Exploits), except from his own references therein. He describes himself as ‘Hasan Nizami, the slave and the son of the slave,’ and names as his patrons ‘Abul Muzaffar Muhammad b Sam b. Husain’ (i.e., Md. Ghuri) and ‘Qutb-ud-Dunya Wa-ud-Din Abul Haris Aibak.’ Born at Nishapur, Hasan Nizami is also known as Sadr-ud-Din Muhammad bin Hasan Nizami. According to Prof. Askari, his father was most probably Abul Hasan Nizami Aruzi of Samarqand. Though Lahore was neither his birthplace nor chief residence he is associated with this city by Hammer. He had to leave his native place come via Ghazna to Delhi on account of the political distractions in Khurasan, where merit was neither appreciated nor rewarded. He wrote with a deep sense of frustration. From his connections and acquaintances (the Sufi Muhammad Shirazi and Chief Justice Majd-ul-Mulk of Ghazna, Chief Justice Sharf-ul-Mulk of Delhi) it may be inferred that Hasan Nizami was not only a very learned man, belonging to the intellectuals, but also stood fairly high in the social ladder. He began (602/1205) this work in Persian not so much at the request of his friends at Delhi (where knowledge of Arabic was evidently at a discount) but in obedience to the royal mandate to detail the events of the conquering dynasty (name of ruler not given). It deals partly with Muhammad Ghuri (from 1191 A.D.) but mainly with the history of Qutb-ud-Din Aibak and Ilutmish. The author makes a parade of his learning at every step by using a florid and verbose style, in prose and verse, metaphors, similies etc. But he does not give evidence of his being a witness or a participator in the exploits of the rulers. ‘Beyond the praise which the author bestows upon his heroes, there is nothing to indicate that he was contemporary with the events which he describes, and the absence of all particulars, as well as a certain confusion and indistinctness about some of the dates, show that he was no active participator in any of his patron’s campaigns. It is singularly strange that he says nothing of the transactions of Kutub-ud-Din’s actual reign, for the same short chapter records his accession and his death.’

Hasan Nizami was a panegyrist, like many other historians and suffered from prejudices. He omits to mention Mohammad Ghuri’s defeat at the first battle of Tarain but refers to restoration of lost prestige at the second battle. However, he hints at the virtual defeat of the Ghurid ruler.
by Bhimdeva II of Anhilwara earlier. ‘Hasan Nizami would have us believe that the early Muslim conquerors were good Muslims and religious zealots whose primary aims and motives in their wars and conquests, government and administration were religious rather than political or economic, and that in all the cities and places they conquered, hardly any idol, temple or religious sanctuary was left intact that was not converted into Muslim institutions’ (as at Ajmer f. 48a).\(^\text{10}\)

Minhaj ud-Din b. Siraj-ud-Din belonged to the aristocratic class by birth and marriage. He had a distinguished ancestry. His great-great grandfather, Imam Abdul Khaliq of Juzjan (between Merv and Balkh), married the daughter of Sultan Ibrahim of Ghazna. His father was a Qazi of the army of Hindustan under Muhammad Ghuri (1186). Minhaj himself was a learned man, and was appointed head of the Firuzi College at Uch (1227), law officer and director of the preaching of all religious, moral and judicial affairs (1232), Qazi of Delhi (1241), Principal of Nasiriya College, Delhi, and Superintendent of its endowments, Qazi of Gwalior, preacher in the metropolitan mosque (1244–5), Sadr-i-Jahan, Qazi of the State and magistrate of the capital under Nasir-ud-Din (1246). His stay at Lakhnauti, capital of Bengal, for nearly three years (1241–2 to 1243–44) enabled him to get accurate information about the outlying Muhammadan territory.

All this influenced his work, which was erudite and eulogistic. He named his work in honour of his patron Nasir-ud-Din and adopted an eulogistic manner in writing it. It contains some ejaculatory prayers for the continuance of his reign. Nevertheless, competent critics think that he ‘rarely indulges in highflown eulogy, but narrates his facts in a plain straightforward manner, which induces confidence in the sincerity of his statements and the accuracy of his knowledge.’

His judicial profession and academic outlook seem to have affected his methodology. He took great pains in collecting information from trustworthy persons, and often mentioned the authority for his facts.\(^\text{11}\)

Amir Khusrau or Mir Khusrau (1253–1325) was a member of the aristocracy of the time. His father was a noble during the reign of Ilutmish. His mother was an Indian lady, the daughter of Imad-ul-Mulk, a high officer under Balban. He occupied, by dint of parentage, a very prominent place in Delhi court circles. He himself served under six Sultans. His association with the sultans and the intimate intercourse with the aristocracy, military
oligarchy and the saint Nizam-ud-Din Auliya gave him the unique opportunity of knowing the truth about the political events and social conditions of the time. But he did not make a good use of his knowledge. His historical works were written during 35 years (1289–1325), but these were occasional works, not parts of an integrated whole. Some *pieces d’occasions* he wrote on requests from Sultans and princes, others in the hope of reward or out of gratitude or to achieve literary fame. Amir Khusrau was more a poet than a historian, more a panegyrist than an impartial writer. All this affected his literary and semi-historical compositions. *The Qiran-us-Saadain* (Conjunction of Two Planets, 1289) consisted of several descriptive poems, climaxcd by the interview of father (Bughra Khan, ruler of Lakhnauti) and son (Sultan Muiz-ud-Din Kaiqubad). *The Khazain-ul-Futuh* or *Tarikh-i-Alai* (in prose), the most reliable and accurate history of the first sixteen years of Ala-ud-Din’s reign (conquest of Deogiri to that of Warangal), bears the impress of the author’s poetic nature, literary skill, his political opportunism and fondness for India and everything Indian. It consists of paragraphs based on a ‘*nisbat*’ (metaphors, similies or allusions, derived from an object), makes frequent use of Quranic verses (to add force and dignity) and of chronograms, and of Hindi words. As Wahid Mirza writes: ‘Khusrau’s concern has been not only to write the annals of his royal patron’s reign, but to produce a masterpiece of literature.’ He looks at events from the aesthetic point of view; action is subordinated to effect. He not only describes the military victories of Ala-ud-Din, but also his achievements in consolidating his dominion, establishment of law and order and adoption of several measures in order to promote the welfare of the people. But Amir Khusrau’s opportunism makes him pass over Ala-ud-Din’s treachery towards his uncle in gaining the throne. Without referring to the assassination of Ala-ud-Din’s uncle, Amir Khusrau ascribes Sultan’s accession to God’s will.

Amir Khusrau’s *Afzal-ul-Fawaid* throws valuable light on the saintly character of Nizam-ud-Din Auliya and the poet’s intimate association with him.

The *Tughluq-nama*, the last historical poem of Amir Khusrau, which tells the story of the seizure of Delhi by Ghiyas-ud-Din Tughluq, has a religious and moral colour. The Sultan was an exemplar of virtue, fighting against the forces of darkness typified by Khusrau Khan (the infidel) for the cause of Islam.

He did not use evidence of events systematically and critically,
He does not indicate the sources of information (except in *Diwal Rani*). He does not quote orthodox men as Barani and Asif (to some extent) do. The reader has to accept his word as true. It is also couched in a religious and moral idiom. In the final analysis history is unintelligible except as the outcome of divine will or fate.\(^{12}\)

Zia-ud-Din Barani (b. 1285), the first Indian Muslim to compose a history of India, was well connected with the ruling circles of Delhi. Having an easy access to the court he had ample opportunity of knowing the accurate details. A boon companion of Muhammad Tughluq he did not criticise him in his life time. Banished from the court and feeling the stings of evil fortune, he wrote under a sense of being wronged and disappointment. But for his rescue by Firuz, he would have, as he himself says, ‘slept in the lap of Mother Earth.’ An introvert, his conscience was pricked and he attributed his misfortune to his moral failure. So his book had a practical objective: it was intended to be a double offering—to God, to gain His forgiveness and atone for his sin—to the Sultan, to secure his patronage and thereby freedom from want and protection from calumny of his enemies. Thus it was named after Firuz Shah.

Son of a Shaikh father and a Sayyid mother, fast friend of Shaikh Nizam-ud-Din Auliya, Barani was deeply influenced by religion and mysticism. He hated aesthetic learning. This enables us to understand his religious view of history. To Barani history was theology, a study of God and His attributes and decrees, not of man’s activities, a vehicle for revelation of God’s purpose.

Barani originally intended to write a Universal History from Adam. But subsequently he changed his mind. In the *Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi* (written in 1358) he deals with eight kings only during the period from Balban to the first six years of Firuz Tughluq, taking up the thread of the narrative almost from the point where Minhaj had left it. It is indeed a ‘continuation of Minhaj’s chronicle.’ His reason for not covering the previous ground was perhaps sentimental weakness, not befitting a true historian, but it throws light on the mentality of the historians of the age. ‘If I copy what this venerable and illustrious author has written, those who have read his history will derive no advantage from mine; and if I state anything contrary to the master’s writings or abridge or amplify his statements, it will be considered disrespectful and rash. In addition to which I should raise doubts and difficulties in the minds of his readers.’ This reminds one of the fallacy of the logic alleged to have been attributed to the Caliph Umar about the burning of the famous Alexandrian
library. For, to the discerning critical student of history there are many things besides agreement or repetition and disagreement or doubt.

Though Barani did not employ the technique of isnad, he believed in received truth. Facts of history were ascertained not by critical doubts and inquiry, but from the testimony of religious or virtuous men. He would not disagree with Minhaj, a religious man, he would rely on his relatives, on Amir Khusrau and Amir Hasan, though he did not always trust his own memory. Nevertheless, he wrote like a story-teller, irrespective of all authorities. Thus he lacked ‘deep research, great discrimination and sustained effort.’

On his own admission Barani based his work partly on his hearsay statements, and partly on personal observations. He learnt his account of Balban from his own father and grandfather and Balban’s officers, and of Kaiqubad’s reign from ‘his father and from his preceptors who were men of note at the time.’ He supplemented this by his own observations; the events and affairs of Jalal-ud-Din’s reign up to the end of this work, all having occurred under his own eyes. Without going deep into individual details, he looks at the compact whole. As he writes: ‘In this book I have recorded all the diplomatic and administrative affairs of the State and, in the description of conquests, I have not mentioned every event or happening, nor have I mentioned privileges granted to the people since wise people will (have) well known these things from a study of administrative affairs.’ He is selective.

Making due allowance for the religious outlook and for the defects of Barani according to modern criteria of a historian, there is no doubt that his Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi (1357) was ‘the vigorous and trenchant expression of a conscious philosophy of history which lifts Barani right out of the ranks of mere compilers of chronicles and annals.’ His passion lay in History, and he regards it as a science, rather as ‘the queen of the sciences.’ Moreover, he mentions some advantages of studying History.13

Shams-ud-Din Siraj Afif, though born in an official family, (b. 1342) was not an official. But unlike Barani and Isami he did not indicate that he wrote with any sense of disappointed ambition or neglected merit. He wrote for the edification of his readers. His Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi (written in 15th c.) was a part of a large historical work dwelling on the good qualities (manaqib) of three Tughluq rulers (Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad and Firuz) and destruction of Delhi by Timur. It was an example of biography. As manaqib
applies to holy men, not Sultans, there was a *sufi* undercurrent in it.

Afif wrote from authorities, accepting the evidence of reliable informants, but he did not argue from his evidence to decide upon disputed points. As with Barani, Afif’s criteria for ascertaining historical truth are ultimately religious. When he does not give common report or precise authority of others for the statements in his work, he depended on eye-witnesses. He seeks intelligibility in history in extra-historical facts by looking beyond history to the whole order of inscrutable divine creation. The past was a spectacle of virtue, not a school of true religion. He does not interpret it so as to teach specific ethical principles and causes of action.¹⁴

Yahya bin Ahmad Sirhindi was not a courtier at Delhi but expected to become one. He expected to win royal patronage by presenting his book to Sultan Sayyid Mubarak Shah. In *Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi* (wr. 1434–5) Yahya b. Ahmad Sirhindi borrows from previous writers like Minhaj, Barani and Amir Khusrau for events up to 1351. But he was not a mere copyist. He had his own principles of selection, i.e., to record deeds of Sultans, nobles and soldiers, arranged reign-wise, in chronological order, e.g., accessions, appointments, battles and military movements, rebellions etc. After 1351 he relied on the evidence of trustworthy narrators and not on written materials. But in either case his idiom was the same. He seems to see the surface of events and chronicle the externals of actions only. His work was, in fact, a regional chronicle and he was a chronicler of action. History is depicted as a succession of military and political events only, as for example he omits Ala-ud-Din’s economic measures.

Even with his causal and indifferent approach to historical writing he refers to divine interpretation in history. He ends each reign with ‘God alone knows the truth.’ He sees the will of God in the fortunes of Islam in Hindustan from the time of Muhammad of Ghur. In his analysis of the causes of Muhammad Tughluq’s difficulties, he attributes events to human actions and decisions.¹⁵

Isami (C. 1350) wrote his historical epic, *Futuh-us-salatin* as a disappointed man in search of a patron. He fell a victim to the tyranny of Muhammad b. Tughluq. He was forced to move from Delhi to Deogiri (Daulatabad) with his 90 years old grandfather who died on the way. Without a wife, without children, without friends and without relatives, he looked around for a friend or patron. He complained bitterly of low literary standards in
Hindustan and of the sad plight of good authors in an unfriendly world at the mercy of malignant critics. In disgust he wanted to leave Hindustan and go to Mecca. His dream patron appeared in the person of Ala-ud-Din Bahman Shah. He settled at Daulatabad and wrote under his patronage to become a Firdausi to the Bahmani Sultan. His *Futuh-us-Salatin* would be a *Shah-nama*, and it was dedicated to him to win his patronage and get lasting literary fame. His sufferings partly account for the strong condemnation of Muhammad Tughluq. As a historian of the Tughluq period Isami occupied a unique position, being the only writer above fear or favour of the Sultan.

Isami's *Futuh-us-Salatin* (Wr. 1349–50) was an epic conspectus of the deeds of the Muslims in Hindustan from the time of Mahmud of Ghazna to the date of its composition. He had to rely on older sources, but was no slavish follower of authority, no mere copyist of received reports and traditions. He imposed his own ideas of form and content on his data. He wrote a selective account of the past, using stories, legends, anecdotes and common reports gleaned from friends and associates (hearsay evidence). Without specifying their exact source, he merely says: 'I have heard'. Materials were selected on aesthetic considerations and not on critical and factual criteria. At best he offers not critical history but merely historical evidence. He follows the usual conventions of medieval Muslim writers in emphasizing the mystery of divine ordination and incomprehensibility of Fate, though at times he ascribes events to human actions. Khaikhusrau was set aside for Kaiqubad on account of the decision of nobles.16

Early medieval Indian historical works largely bear the impress of the Persian rather than Arab tradition of history writing, the authors being either connected with the royal courts or solicitous of royal patronage. The Indo Muslem historians made History revolve round its 'great men.' History was conceived by Amir Khusrau (1253–1325), Isami (c. 1350), Zia-ud-Din Barani (W. 1358), Shams-i-Siraj A`if (b. 1342/W. 15th c.) and Yahya b. Ahmad Sirhindi (W. 1434–5) to be the history of great men, rulers, princes and nobles, not of the lowly and the base, nor of the people. To Barani, the *Tarikh* is knowledge of the annals and traditions of Prophets, Caliphs, Sultans and other great men of religion and Government. It loses its value if it concerns with the deeds of mean and unworthy persons. Indeed, such persons usually have no taste for it and its study does not advantage them.17 Thus some authors wrote eulogies
on rulers and individuals—e.g., al-Utbi (Tariikh-i-Yamini, 1020–21), Afif (Tariikh-i-Firuz Shahi, c. 1398–99). These works belong to the category of manaqib or fazail history or prose eulogy of rulers and individuals.

Again, the early medieval Indian historians, like their counterparts in Europe, held that history was a spectacle of divine ordination, a story, not of human but of divine action in which human beings were mere agents.

Thirdly, they tried to interpret history in terms of conventional religio-ethical background, avoiding the vanities of a wicked world (e.g., Yahya and Isami).

Fourthly, they used history to serve the cause of religion to glorify Islam. This attitude of glorification of Islam helps to explain the contemporary accounts of Hindu-Moslem relations (wars, battles etc.) and much of the exaggerations therein made becomes intelligible.

Fifthly, the early Indo-Muslem historians (Barani, Yahya, Amir Khusrau and others) emphasize the didactic element in history, which was regarded as a branch of ethics, as a storehouse of morals.

THE MUGHAL PERIOD

A change is discernible in the type of history and class of writers of historical literature in the Mughal age.

Royal autobiographers (Timur, Babur or Jahangir), memoir-writers (Mirza Haidar Dughlat, Gulbadan, Jauhar and others), official historiographers (Abul Fazl, Abdul Hamid Lahori, Muhammad Kazim and Muhammad Saqi Mustaid Khan), non official historians (Nizam-ud-Din, Abdul Qadir Badauni, Khafi Khan, Mirza Muhammad Hasan and others) differ from the writers of the Sultanate period in social status, class, outlook, idiom and approach. The element of personal gain, getting a reward or repaying a debt of gratitude receded into the background or at least was not so prominent now as in the previous period. The most significant change was the secularisation of history in the Mughal age.

Secondly, though the attitude of divine ordination in history is noticeable in the Mughal period, the humanistic aspect of history tended to be more marked and the divine causation less prominent in the Mughal period than in the Turko-Afghan period.

Thirdly, the didactic element in history diminishes in the Mughal period, when historians devoted more attention to events,
actions and measures taken, political, administrative or military, of their causes and effects than general morals or vague warnings.

(a) Royal Autobiographers

Timur:

The Timurids were themselves highly educated and patrons of education and literature. The *Malfuzat-i-Timuri* or *Tuzuk-i-Timuri* was an autobiographical memoir of Timur written in Chaghatai Turki and dealing with 41 years of his life. The authenticity of the work, once suspected, is now accepted, thanks to Major Davy. The method by which the accounts and descriptions of the events of Timur's life were recorded has thus been described only thirty years after his death by Sharf-ud-Din Yazdi, author of the *Zafar-nama*, which is a reproduction of the *Malfuzat*: "Men of the highest character for learning, knowledge, and goodness, Aighur officers and Persian secretaries, were in attendance at the court of Timur and a staff of them under the orders of the Emperor wrote down an account of everything that occurred. The movements, actions and sayings of Timur, the various incidents and affairs of state, of religion, and the ministers, were all recorded and written down with the greatest care. The most stringent commands were given that every event should be recorded exactly as it occurred, without any modification either in excess or diminution. This rule was to be particularly observed in matters of personal bearing and courage, without fear or favour of any, especially in respect of the valour and prowess of the Emperor himself. The learned and eloquent writers having recorded the facts, their compositions were polished and finished off in verse and prose. From time to time these writings were brought into the royal presence and were read to the Emperor, so as to insure confidence by the impress of his approval. In this way the records of the various incidents and actions of the life of Timur, whether recounted in Turki verse or Persian prose, were revised and finally recorded in prose and verse. Besides this, some of the officers of the court wrote down the incidents of the reign of Timur, and took the greatest pains to ascertain the truth of what they recorded. Accomplished writers then moulded these productions into Turki verse and Persian prose." This method perhaps influenced and was also used by Abul Fazl in writing his *magnum opus*.

The motives of Timur in undertaking the invasion of India have been described by him in his autobiography from which it would appear that religious, economic, material and political factors were at work. At one place Timur refers to two objects, religious
and political: 'My principal object in coming to Hindustan, and in undergoing all this toil and hardship, has been to accomplish two things. The first was to have a war with the infidels, the enemies of the Muhammadan religion; and by this religious warfare to acquire some claim to the reward in the life to come. The other was a worldly object; that the army of Islam might gain something by plundering the wealth and valuables of the infidels: plunder in war is as lawful as their mothers' milk to Musalmans who war for their faith, and the consuming of that which is lawful is a means of grace.'

(i) Religious:

(a) '...The desire to lead an expedition against the infidels, and to become a ghazi; for it had reached my ears that the slayer of infidels is a ghazi, and if he is slain, he becomes a martyr. It was on this account that I formed this resolution, but I was undetermined in my mind whether I should direct my expedition against the infidels of China or against the infidels and polytheists of India. In this matter I sought an omen from the Quran, and the verse I opened upon was this: 'O Prophet, make war upon infidels and unbelievers, and treat them with severity.'

(b) 'My great object in invading Hindustan had been to wage a religious war against the infidel Hindus...'

(c) When Timur arrived in Afghanistan, the Muslim inhabitants (of Indarab), both 'nobles and peoples, high and low,' complained in a body, seeking justice and protection against oppression. 'The infidel Kators and the Siyah-poshes exact tribute and blackmail every year from us who are true believers, and if we fail in the least of our settled amount, they slay our men and carry our women and children into slavery, so that we helpless Musalmans fly for protection to the presence of the great king that he may grant to us, oppressed ones, our hearts' desire upon these infidels. On hearing these words the flame of my zeal for Islam, and my affection for my religion, began to blaze.'

(ii) Economic:

The wealth of Hindustan tempted Timur. Prince Muhammad Sultan said: 'The whole country of India is full of gold and jewels, and in it there are seventeen mines of gold and silver, diamond and ruby and emerald and tin and iron and steel and copper and quicksilver, etc., and of the plants which grow there are those fit for making wearing apparel, and aromatic plants, and the sugar-cane, and it is a country which is always green and verdant, and the whole aspect of the country is pleasant and delightful.' But it was not
merely the wealth of Hindustan but the wealth of the infidels and idolaters which gave the invader a special justification. ‘Now, since the inhabitants are chiefly polytheists and infidels and idolaters and worshippers of the sun, by the order of God and his prophet, it is right for us to conquer them.’

(iii) Political:

Besides the religious and economic factors there was also a political motive. Timur’s invasion was an attempt to reassert the old domination of Persia and Central Asia over India.

(a) ‘At this time the prince Shah Rukh said: “India is an extensive country; whatever Sultan conquers it becomes supreme over the four quarters of the globe; if, under the conduct of our amir, we conquer India, we shall become rulers over the seven climes.’ He then said ‘I have seen in the history of Persia that, in the time of the Persian Sultans, the King of India was called Darai, with all honour and glory. On account of his dignity he bore no other name; and the Emperor of Rome was called Caesar, and the Sultan of Persia was called Kisra, and the Sultan of the Tatars, Khakan, and the Emperor of China, Faghfur; but the king of Iran and Turan bore the title of Shahinshah of Iran and Turan, and it would be a pity that we should not be supreme over the country of Hindustan.” I was excessively pleased with these words of Prince Shah Rukh.’

(b) Amir Timur was in no way inferior to Sultan Mahmud, rather superior to him: the former had conquered Hindustan with 30,000 horses, whereas Timur had 100,000 valiant Tatar horsemen. ‘...If he determines upon this expedition Almighty God will give him victory, and he will become a ghazi and mujahid before God, and we shall be attendants on an Amir who is a ghazi, and the army will be contented and the treasury rich and well filled, and with the gold of Hindustan our Amir will become a conqueror of the world and famous among the kings of earth.’

(c) Timur also wanted to establish peace and internal security by protecting the travellers from the Jats. ‘They were Musalmans only in name and had not their equals in theft and highway robbery. They plundered caravans upon the road, and were a terror to Musalmans and travellers. They had now abandoned the village and had fled to the sugar-cane fields, the valleys, and the jungles. When these facts reached my ears I prepared a force which I placed under the direction of Tokal Bahadur, son of the Hindu Karkarra, and sent it against the Jats.’ ‘...These turbulent Jats were as numerous as
ants or locusts, and that no traveller or merchant passed unscathed from their hands. All this motivation is in striking contrast to divine ordination and indicates the predominance of secular over religious factors, though the latter were not altogether absent.

During the preliminary discussion, before launching the expedition, some opposed the idea of permanent conquest, but Timur overbore their objections. ‘Some of the nobles said: “By the favour of Almighty God we may conquer India, but if we establish ourselves permanently therein, our race will degenerate and our children will become like the natives of those regions, and in a few generations their strength and valour will diminish.” The amirs of regiments (kushunat) were disturbed at these words, but I said to them: “My object in the invasion of Hindustan is to lead an expedition against the infidels that, according to the law of Muhammad (upon whom and his family be the blessing and peace of God), we may convert to the true faith the people of that country, and purify the land itself from the filth of infidelity and polytheism; and that we may overthrow their temples and idols and become ghazis and mujahids before God.”

Babur’s autobiography is not only a political record, but a naturalist’s journal as well. He was very well qualified, by his experience and attainments, to write his invaluable Tuzuk. He was a great general and profound politician. A soldier of fortune, he was none the less an educated and accomplished man and an eminent scholar in Arabic, Persian (the language of culture) and Hindi, while in his native Turki, he was master of a prose in unaffected style, an elegant poet (JASB 1910, 875 pp. for his diwans), a minute and fastidious critic in all the niceties and elegance of diction, a curious and exact observer of the statistical phenomena of every region he entered, a great admirer of beautiful prospects and fine flowers. He had ‘a great love for nature, a trained eye for beauty in all its forms, and a scientist’s keen observation.”

Jahangir’s autobiography not only bears the impress of his character, scholarship and visissitudes, but also proves him to have been a man of no common ability. He records his weaknesses, and confesses his faults, with candour, and a perusal of his work alone would leave a favourable impression both of his character and talents. Like his father, he was fond of jewels, and estimated their value as a true connoisseur. He was a mighty hunter and took pleasure in sport even in the latter years of his life. He was a lover of nature, both animate and inanimate, and viewed it with a shrewd
and observant eye. He mentions the peculiarities of many animals and birds, and shows that he watched their habits with diligence and perseverance. Trees and fruits and flowers also come under his observation, and he gives his opinion upon architecture and gardening like one who had bestowed time and thought upon them.32

The memoirs of Jahangir are not less interesting than those of Babur. If Babur lets us into the privacy of his debaucherries, Jahangir calmly tells us how he got Abul Fazl murdered. But he does not refer to his marriage with Nurjahan.33

(b) Memoir Writers:

-Gulbadan Begam, the well-educated daughter of Babur (c. 1523–1603) and wife of a Chaghatai Mughal, Khwajah Khizr Khan wrote (at seventeen), the Humayun-nama at Akbar's request. Her account of Babur, who died when she was eight, is necessarily very brief, mainly based on reports received from others. Humayun treated her well after 1530. After 1540 she remained in Kabul. The narrative of Humayun's life-victories, defeats and difficulties and hardships (at treacherous Kamran's hands) was mostly that of an eye-witness. Where she lacked personal observation she had to depend on other's reports, especially senior ladies of the harem e. g., Khanzadah, Maham and Hamida Banu Begams, whom she respected and whose confidence she enjoyed. The book naturally throws more light on social and cultural aspects of the Mughals than military details (e. g., Chausa and Kanauj). At times the sequence is faulty.34

Mirza Haidar Dughlat (born 1499–1500 d. 1551), author of the Tarikh-i-Rashidi, had a very distinguished ancestry. He was the son of Muhammad Husain Mirza (son of the Amir of Kashgar) and the sister of Babur's mother, and hence the first cousin of Babur. Thus he inherited great vigour and ability. After his father was put to death by Shaibani Khan of Herat (1508), it was Babur's 'parental observance and affection' which compensated for the loss. He praises Babur for his gifts and expresses his gratitude to him. Like Babur, again, he was bold and adventurous and showed remarkable military activity at different places. Possessing considerable literary talents and keen power of observation, he recorded, like his cousin, what he saw and learnt after enquiry. According to Erskine, the Tarikh-i-Rashidi is 'the production of a learned and accomplished man; and in the two latter parts, of a contemporary intimately acquainted with the men and events he describes.'35 The work is valuable for the history of the Mogol Khans and the Amirs of Kashgar. It was
dedicated to Sultan Said of Kashgar. Notices of India are fragmentary and are mainly confined to events in which he himself participated, e.g., his governorship of Lahore under Kamran and his offer of help to Humayun and conquest of Kashmir (1540) and rule over it till his death in 1551 at the hands of conspirators. His account of the battle of Kanauj is that of an eye-witness as he was the Wing-Commander of Humayun’s army. He was devoted to Humayun and asked him to use Kashmir as a spring board for the recovery of the Empire.36

Jauhar was the author of the Tazkirat-ul-Waqiat. Being the asfābchi or ever-bearer, he was Humayun’s constant attendant for more than twenty five years. Hence he was a contemporary historian. It is not known what his actual position was when he wrote his work. Jauhar himself says that Humayun assigned to him the collection of the revenues of the pargana of Haibatpur. Abdul Fazl also mentions him as collector in the district of Haibatpur and later as Mihtar Jauhar, treasurer of the Punjab.37 So it is clear that he became a man of some distinction.

The book aims at giving a ‘faithful and true representation’ of the career of Humayun. Being a menial, Jauhar was not a learned person, and the work is written in a simple style, without any claim to erudition. The greatest merit of the book is that it is the work of an eye-witness, authentic, and written with sincerity and naivety. Jauhar owed his official position to Humayun and so Elphinstone considers him to be anxious to give a favourable version to all his actions. But he is largely free from exaggeration and conventional eulogistic approach of panegyrists. It gives a ‘vivid and lifelike portrait’ of the Emperor in his public affairs—e.g., his escape, difficulties in Persia, his virtues as ‘courage, forbearance, clemency, kindness, humility, piety and resignation.’ In the words of Dr. S. Ray, ‘No other historian gives so detailed an account of Humayun in Iran as Jauhar. No other historian, writing from the Mughal standpoint, reveals the sufferings and indignities to which Humayun was subjected at the Safavid Court.’

Jauhar wrote it (1587) in obedience to Akbar’s order to supply materials for the Akbar-nama, i.e., more than thirty years after Humayun’s death. Hence his undoubted honesty and truthfulness must have been diluted in effect, by failing memory. The ‘long choosing and beginning late’ performance stood in the way of accurate delineation of the incidents and exact narration. V. Smith, of course, thinks that Jauhar ‘must have made use of notes recorded
at the time of the events described, but some other scholars do not agree with him. Dowson writes: 'They are not contemporary records of the events as they occurred, but reminiscences of more than 30 years standing, so that whatever the sincerity and candour of the writer time must have toned down his impressions and memory had doubtless given a favourable colour to the recollections he retained of a well-beloved master. The conversations attributed to the various personages who figure in his Memoirs must, therefore, contain quite as much of what the author thought they might or ought to have said as of what really was uttered.' Dr. Banerji has referred to some silly mistakes due to failing memory.

Secondly, the memoirs lack in one vital respect. They do not, unlike the memoirs of Babur and Jahangir, throw any light on the personal traits and anecdotes which enable the reader to form an estimate of Humayun as a man. Thirdly, it is completely silent on Humayun's early life and life as a prince (23 years). Fourthly, it is deficient in chronology, giving not only very few dates but also wrong dates at times. Fifthly, the author's knowledge of topography of the Deccan is very poor—locating the encounter between Humayun and Bahadur in the Burhanpur district. Sixthly, he lacks in sense of proportion, the capacity to 'distinguish the trivial from the important.'

At times, however, Jauhar rises to the level of a true historian.

(c) MUGHAL OFFICIAL HISTORIANS:

The Mughal period was pre-eminently an age of official histories or nāmas. This new type of history was inspired by Persian influence and stimulated by the influence of Persians in a cosmopolitan court. The practice of having the official history of the empire, written by the Royal Historiographer, was started by Akbar and it continued down to the reign of Aurangzeb, who stopped it. With the recording of events by experienced officials and courtiers, practised clerks and secretaries, a change came over history in 'form, content and spirit alike.' History tended to be a running chronicle. These official histories were based on an accumulated mass of contemporary records—official (wagai) records of provinces and the akhbarat-i-darbar-i-mualla or court bulletins or news-letters corrected under royal direction. Hence these works supplied generally trust-worthy information (true basis of a narrative) of events of a king's reign, from which we can form our own judgement of the characters and political forces. On the other hand, the presentation of history
inevitably tended to reflect the bias of the court, social, political and religious. Naturally the official historians, like Abul Fazl, Abdul Hamid Lahori, Muhammad Kazim and Muhammad Saqi Mustaid Khan, could not afford to be independent in their attitude or critical of the actions of the rulers or ministers. They wisely refrained from detailing the career of Humayun in Persia and Afghanistan because of the humiliating treatment accorded to him by Shah Tahmasp. Hence, they 'deemed it politic to slur over the temporary eclipse of their royal house.'

By discarding the former theological conception, history now inevitably tended to concentrate increasingly on the activities of the king and court. History came to be secularised. Historians now pleaded for the moral value of its study in place of the earlier theological justification.

The court chronicles tended to indulge in 'nauseating flattery' of their patrons as well as in verbosity. But this flattery was 'more a defect of manner than one of fact' (Sarkar). In these official histories no fact has been really falsified, though credit is often given to the Emperor whereas he did not deserve it. Abul Fazl does not mention Todar Mal's name even once in dealing with the revenue reforms of Akbar's reign and makes the Emperor the inventor of the Ain-i-Dawat.41

Akbar's minister and friend, writer, statesman, diplomat and a military commander, Shaikh Abul Fazl (1551–1602) belonged to a Hijazi Arab family, which migrated to Sind and then permanently settled at Nagor, north-west of Ajmer. He inherited the traditions of mysticism, learning and cosmopolitanism from his father, Mubarak, and grandfather, Khizr, while he learnt the lesson of tolerance in the school of misfortune and persecution to which his father, Shaikh Mubarak, was subjected for his Mahdavi leanings. He gave signs of his remarkable mental precocity and extensive reading when, at the age of fifteen, he mastered different branches of science and became a teacher even before the age of twenty. The admonitions of his relatives led him to forsake the seclusion of the academic recluse. Since his introduction to the Emperor in 1573 through his elder brother, Faizi, his promotion, due to his erudition and devoted loyalty, was quick, and excited the jealousy of his rivals and enemies. His position, administrative training, and personal contact with every important affair, his access to official papers, his scholarship and marvellous literary style made both his two works invaluable.
Abul Fazl takes us to the laboratory of his history and explains his methods in the Akbar-nama and the Ain-i-Akbari, which remind us of those used for Timur's autobiography. He secured his raw materials and worked them up by the following processes:

(i) laborious collection of records and events;
(ii) accumulation of evidence from principal officers, grandees, well informed dignitaries and old members of the royal family;
(iii) imperial search for evidence. Royal commands were sent to provinces for transmission by old servants of their written memoirs, which were recited before the Emperor for scrutiny;
(iv) materials obtained from the Imperial Record Office;
(v) reports of ministers and officers;
(vi) testing of evidence (by repeated interviews with the Emperor);
(vii) marshalling of facts with the help of the 'highest scientific experts';
(viii) after repeated revision (five times) the Akbar-nama was completed, involving strenuous labour of seven years.42

Like his grandfather, Shahjahan had the official history of his reign compiled, first by Mirza Aminai Qazvini, and then by Jalal-ud-Din Tabatabai and Abdul Hamid Lahori. Qazvini, a protege of Afzal Khan, and an imperial servant, wrote of the first ten years (1627–37), but he could not come up to the level of Abul Fazl. Shahjahan, therefore, replaced him and commissioned Abdul Hamid (d. 1654), patronised by Sadullah Khan, to write the history. With Abul Fazl as his model, he wrote a detailed account of the first twenty years, and then, on account of his old age, entrusted the work for the remaining period (21–30 years) to his pupil, Waris. Both Qazvini and Lahori were critical of Nurjahan, when dealing with Khurram's rebellion. About this work of Lahori it has been said: 'It enters into the most minute details of all the transactions in which the Emperor was engaged, the pensions and dignities conferred upon the various members of the royal family, the titles granted to the nobles, their changes of office, the augmentation of their mansabs, and it gives lists of all the various presents given and received on public occasions, such as the vernal equinox, the royal birthday, the royal accession, etc. Thus the work contains a great amount of matter of no interest to anyone but the nobles and courtiers of the time. But it would not be fair to say that it is filled with these
trifles; there is far too much of them; still there is a solid substratum of historical matter from which the history of the reign has been drawn by later writers.  

Following the tradition set by Akbar, Aurangzeb at first directed Mirza Muhammad Kazim, son of Muhammad Amin Munshi, to write his history (the Alamgir nama, 1688). ‘His style being approved by the King, he was ordered to collect information about all the extraordinary events in which the King had been concerned, and accounts of the bright conquests which he had effected, into a book; and accordingly an order was given to the officers in charge of the Royal Records to make over to the author all such papers as were received from the news-writers and other high functionaries of the different countries concerning the great events, the monthly and yearly registers of all kinds of accidents and marvels, and the descriptions of the different subas and countries.’ The Alamgir-nama is a courtly panegyric, ‘falsome in its flattery, abusive in its censure. Laudatory epithets are heaped one upon another in praise of Aurangzeb; while his unfortunate brothers are not only sneered at and abused, but their very names are perverted. Dara Shikoh is repeatedly called be-shikoh, ‘the undignified’: and Shuja is called na-shuja, ‘the unvaliant.’ But history writing was banned after the eleventh year by the Emperor on the professed ground that ‘the cultivation of inward piety was preferable to the ostentatious display of his achievements.’

It was Muhammad Saqi Mustaid Khan, (munshi of Inayatullah Khan, Wazir of Bahadur Shah) who had been in imperial service for forty years, and an eye-witness of many events, who compiled the full official history of Aurangzeb’s reign at the request of his patron, three years after his death (1710), from state papers and personal recollections. The first ten years is an abridgement of the Alamgir-nama but the remainder was original. On account of Aurangzeb’s prohibition he ‘secretly wrote an abridged account’ of the Deccan campaign, ‘simply detailing the conquests of the countries and forts without alluding to the misfortunes of the campaign.’

(d) PRIVATE HISTORIES

The private histories of the period, stimulated by the imperial patronage of literature, helped to supplement and, at times, correct the information derived from the eulogistic official annals of the period.

We know very little of (Mirza or) Khwaja Nizam-ud-Din (c. 1551–94). His father, Ahmad Khwaja Muqim Harawi (of Herat)
served under Babur, Humayun and Akbar—under the first as Diwan-i-buyutat (Diwan of the household), under the second as Wazir to Askari in Gujarat (1535) and under the third in some government work (1567). He also played a decisive part in terminating the intrigue to oust Humayun from the throne after Babur's death, and accompanied Humayun to Agra and in his defeat by Sher Khan at Chausa (1534). Khawja Nizam-ud-Din was a pupil of Mulla Ali Sher, a learned man, the father of Shaikh Illahadad, Faizi Sirhindi (the author of Akbar-nama). A well-educated and well-read man, Nizam-ud-Din was a student of history and literature. He learnt from his father the 'worth of historical writing,' followed his instructions in studying historical works and received his father's recollections also. In writing his Tabaqat, he had Mir Masum of Bhakkar, learned man and historian, as his associate. Nizam-ud-Din was one of the seven authors commissioned by Akbar to compile the Tarikh-i-Alfi (1582). Badauni describes him as 'a kind and complaisant man of wealth, orthodox and religiously disposed.' In fact he had association with 'Sufis, Shaikhs and religious people in general.'

But Nizam ud-Din knew the art of dissimulation well enough, because it was through it that this pious Muslim kept his religious view to himself and could manage to ascend the ladder of imperial favours. In 1589 he was recalled from Gujarat to the Court, where his orthodoxy came to be diluted by its atmosphere. Thus Nizam-ud-Din found it politic not to protest against Akbar's religious innovations. As Dr. Beni Prashad notes: 'Nizam-ud-Din's ruse in mentioning Shaikh Husain's name when some of the orthodox leaders were summoned to the Imperial Court, also indicates the skilful way in which he managed to keep himself safe from his own religious beliefs being questioned.'

Nizam-ud-Din was also a soldier and administrator. He was scrupulously upright and excelled his contemporaries in administrative knowledge. For long he was the Bakhshi of Gujarat. Later on his good record of service led to his recall to Court and he held the high office of the First Bakhshi (1591–92) as well. Of him Badauni has left this tribute: 'Khwaja Nizam-ud-Din left a good name behind him...There was not a dry eye at his death and there was no person who did not on the day of his funeral call to mind his excellent qualities.' His work, written in 1592–93, came to be regarded by all contemporary historians as a standard history, while later writers also borrowed freely from it.
Mulla Abdul Qadir, better known as Badauni (1540–1615), was born at Badaun. His father, Shaikh Muluk Shah, was a pupil of Saint Bechu of Sambhal. Badauni himself studied under Shaikh Hatim Sambhali and then, along with Faizi and Abul Fazl, under Shaikh Mubarak. Having studied many sciences under the most renowned and pious men of the age, he became a very learned man and excelled in music, history and astronomy. He cherished a great love of history from his childhood and spent his hours in reading or writing some history, as he himself wrote. In 1573 or 1574 he was introduced to Akbar, who was deeply impressed by the extent of his theological learning and ability to humble the Mulas, and appointed him Court Imam for his voice and gave him a maad-i maash of 1000 bighas of land. He was frequently employed by Akbar to translate Arabic and Sanskrit works (e.g., Mahabharata) into Persian. But he grew to be a hostile critic of Akbar, envious of Faizi and Abul Fazl (who threw him into the background), and dissatisfied with Akbar for his free thinking and eclectic religious views, administrative reforms and for his patronage of non-Muslims (to the disadvantage of the Muslims’ claim of monopoly of office and rewards). Unable to get the expected preference and advancement in imperial service and with his mind sore against the Emperor, he wrote his book in a spirit of frustration and expressed his glee at Akbar’s troubles. Badauni attributed the political troubles of Akbar’s reign i.e., the rebellions of Bihar and Bengal Afghans, the rebellion of Mirza Hakim etc., to divine wrath at Akbar’s administrative policy in curbing the Sadr’s power in granting lands. ‘The King disturbed our maad-i-maash land and God has now disturbed his country.’ His book is a check on the turgid panegyric of Abul Fazl. Though it was really an interesting work, it contained so much hostile criticism of Akbar that it was kept concealed during his life-time and could not be published till after the accession of Jahangir. It provided an index to the mind of the orthodox Sunni Muslims of Akbar’s days. According to Prof. S. R. Sharma, it is not very valuable except for the account of events in which Badauni himself took part. Moreland describes the work as reminiscences of journalism rather than history. Topics were selected less for their intrinsic importance than for their interest to the author, who presented the facts so selected coloured by his personal feelings and prejudices in bitter epigrammatic language, which has to be discounted. The author not only uses some uncommon words, but indulges in religious controversies, invectives, eulogiums, dreams, biographies and details of
personal and family history which interrupt the unity of the narrative... Yet these digressions are the most interesting portion of the work... His own extensive knowledge of contemporary history also induces him very often to presume that his reader cannot be ignorant of it. So he often slurs over many facts, or indicates them obscurely.  

Nevertheless, there can be no doubt that Badauni possessed an original mind. This is reflected in his notices of Islam Shah’s administration which breathes a secular spirit. His object was to write correctly. He writes in his preface: ‘Since the object of my ambition is to write correctly, if I should by accident let fall from my pen the instrument of my thoughts or commit in my thoughts, which are the motive agents of my pen, any slip or error, I hope that He, in accordance with His universal mercy which is of old, will overlook and pardon it.”

Muhammad Hashim or Hashim Ali Khan, better known as Khafi Khan, belonged to a good family migrating from Khwaf (in Khurasan district) and settling at Delhi. His father, Khwaja Mir, also an historian and a high officer under Murad Baksh, passed over to Aurangzeb’s service after the former’s death. Hashim Ali also grew up in Aurangzeb’s service and was engaged in various political and military offices. Most probably he was connected with some of his own countrymen (of Khwaf), who were collectors of customs at Surat. He was deputed by the Viceroy of Gujarat—because of his good acquaintance with Western India, on a mission to Bombay. He was appointed Diwan by Nizam-ul-Mulk of Hyderabad during the reign of Farrukh Siyar and hence called Nizam-ul-Mulki.

The Muntakhab-ul-Lubab or Tarikh-i-Khafi Khan is a complete history of the House of Timur, a history of the Mughals from Babur (1519 A. D ) to the fourteenth year of Muhammad Shah’s reign (1733). It was composed 53 years after Shivaji’s death. The introduction traces, in outline, the history of the Mughals and Tartars from Noah to Babur. The first part dealing with the period from Babur to Akbar is brief but clear. The major part is concerned with the period from 1605-1733. “It is chiefly valuable for containing an entire account of the reign of Aurangzeb, of which, in consequence of that Emperor’s well-known prohibition, it is very difficult to obtain a full and connected history. It is, however, to that very prohibition we are indebted for one of the best and most impartial histories of modern India.”

The period (1680-1733) was written, as he himself says, from ‘personal observations and verbal accounts of men.
who had watched the occurrences of the time.' He 'privately compiled a minute register of all the events' of Aurangzeb's reign.

Khafi Khan held a high ideal of the duty of an historian—'to be faithful, to have no hope of profit, no fear of injury, to show no partiality on one side or animosity on the other, to know no difference between friend and stranger, and to write nothing but with sincerity....' He used the information derived from official records (open to few but to which he had access) admirably. But he wrote from the official point of view. He describes Shivaji as a rebel against the empire and as the murdered of Afzal Khan Bijapuri. The chronogram of Shivaji's death was 'Kafr ba-jahannam raft.' Nevertheless, he praised Shivaji's chivalry very highly and observed that the Maratha leader strictly prohibited harm to 'Mosques, the Book of God, or Women.'

Mirza Muhammad Hasan, the author of Mirat-i-Ahmadi, belonged to a family of Persian emigrants. Born in 1700 at Burhanpur, where his father was a civil official in Aurangzeb's Deccan army, he accompanied his father to Gujarat in 1708, when it was bestowed in jagir on Prince Jahandar Shah. He was educated at Ahmadabad where his father was appointed Waqai-nigar or chief reporter of the Prince's minister, Sayyid Aqil Khan. After his father's death, he was appointed Superintendent of the cloth market, and ultimately became the Diwan of the province of Gujarat from 1747 to 1755, when it was annexed by the Marathas. Hence he was called the Khatim-ud-Diwani. Unusually intelligent and active, Mirza Muhammad was trained in the school of adversity. As Diwan he found the administration utterly disorganised in the anarchical condition of the empire's dissolution, civil wars and Maratha raids. He has described the anarchy and the information of the province collected after a diligent search. In writing this history of Gujarat (1000-1760), which took ten years to compile (1750-60), he was assisted by a Hindu assistant, Mithalal Kayeth, the hereditary suba-navis of Gujarat.

The Mirat-i-Ahmadi falls into two parts, marked by separate treatment. The period up to Aurangzeb is brief and derivative, being based on previous works like the Mirat-i-Sikandari, Akbar-nama, Padshah-nama etc. But the latter part (and the supplement) are original, based on the author's own experience and observations of the contemporary events, in many of which he himself took part. The Khatima of the Supplement is valuable for the detailed topographical description of Gujarat, lives of saints, the official classes, and
the administrative system in general.\textsuperscript{59}

**HINDU HISTORIANS OF MUGHAL INDIA:**

Apart from Muslim writers there were many Hindus who entered the arena of Indo-Persian historiography, after mastering the Persian language.

Brindaban, entitled Rai, son of Rai Bhara Mal (*Diwan* of Dara), the author of *Lubb-ut Tawarikh-i-Hind* (Marrow of Histories of India), had been initiated into a knowledge of public affairs early. His intention was to write a book 'which should briefly describe how and in what duration of time, those conquests (i.e., of the Timurides, including Aurangzeb) were achieved, should give the history of former kings their origin and the causes which occasioned their rise or fall......' He wanted to do so, because the defect of Firishta's work was 'that notwithstanding its being an abstract, it is in many parts too prolix.' He held his own work (wr. 1696) to be superior to those of others as he treated of 'the extensive and resplendent conquests' of Aurangzeb whose empire was unequalled except by that of 'Rum.'\textsuperscript{60}

Bhimsen Burhanpuri (b. 1649) left Burhanpur, the place of his birth, at the age of eight to join his father, Raghunandan Das, a Kayastha by caste, at Aurangabad. The latter was for sometime *Diwan* of the Deccan. A hereditary kayastha civil officer of the Mughals, Bhimsen spent his life in Mughal cities and camps of the Deccan and saw many places of India from Cape Comorin to Delhi. He was familiar with many high Mughal officers and took a leading part in the occurrences himself. A Bundela officer, he joined the service of Dalpat Rao, the chief of Datia (and descendant of Bir Singh Deo Bundela). In the Deccan campaign the Bundela Raja served as Lieutenant of Zulfiqar Khan, entitled Nusrat Jang, the distinguished general of Aurangzeb. His journal, *Nuskha-i-Dilkusha* (c. 1708–9) is very valuable, as supplementing the *Maasir-i-Alamgiri*. He looked at Aurangzeb's reign through the eyes of a contemporary Hindu. Living 'near enough to the Mughal officers to learn the events accurately but not near enough to the throne to be lying flatterers,' he 'knew the truth, and could afford to tell the truth.' He was free from the worst defects of official historians. He has supplied many things which are lacking in the complete official history of Aurangzeb's reign, viz., (1) causes and effects of events, (2) state of the country, (3) condition of the people, their amusements, (4) prices of food, (5) condition of roads, (6) social life of the official class and (7) incidents in Mughal warfare in the Deccan.
For Maratha history under Shivaji also it is of great value, in spite of its somewhat defective chronology. Bhimsen gives a high tribute to Shivaji's genius for organisation.

The following passages are revealing and show Bhimsen to be a social historian of the times:

'Ever since His Majesty had come to the throne he had not lived in a city but elected all these wars and hard marching, so that the inmates of his camp, sick of long separation, summoned their families to the camp and lived there. A new generation was thus born (under canvas)...only knew that in this world there is no other shelter than a tent...All administration has disappeared...'

'There is no hope of a jagir being left with the same officer next year...the collector does not hesitate to collect the rent with every oppression. The ryots have given up cultivation: the jagirdars do not get a penny.'

'One kingdom has to maintain two sets of jagirdars!...The peasants subjected to this double exaction collected arms and horses and joined the Marathas.'

He refers to Maratha risings being due to administrative exploitation and oppression on peasantry in areas near Maharashtra lands and the cultivators joined the Maratha deshmukhs and senapatis.61

Ishwardas Nagar, a Brahman of Patan in Gujarat (b. 1655), was the author of Fatuhat-i-Alamgiri (1731). Till 1685 he served the Shaikh-ul-Islam, Chief Qazi of the Empire. As the latter accompanied the Emperor in camp and court, the author had ample opportunity of knowing correct facts from the chief officials directly or from their servants. Subsequently he served under Shujaat Khan, Viceroy of Gujarat, 1684–1701. His history, Fatuhat-i-Alamgiri (wr. 1731) gives an account of Aurangzeb's reign up to his 34th year.62

It is rather difficult to group the medieval Muslim historians according to social status and class. For one thing our knowledge of the personal history of many historians is very limited, and secondly, because the social organisation of the times is also imperfectly known. Both Ashraf and Moreland have spoken of the upper, middle and lower classes. But the exact connotation of these is not specifically known. The difficulty arises especially in the Turko-Afghan period. Ashraf has referred to certain social classes among the Muslims,63 but how to place our historians among them is not very clear. Career in the court or army was the passport to social status, but to say that historians belonged to the courtier class
meant nothing in effect. Many rose to be courtiers and officers from comparatively obscure origins, and they cannot very well be regarded as belonging to the aristocratic or upper classes. Some historians, however, were highly educated and belonged to what may be called the intellectual class and middle class. Among historians and memoir writers who may be grouped under royal family were Firuz Tughluq, Timur, Babur, Jahangir, Gulbadan Begam and Mirza Haidar Dughlat. Among aristocratic class we may perhaps include Minhaj-ud-Din and Amir Khusrau. The *Maasir-ul-Umara* has given notices of Abul Fazl, Muhammad Saqi Mustaid Khan, Khwaja Nizam-ud-Din and Muhammad Hashim Ali Khan (Khafi Khan) among others, and from that we may be tempted to include them among the peerage. But perhaps socially speaking the majority of the historians of the Mughal age were members of the educated, middle class intelligentsia and not members of the aristocracy as such. Most of the medieval historians or writers were either immigrants themselves e.g., al-Biruni (from Khwarazm), Hasan Nizami (from Naishapur), or descendants of foreign immigrant families, e.g. Minhaj (from Juzjan, between Merv and Balkh), Shaikh Abul Fazl (Hijazi family), Khwaja Nizam-ud-Din (Herat family), Mirza Amin-ul-Qazvini (Qazvin), Firishta (from Astarabad), Mirza Muhammad Hasan (Persian emigrant family), Khafi Khan (Khurasani emigrant family). Many were definitely of Indian origin i.e., Hindustanis e.g., Zia-ud-Din Barani, Amir Khusrau, Yahya, Abdul Qadir Badauni and Abdul Hamid Lahori. Jauhar, Humayun’s *aftabchi*, was a menial, who rose to be an officer.

**CONCLUSION**

The problem of historical objectivity is of primary significance for the philosophy of history. It is generally admitted that there is a subjective element in historical thinking, which changes or limits the nature of expected objectivity. The impersonality of physics cannot be expected in history, which is sometimes described as a science of men, or science of the mind. The question arises whether and in what sense medieval Indian historians were objective. This brief outline of personal history of some representative medieval Indian historians and their writings would indicate their outlook and attitudes. In the first place there is the question of personal bias. It would appear that there are some definite instances of how their ideas and view-points were coloured by their personal affairs, their
likes and dislikes. Some historians of the Turko-Afghan period and Mughal official historians have admired great men. In such cases history centred round ideas and actions of the hero. In those days it was difficult for the majority of writers to openly express antipathy to great men. But there were some notable exceptions, e. g., al-Biruni and Isami in the Turko-Afghan period. During the Mughal period, Badauni’s history had to be kept concealed during Akbar’s time, because of his invectives against Akbar. Bhimsen has, in a way, criticised Aurangzeb’s prolonged warfare in the Deccan against the Marathas and he could afford to do so.

In the second place, there is the question of group prejudices. This covers prejudices or assumptions of historians belonging to a certain group, nation, race or social class or religion. Such assumptions are more subtle or widespread in their operation than mere bias and less amenable to detection or correction than personal likes or dislikes. Religious beliefs may be a matter of rational conviction and may not be a product of irrational prejudice. So its influence on the historians’ thinking may be regarded as being inevitable or perfectly proper. In those days religion was the determining basis of thinking of historians and they placed history at the service of religion. The early Indo-Moslem historians accepted the Muslim world order and used history to serve the cause of religion and theology, to glorify Islam—exclusively concentrating on the deeds of Muslims and regarding the Hindus as passive instruments—as victims of the sword, converts or jiziya payers. They acted as historians of a religious group, not of the whole people.

But it is doubtful if personal bias or group prejudice of the kind discussed above is a serious obstacle to attaining objectivity in history, because such bias or prejudice can be corrected or at any rate allowed or guarded against.

More subtle than personal ideas or group prejudices were underlying philosophical, moral or metaphysical beliefs—ultimate judgments of value in understanding the past, conception of the nature of man and his place in universe. Medieval historians of India approached the past with their own philosophical ideas which decisively affected their way of interpretation of history. Their theories of historical interpretation differed from the modern. In the first place, to a medievalist history was not due to human action but divine intervention. If divine decree decided the course of events, there was no need to interpret history with reference to complex social or economic forces. Barani, Afif, Yahya, Amir Khusrau, Isami, all
believed in divine intervention in history. In Mughal period also the attitude of divine ordination was noticeable, but now the humanistic aspect of history became more marked and the divine causation less prominent than in the Turko-Afghan age.

Secondly, history was interpreted in terms of conventional religio-ethical background. Historians like Isami and Yahya tried to satisfy their readers who wanted a popular, religious, and moral avoidance of vanities of a wicked world. Abul Fazl used the *Akbar-nama* to support Akbar’s claim to supreme temporal and spiritual authority. He tried to give an academic justification and an intellectual propaganda to Akbar’s ideas of kingship. Badauni reflected the orthodox Sunni point of view.

Thirdly, Indo-Muslim historians like Barani, Yahya, Amir Khusrau, emphasized the didactic element in history. In the Mughal period, however, it diminished though some historians like Abul Fazl and Nizam-ud-Din referred to the moral value of history.

REFERENCES

1. Elliot and Dowson, Vol. II. pp. 2–3.
11. Elliot and Dowson, Vol. II, pp. 259–66; Raverty’s Intro.
15. Elliot and Dowson, Vol. IV, pp. 6–7; Hardy, *Historians of Medieval India*, Chapter 4.
21. Ibid., p. 429.
22. Ibid., p. 400.
24. Ibid.
25. Ibid.
26. Ibid.
27. Ibid., pp. 428–9.
28. Ibid.
29. Ibid., p. 397.
32. Elliot and Dowson, Vol. VI, p. 282.
33. Ibid., pp. 251–5 ; Rogers and Beveridge Vol. I ; S R. Sharma, Bibliography of Mughal India.
34. Mrs. Beveridge, Tr. of Humayun-nama ; I. Prasad, Life and Times of Humayun.
35. Quoted in Erskine I.
39. S. Banerji, Humayun Padshah, I. 261 ; 123n. 3.
41. J. N. Sarkar, Trans of Maasir-i-Alamgiri, Preface III.
43. Maasir-ul-Umara I, 4, 391 ; B. P. Saxena : III-V ; Elliot and Dowson, Vol. VII, p. 4.
44. Ibid., p. 175.
45. Ibid., p. 177.
46. Ibid., pp. 181–183 ; J. N. Sarkar, Maasir-i-Alamgiri (Eng. tr.) Intro ; Studies in Mughal India, Maasir-ul-Umara Eng. tr. I. p. 4, n7 ; 666.
47. Badauni, Haig III. 137, 138, 151 ; Lowe II. 309.
49. Elliot and Dowson, Vol. V, pp. 480.
50. Badauni.
51. Sharma, Bibliography of Mughal India, 38–39.
52. Moreland, Agrarian System of Moslem India.
53. Elliot and Dowson, Vol. V, p. 481.
54. M. U. Eng. Cr. 1 ; E. D. V., 477 ff ; Eng. tr. by Ranking, Lowe, and Haig ; Presidential Address, Indian History Congress (1955) Sec. IV by Sarkar.
56. Ibid., p. 207.
57. Khafi Khan, II. 726 ; E. D. VII (S. Gupta edn. 53–4) ; M. U. Eng. Tr. I, 4, 32, 47, 70, 226 ; II. 139, 468.
60. E. D. VII. 168–170.
62. J. N. Sarkar: *op. cit*.
63. The following is the order of their status: the Sultan, the royal family, the Khans and others of noble rank, the Sayyids, the ‘Ulama’, the aristocrats in general, the assignment-holders (under Mughals, the Mansab-dars), the great functionaries of State, the leaders of the various clans, the corps of royal pages, the keepers of the royal purse, the members of the royal guard (Jirga?), the household attendants of the Sultan, and his menial and domestic servants. They were further divided according to their grades into upper, middle, and lower classes. This classification overlaps in many places and is obviously unscientific, but it gives a general view of the ruling classes of Hindustan during the period under review. (K. M. Ashraf, *Life and Condition*, etc., 54).
A SURVEY AND GENERAL ESTIMATE OF THE IMPORTANCE OF HISTORICAL SOURCES IN REGIONAL LANGUAGES, WITH REFERENCE TO RAJASTHAN AND GUJARAT

P. Saran

The early British and European scholars who directed their attention to the study of the medieval period of Indian history, (by which term they understood the period under Muslim rule only) based their studies almost wholly on Persian chronicles. The scope of these chronicles, which comprised the bulk of this body of source material, was extremely limited, in as much as their authors were mainly interested in recording primarily the lives and activities, the deeds and misdeeds, of rulers and conquerors alone. In their view it was not the business of history to take notice of the common masses, or of the various facets of the rise and progress of human society. These chronicles, however, admirably answered the purpose of the above mentioned western writers whose conception of history was not very different from that of the Persian chroniclers. Consequently history writing remained extremely limited in scope. No wonder that the picture of society which it presented remained extremely incomplete and lopsided.

But the view that India possessed no national history nor any historical compositions worth the name persisted despite the well-merited rebuke administered by Tod as early as the early thirties of the last century. Apart from other reasons for the paucity of chronological works like those found mostly in Persian, Tod also had very aptly pointed out that to ‘expect from a people like the Hindus a species of compositions of precisely the same character as the historical works of Greece and Rome’ would be ‘to commit the egregious error’ of forgetting the peculiar tradition born of the outlook and attitude of the Hindus in respect of all their literary productions. Tod was not alone in giving this warning to students of Indian history and culture. Eminent scholars and savants like G. Buhler, Bhau Daji, Bhagwan Lal Indraji, Sir Aurel Stein, A. K. Forbes, L. P. Tessity and others also from time to time drew attention to the fallacious notion that there was almost complete
absence of historical literature in the pre-Muslim Indian literature of India.

Tod was followed by a band of scholars, like Kaviraj Shyamaldas, Bhau Daji, Bhagwan Lal Indraji, G.H. Ojha and others, whose writings should have served to dispel the popular idea of lack of historical literature in Samskrit, Hindi and other languages of the country. But during the last century an increasing amount of historical source-material has come to light which covers a far wider field than that to which the Persian historiographers generally confine their writings. This type of historical material which is literally bestrewn all over Rajasthan (and Gujarat and Malwa too), both in public and private collections, affords a wealth of information on the various aspects of the life of the people, their social traditions, their beliefs and institutions, their progress in the economic, industrial and commercial spheres, no less than on their unrivalled achievements in the fields of literature and sciences, both physical and super-physical, which is what mattered most in the context of the Indian historical process.

Simultaneously with the growing zeal for the discovery and preservation of these treasures, several institutions have been doing admirable service by bringing out learned and critically annotated editions of a large number of literary and historical works in Samskrit and other languages which have from time to time been the media of early writings. But with the brilliant and perhaps the single exception of the great Italian savant, Dr. L.P. Tessitory, no systematic attempt was made before, or since, to classify and catalogue the existing materials. But even Tessitory covered a limited field. A survey recently carried out in Rajasthan with this object in view, revealed the existence of hundreds of collections of manuscripts and other valuable materials. We may in passing also refer here to the very plentiful epigraphical material which continues to be enriched by the new discoveries made by the Department of Archaeology and other agencies engaged in this field. For the early medieval period, pertaining specially to Gujarat, the most outstanding name is that of G. Buhler, a polyhistor and scholar of stupendous learning who rendered invaluable service in the search and recovery of a large number of historical works and, indeed, laid the foundations of Indological Studies on a solid basis in Western India. He was followed by Bhau Daji of Sawantwadi and Bhagwan Lal Indraji, a Gujarati scholar.

During the last three quarters of a century the materials for
the later period have been utilised by just a handful of scholars. After Tod, the pioneer work in this field was done by Kaviraj Shyamaldas, court poet of Maharana Sajjan Singh (1874–1884) of Mewar. Kaviraj Shyamaldas in his monumental history, entitled *Vir Vinod* which runs into nearly 2800 pages, has covered a very wide field of the history and geography of the whole of Rajasthan. The author has also brought together a large amount of statistical material on the political, economic and administrative aspects of Rajasthan. He has also given copies of many inscriptions as well as *farmans* etc., of the Mughal kings. Thus this great work will ever remain a standard work of reference on the political history of Rajasthan. Two other outstanding names among the modern historians of Rajasthan are G.H. Ojha and Harbimal Sarda. Ojha's work is literally of stupendous proportions. Besides his histories of Mewar, Marwar, Sirohi and other states of Rajasthan, Ojha's contribution to the cultural history of medieval India is extremely valuable. He wrote a large number of essays (*nibandhas*) which have been collected and published in several volumes. But his lectures on medieval Indian culture—*Madhyakalin Bhartiya Samskriti*—delivered under the auspices of the Hindustani Academy, Allahabad (1928), constitute perhaps the only comprehensive treatment of the subject. His most monumental contribution, however, to the study of ancient and medieval India is his *Bhartiya Prachin Lipimala* (The Paleography of India) (revised edn. 1918), the first book of its kind in Hindi or any other language. Harbimal Sarda, a versatile scholar and writer of note, made an exhaustive study of original Samskrit and Hindi sources for his excellent history of Ajmer and his biographies of Ranas Kumbha, Sangram Singh and others. Following them an ever increasing number of scholars in the last couple of decades have turned their attention to these sources. Much creditable historical literature has been produced by Dr. Raghubir Singh, Prof. Dasrath Sarma, the Nahata brothers, and many others. The work done by these scholars has of late drawn the attention of younger researchers over a wider area to the urgency and importance of making use of this hitherto untapped source-material. It is gratifying to note, for instance, that a beginning in this direction has been made in the History Department of the Aligarh Muslim University, besides, of course, in the universities and other academic institutions in Rajasthan.

Nevertheless, what has so far been done is but a drop in the ocean, for a very large section of scholars, hidebound by outdated
notions, both in respect of the time span of medieval India as well as the sources of its history, are still supremely ignorant of this body of source-material. This ignorance has also been responsible for the equally widely prevalent misconception that the age to which we give the name medieval was only the one covered by Muslim rule, that is to say, from about the 11th century to the middle of the 18th. The five or more centuries of our history preceding the 11th century, which constituted the seedbed of both the subsequent achievements as well as decline and decay of Indian society, are simply ignored as of no consequence and possessing no historical interest. This span of no less than half a millenium is dismissed as a historical vacuum. It is high time that those who have so far eschewed the study of the pre-Turkish period, and have confined themselves to Persian and foreign sources alone, denying themselves the profit to be derived from the vast wealth of indigenous material in the regional languages, acquainted themselves with Sanskrit, Hindi and its several sister languages to enable themselves to use the enormous amount of material extant in these languages. Our parochialism has naturally bred a cramped outlook and narrow vision in regard to the comprehension of our history and our heritage.

Besides a few monographs on the early ruling dynasties, such as the Gurjarapratiharas, Gahadwars, Chauhans, Chandels and Paramars, the most notable work on this period (early medieval India) was done by C. V. Vaidya and H. C. Ray*. But such is the dominance of deepseated traditional ideas and approach to the study of the so-called medieval age, that scarcely anything substantial has been done to carry further the new ground broken by Vaidya and Ray.

*Comparative values of Persian and non-Persian Sources. Among the many fashionable fictions relating to the medieval age and its sources which are widely current and accepted almost as axiomatic truths, and, which have greatly hindered historical enquiry and research, is the belief that Persian chronicles alone satisfy the standards of historical writing, while rarely does any such authentic or reliable historical work exist in the regional indigenous languages. Concerning the character and concept of historiography we have quoted Tod (supra para 2), to show that it would be a blunder to seek in Hindu literature the same pattern of historical writings as that of the Persian chroniclers, a large majority of whom never regarded any aspect of the life of the common people as worthy of being included in history. As a result, the bulk of the so-called
Persian historical literature is loaded with jejune chronicles of the lives of the high and mighty. As regards their historical value, apart from many of them being sadly deficient in dates, what is far more important is the extreme unreliability of their narratives marred as they are, oftener than not, by their personal predilections, leading to suggestio falsi and suppressio veri, by their psychophancies and fanaticism and their likes and dislikes. These shortcomings of the chroniclers have provided to some scholars an easy excuse to reject what is unsuitable and to accept what is suitable to their pre-conceived purpose. On the other hand, the unquestioning and uncritical acceptance of the written word has resulted in the production of numerous works professing to be histories, but which on close scrutiny would appear to be more fiction than history. Thus the various shortcomings mentioned above are common to all classes of historical literature. The non-Persian historical literature, however, is in general marked by certain peculiarities which, of course, have their own merits as well as demerits. The first conspicuous characteristic of most of the Hindi (used in its wider sense) chronicles is that in their genealogical lists they give not only the year and month of a significant event, such as birth, accession, death etc., of a person, but also the day, the hour and even the palas. But this need not surprise any one who knows that a long standing custom with all those whose duty it was to keep such records, was to note all these minute details as a matter of sacred obligation.

Another notable feature of a substantial body of this literature is that it throws light, directly or indirectly, on the various aspects of the life and achievements of the people. But many of the court histories and epigraphical records of the Rajput chiefs beat their Persian comppeers hollow in the most ridiculous and impossible claims they make about the glorious achievements of their heroes. Nevertheless, there are many works more reliable and far richer in content, in Sanskrit, Apabhramsha, as well as in Hindi.

It has come to be well established by now that the dynastic lists contained in the Puranas such as Matsya, Vayu, Vishnu and Bhagwat, are quite authentic down to the Nanda, Maurya, Shunga, Kansa and Andhra dynasties. Thereafter although a small fraction of the enormous literary wealth of medieval India has survived, still a fairly large number of historical works come to light. We have said above that a large number of historical or semi-historical works were brought to light especially by the efforts of the cele-
brated German Scholar, G. Buhler and others—most of these are either *Charitas* or *Prabandhas*, i.e., biographical sketches of Jain scholars or collections of historical legends. We give below the names of a few important historical works of the medieval period:

In his *Life of Hemchandrabhacharya*, Buhler (Eng. Tr. from original German by Mani Lal Patel), (Singhi Jain Series, No. 11 1936) mentions the following *Prabandhas*:

*Prabhavakacharitra*, a collection of life-sketches of 22 Jain Acharyas, of Prabhachandra and Pradyumna Suri, (Circa 1250).

Prabandhachintamani of Merutunga, originally utilised by A. K. Forbes, in his *Ras Mala* (History of Gujarat) and translated into English by C. H. Tawney. Hindi translation by H. P. Dwivedi, (Singhi Jain Ser. 1929). This is a vast collection of historical legends which, according to Buhler, are of considerable historical value. The author Merutung of Vardhamanwa, Kathiawad completed it in 1305–6. The *Prabandhas* are stories of the lives of Jain saints and monks. Despite their legendary tone the *Prabandhas* do contain much that is corroborated by the inscriptions and other reliable sources (Buhler, *Life of Hemchandrabhacharya*, p. 4).

*Prabandh Kosh* by Rajshekhar, a collection of the biographies of famous monks, poets and statesmen completed in Dhilli (Delhi) in V. S. 1405 i.e., 1348–49 A.D.

*Kumarpalcharita*, by Jinmandan Upadhyaya, completed in 1435–36 A.D.

There were three major biographies of king Kumarpal Chaulukya, all named *Kumarpal Charit* by three authors, viz., Jaisingh Suri, Charitra Sundar Gani and Jinmandanopadhyaya. But the renowned Jain Acharya Hemchandra made a compendium of more than a score biographies of King Kumarpal Chaulukya (b. 1092, accession 1142, d. 1173). This collection has been published under the title of *Kumarpal Charitra Sangraha* in the Singhi Jain Series (No. 41, 1956).

Hemchandracharya also wrote two more historical *kavyas* of the same name, *dvayashraya mahakavya*, one in Sanskrit and the other in Prakrit. The first gives a summary of the history of the Chaulukya dynasty, and the second contains an account of the life
of Kumarapala.

*Harsha Charit* (S)⁴ of Bana Bhatta, court poet of Emperor Harshavardhan.

*Gaudvaha* (Pr.) by Vakpatiraj (8th century) court poet of Yashovaranman. Describes the conquest of Bengal by Yashovarman.

*Narasahasankcharit* (S), by Padma Gupta alias Parimal (Late 10th century). Life of Vakpati Munja, ruler of Malwa (975–995).

*Bhoj Prabandh* by Ballal—Early 11th century, contains an account of the administration of Raja Bhoja.

*Vikramankdeva Charit* (S)—Bilhana (Early twelfth century)—Life and times of king Vikramank, Chaulukya of Kalyani, (1076–1126).

*Rama Charit* (S)—Sandhyakar Nandi (late 11th century). History of Rampal of Pal Dynasty of Bengal.

*Rajatarangini* (S) by Kalhana (1148–50)—History of Kashmir. The author says that in preparing his history he consulted as many as fourteen histories of Kashmir.

*Rajatarangini* (S) by Jonaraj, a contemporary of Sultan Zain-ul-Abidin of Kashmir (1411–1463), is continuation of Kalhana’s work.

*Rajatarangini* (S) by Jonaraja died in 1434, is Shrivarana Pandit, pupil of Jonaraja, took up his teacher’s unfinished work. Shrivarana received patronage from Zain-ul-Abidin and his son and grandson, Haidar Shah and Husain Shah. Shrivarana’s history covers the period (1434–1479), up to the accession of Fath Shah.

4th *Rajatarangini* is the work of two authors, Prajyabhatta and Shuka. Shuka tells us that Prajyabhatta wrote a work called *Raja- valipataka*, which recorded the events up to the Kaliyuga 4589 i.e., A. D. 1486. When Fath Shah was reigning. After this Shuka, who was a contemporary of Akbar, seems to have brought down the story of Kashmir to 1588, in which year, according to Abul Fazl, the *Rajatarangini* was presented to the Emperor when he first visited
the Valley.

Prithviraja Vijaya (S)—Jayanak (Jairath), a Kashmiri, court poet of king Prithviraja Chauhan. Wrote his work sometime between 1178–1200. It is a reliable history of his patron.

Hammir madmardan (S)—Jaisingh Suri (12th century). Describes the war between Mohammad Ghuri and Bhim II Chalukya.

Hammir mahakavya (S)—Nayachandra Suri. History of Hammirdeva of Ranthambhor who was defeated by Ala-ud-Din Khalji in 1298.

Vastupal Charit (S)—Jinaharsha Gani (13th century). Life of Mahamatya Vastupal, the wealthy merchant prince and minister of king Virdhaval of Dhavalakka (Dholka in Ahmedabad Dist.). Virdhaval was a feudatory of king Bhim II Chalukya of Anhilwada, Patan, in 13th century. (See Mahamatya Vastupal and his literary circle by B. J. Sandesan, (Bahadur Singh—Memoirs Ser. No. 3, 1953).

Mandalikmahakavya (S)—Gangadhar Pandit.

Most of these are in Sanskrit and some in Prakrit.

The above list comprises only a few of the historical and semi-historical works of the early medieval period. Almost all of them are concerned with north Indian history.

For the later period we have a large variety of historical literature which is divided under the following categories:

Abhilekh, Ilqabnama, Utpattigranth, Alitiasik Tippan, Kursmnama, Khyat, Gajjil, Charit, Jas, Janmpatri, Jivani, Tahqiqat, Daftar Bahi, Patta, Parwana, Ruqqa, Pattavali, Pidhiavali, Bat or Vart, Prashasti, Yad-dasht, Raso, Rasia or Rasa, Vigat, Vashavali or Bansavali.

Besides these many terms signifying names of different classes of Government records were adopted from the Mughal administrative terminology, such as awarija, parwana, rukka, sanad, siula baqaya, etc., all of which are preserved in Rajasthan archives at Bikaner.5

Finally, a few Sanskrit and Hindi works bearing on the history of the Mughal period may by mentioned with a view to drawing the
attention of the students of history to the fact that these documents afford a wealth of data and information on those aspects which are generally ignored by Persian Chroniclers.

One of the most interesting and illuminating is a biography of a Jain saint, named Bhanuchandra Gani, who was a contemporary of the Emperor Akbar, by another Jain saint, Siddhichandra Upadhyaya (published in the Singhi Jain Series). This is a most authentic and honest account as we know from the author’s own confession. Besides giving an account of the life of the saint, the author has given a most glowing account of the great Emperor and his numerous acts of social uplift and of the extraordinary qualities of the head and heart of the Emperor and of his great minister Abul Fazl. The author pays his homage to the versatile qualities of the Emperor in these words of profound appreciation: ‘There is not a single art, not a single branch of knowledge, not a single act of boldness and strength which was not attempted by the young Emperor.” The author is full of praise for the brilliance of intellect and wide range of knowledge of Abul Fazl, in whose company he had the opportunity to pass many years. He says: ‘He (Abul Fazl) had gone through the ocean of the whole literature and he was the best among all men of learning. There is nothing in literature which was not seen or heard by him.”

Another remarkable work which deserves notice is an autobiographical work by a rather extraordinary man named Banarsi Das (1586–1643 A. D.) a contemporary of Akbar, Jahangir and Shahjahan. Born in a wealthy family of merchants of U. P., Banarsi Das went through many vicissitudes of fortune and was once reduced to utter penury. But he was also a poet of no mean parts. The most extraordinary trait however of this author’s character is that in his autobiography (which is called Ardh-Kathanak, meaning half the story of his life because, when he wrote, in 1641, he was 55 years old, and expected to live the full span of five scores and ten although as ill-luck would have it, he died within two years, in 1643). Banarsi Das stands outside himself, as it were, and views the incidents of his life, no less his actions, with the perfect detachment of an observer and mirrors them with such conspicuous honesty and frankness that we are left simply amazed. He makes a clean confession of all the shady and puerile actions in which he had indulged, and of his living incognito as a penniless man at Agra. His memoir gives evidence on every page of that rarest of gifts, viz., to see ourselves as others see us and of having in ample measure that essential
ingredient of humanity, the capacity to laugh at one's ownself. Incidentally he throws interesting light on conditions of trade and commerce, and on the security of roads and communications. He also furnishes first hand evidence of the extreme cheapness of necessaries of life, even in the capital of Agra.

Many more similar works can come to light if a proper and perseverant search is made. It may not be out of place here to stress the historical value of the writings, mostly poetical, of the large number of Hindu scholars and poets who were patronised by not only kings and emperors and provincial rulers, but also by nobles and other men of consequence.

It would suffice to mention only a couple of instances by way of illustration. Perhaps the most distinguished among the Hindu poets patronised by the great Akbar was Govind Bhatta, on whom the Emperor conferred the title Akbariya-Kalidas. From the writings of this poet, (which are generally prasastis or panegyrics) we learn of the generous and extensive encouragement given by the Mughals to the regeneration of Hindu culture through the medium of Sanskrit. The name of Jagannath Panditraj is well known as the illustrious among the Hindu court poets of the 17th century. He was the recipient of great favours from Asaf Khan, as well as from the Emperor Shahjahan, and wrote Asaf Vilas in praise of his patron. The writings of these poets give us an insight into the trends of the so-called higher society, both Hindu and Muslim. They serve to reflect the confused and unsettled psychological state of the Muslim grandees on the one hand, and the sychophantic atmosphere of the later Mughal court on the other. But at the same time we may not fail to notice the closeness of different communities and the growth of a harmonious and healthy social fabric, oblivious of its sectional particularisms and differences, in contemporary Hindi literature, including the Hindi poetic efforts of some of the later Emperors. The Nadirat-i-Shahi, published by the Rampur State Library (1944), is a collection of Hindi (Hindustani) poems of Emperor Shah Alam II. The poems paint a lifelike picture of the social and religious life of the darbar and of the city people. We get here glimpses of how the emperor enjoyed the Hindu festivals like Holi and Diwali in the company of his Muslim and Hindu courtiers. We learn also about the many varieties of musical instruments, fireworks, fruits and flowers, nauroz, wedding and birth day ceremonies and other festivities, in which both the communities joined with equal enthusiasm. The Emperor was so fond of Holi that he composed scores of beauti-
ful couplets on Holi or Hori.

It is well-known that Shah Alam II was a most tragic figure among those who occupied the throne of the great Mughals. He gave most poignant expression to his pitiable and helpless state in a couplet which he addressed to Mahadji Sindhia when at the latter’s call he discarded the British shelter at Allahabad and came over to Delhi.

A recent survey in some of the temples and other private collections of Rajasthan revealed the existence of manuscripts and other types of documents bearing upon economic, political, and social conditions, on art and architecture, weights and measures and a host of other interesting subjects. Above two hundred manuscripts and some printed rare works were selected and were utilised for preparing a model descriptive catalogue for the help and guidance of researchers. But the mass of such material in Rajasthan alone is so vast that it calls for immediate attention on the part of government and academic bodies so that it may be salvaged, preserved and suitably catalogued before it is destroyed by climate or neglect.

REFERENCES

1. See Tod’s Introduction to Annals and Antiquities of Rajasthan.
2. History of Hindu Medieval India 3 Vols., and Dynastic History of Northern India 2 Vols., both appeared in the 20s of the present century. In 1960 another scholarly work, ‘Socio-Economic History of Northern India (1030–1194) by B. P. Mazumdar has come out. A few more monographs on the History Gahadvalas, Chandels, both in Hindi and English, have also appeared.
3. A pala is equal to 24 seconds.
4. S stands for Sanskrit and Pr. for Prakrit.
5. For details see the author’s ‘Descriptive Catalogue of Non-Persian Sources of Medieval Indian History.’
6. ‘Neither have I exaggerated out of arrogance nor have I underestimated out of meekness. Whatever actually happened has been described here.’
7. p. VII.
8. p. VII.
9. Cf. Introducing India (R. A. Soc. of Bengal; Monograph Part II) p. 84.
SOME NON-MUSLIM SOURCES OF THE HISTORY OF THE PUNJAB DURING THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD

GANDA SINGH

The Punjab during the medieval period of Indian history was governed by Muslims who came from the north-west. They spoke either Turkish or Pushto or Persian. But Pushto had not as yet fully developed as a literary language. And as the Persians held political sway over the Afghans for a long time, their language was adopted by the Afghan scholars and they wrote their historical works in that language. In addition to the Turks and the Afghans, there were also a number of Persians who came to the Punjab, and later to the Sultanate of Delhi, either in the train of the invaders or in search of employment. Some of them were good scholars. The language of their works on history, biography, travels, religion, etc., was mostly Persian as also of the official records of the state. Thus Persian came to be established in the country as the official language of the government.

In spite of the richness and importance of the Persian sources, there is also another type of literature which, unfortunately, has escaped the notice of historians. It is written in the vernaculars of the country, and it throws a flood of light on the social, religious, economic and political life both of the people and of the ruling classes. It has been preserved in the sayings of the leaders of religious movements which took birth in India during the medieval period. In the Punjab the most important movement was that of the Sikhs, which not only influenced the life of the people in various spheres but also helped them to develop into a distinct community and grow into a political power, which in the eighteenth century uprooted the Mughal rule and drove away the Afghans from their land.

The Sikh movement was founded by Guru Nanak (1469–1539) during the reign of the Lodi Sultans, and rose to its zenith with the creation of the Khalsa in 1699 under Guru Gobind Singh during the last decade of the reign of Emperor Aurangzeb. The sayings of the first five and the ninth Gurus are embodied in the Guru Granth Sahib and of the 10th Guru in the Dasam Granth. In addition to the reli-
gious teachings of the Gurus, a study of which is necessary to understand and interpret the various events during their lives and in the later history of the Sikhs, there are a large number of hymns in the two Granths which have direct historical significance as true pen-pictures of the social, religious and political conditions of those days.

Guru Nanak had first hand knowledge of the condition of the people under the Lodis and the first two Mughals and of the attitude of the ruling class towards the people. He was an eye witness to the massacre of the people of Saidpur (Aminabad) during the third Indian expedition of Babur (1520–21), and his description of it is of greater historical importance than any other that has come down to us. His revolt against the age-old formalism and protests against the slavish mentality of the Indian people in giving up their language, dress, etc., just to please the ruling class are reflected in his Asa di Var, while a large number of Shabads in the Granth refer to the reforms introduced by him and his successors and to the gradual growth and evolution of the Sikh thought and community and to several other events of those days.

Bhai Gurdas (1551–1629), the author of Varan, was a contemporary of the five Sikh Gurus, from Guru Angad to Guru Hargobind, and was closely associated with the last four of them. He has devoted some eighty-five pauris to the religious, social and political conditions of the people before the advent of Guru Nanak, to the Guru’s travels to the Hindu and Muslim places of worship, to his discourses with the Pandits, Sidhs and Mallas and to the lives of other Gurus. In addition, he has given the names of prominent Sikhs of the days of the Gurus and of the leaders of Sikh congregations in and outside the Punjab up to the time of the sixth Guru Hargobind.

With the rise of schismatic tendencies during the time of the fifth Guru Arjun’s elder brother, Prithi Chand, and his son, Meharban, there was a considerable enthusiasm for producing biographical and other literature for propaganda purposes. In March, 1932, Bawa Udham Singh of Lahore presented to the Khalsa College, Amritsar, a manuscript collection of stories (Sakhis) and compositions of Meharban and Harji, written by some followers of theirs during the seventeenth century. Later, I discovered an account of Meharban and his descendants written by one Darbari. Professor Pritam Singh of Patiala has recently secured some more manuscripts of Meharbanic literature which throw considerable light on the literary and other activities of Prithi Chand’s descendants. Their
compositions, with the pen name of ‘Nanak,’ added to them in the same way as was done by the Sikh Gurus, is indicative of their attempt to establish themselves as rivals of the Gurus, Arjun and Hargobind, and to pass their own compositions for those of Guru Nanak and his recognized successors. This was evidently one of the causes which prompted Guru Arjun to collect and put together the genuine compositions of the Gurus and compile them in 1604 into an authorized volume known as the Adi Guru Granth Sahib. The original copy of what we may call the first draft of the Holy Volume is still preserved with the Sodhi ‘Guru’ at Kartarpur (Julundur).

Meharban’s Janam Sakhi of Guru Nanak, edited by Kirpal Singh, was published by the Khalsa College, Amritsar, in 1965. The manuscript copies of the writings of Sohdi Meharban and his descendants are preserved in the collections of the Sikh Reference Library, S. G. P. C., Amritsar.

Next to Bhai Gurdas is Bhai Bhalo of Phaphre-Bhai-ke, near Mansa in the district of Bhatinda. He was a contemporary of Guru Arjun and died in Chetra (Sudi 9) 1660 BK., 1604, A. D. His shloks, vaks and sitharfs occasionally refer to his conversations with the Guru and represent the master’s teachings in the truest sense. In his Suchak Prasang Guru ka he gives a brief summary of the life of Guru Nanak as narrated to Guru Angad by Bhai Bala, a companion of the first Guru. This also helps to remove doubts about Bhai Bala, who apparently was a companion of the Guru at Talwandi Rai Bhoi (now called Nankana Sahib, in West Pakistan), and Sultanpur Lodhi.

The Varan of Natha, a Dhadi or a bard, of the village Sur Singh, contains a detailed account of the battles of Guru Hargobind whose contemporary he is said to be. I am inclined to believe that he is the same person as Nath Mall, who wrote and recited the Amar-nama in Persian at the darbar of Guru Gobind Singh at Nander in the Deccan in September, 1708, describing the visit of the Guru to the hermitage of Madho Das (renamed Banda Singh) on the occasion of the solar eclipse on September 3, and of the complaint of the people of the town to Emperor Bahadur Shah about the conversion of Madho Das into Banda Singh. The Varan (regarding the Sixth Guru) were mentioned by Karam Singh in one of his articles in the Phulvari, Amritsar, but its whereabouts are not known at present. The Amar nama is, however, available in print, published by the Sikh History Society, Amritsar/Patiala in 1953.

Shri Samarthancha Bakhar (a life-story of Shri Samarth Ramdas
in Marathi) by Hanumant Swami describes the meeting of the great Maratha saint with the sixth Sikh Guru, Hargobind, at Sri Nagar in Garhwal in about the year 1634. The *Bukhar*, read along with *Sakhi 39* of the *Panjah Sakhian*, a manuscript in Gurmukhi, which also contains an account of the meeting, gives a clear picture of the impression that the conversation between the two saints had left on the mind of Samarth Ramdas. On seeing the Guru dressed like a warrior riding a horse, with a sword dangling by his side and with a retinue of armed followers, returning from a hunting excursion, Samarth Ramdas surprisingly observed: ‘I had heard that you occupy the gadeli of Guru Nanak. Guru Nanak was a *tyagi Sadhu*, a saint who had renounced the world. You wear arms and keep an army and horses. You allow yourself to be addressed as *Sacha Padshah*. (The true King). What sort of a *Sadhu* are you? Guru Hargobind’s reply was very significant, indeed as interpretative of the unity of spiritualism and secularism in the philosophy of Sikh thought and action. The Guru said that he was ‘internally a hermit and externally a prince. Arms mean protection to the poor and destruction to the tyrant. Baba Nanak had not renounced the world, but had renounced *maya*, i.e., self and ego:

‘Guru Hargobind kahiya : baten faqiri, zahar amiri ; shastar gharib ki rakkhia, jarwane ki bhakkhia ; Baba Nanak sansar nahin tyagia tha, maya tyagi thi.’

The letters, known as *Hukam-namas*, of Guru Tegh Bahadur, Guru Gobind Singh, etc., preserved in the Harimandar Sahib temple in Patna and other places, and those collected by Gurdit Singh Harika, Tehsildar of Sunam, Bhai Randhir Singh of the Punjabi University, Patiala, and others, deserve a careful study. Guru Gobind Singh’s letter known as *Zafar-nama* to Emperor Aurangzeb is a document of considerable historical importance, particularly with reference to his last struggle with the imperial forces. His *Bachittar Natak* in autobiographical form records a number of events of his time, especially his conflicts with the Rajas of the Shivalaks and the Mughal officials who came to suppress his movement.

The *Gurbilas Chhevin Padshahi* by Bhagat Singh and *Gurbilas Patshahi Das* (by Sukha Singh) are well known biographies of the sixth and tenth Gurus respectively and are available in print. Poet Sohan’s *Gurbilas Chhevin Padshahi* is in manuscript and calls for the attention of scholars. Similarly the *Mehma Prakash*, both in prose and poetry, is equally well-known, and the one in verse is being edited for publication by a scholar of the Languages Department,

Of how the conflict between the Sikhs and the Mughal government of the province of Lahore began at Amritsar in March, 1709, within six months of the death of Gobind Singh at Nander in the Deccan, and a year before Banda Singh Bahadur embarked upon his career of conquest in the Punjab, we have a clear description in the *Var Amritsar ki* by Darshan. The author tells us that in Samvat 1766 BK., 1709 A. D., during the reign of Emperor Bahadur Shah, trouble began at Amritsar on the Baisakhi day, March 29, over a small basket of mulberry fruit between some Sikhs and the son (R ammoo Mall) and servants of Choohar Mall, a Khatri merchant of Amritsar, who in the haughtiness of his temper misbehaved towards the Sikhs of the town and led a deputation of his kinsmen against them to Nawab Aslam Khan, the Governor of Lahore. According to Sewa Singh’s *Shahid Bilas*, Choohar Mall was a leading *mina* and an agent of Sodhi Niranjan Das a descendant of Harji, son of Sodhi Mendar, son of Prithi Chand, and was notorious for his enmity towards the Sikhs. Equipped with official *parvanas*, Choohar Mall returned to Amritsar with an aggressive attitude towards the local Sikhs, who found it impossible to put up with his ever increasing hostility. In a skirmish the men of Choohar Mall were worsted and his house and property came to be plundered. Choohar Mall then sought the assistance of Har Sahai, the *amin* of Patti Haibatpur, who rushed upon the Sikhs with a view to driving them out of their holy town. Hearing this, the Sikhs of the neighbourhood hastened to the defence of their comrades-in-faith. Har Sahai and some of his leading men, including some Sayyids and Brahmans, were killed (Baisakh 9, April 6, 1766) in action, and victory fell to the arms of the Sikhs. The Governor of Lahore, Aslam Khan, then took the side against the Sikhs and deputed Dewa Jat (*Chaudhari* of Nau-shehra Punnuan), a leading *Lamberdar* of the area, with men and munitions of war from Lahore, to march against the Sikhs. In spite
of all the official support, Deva was worsted in action and he fled for his life, leaving the field to the Sikhs. This was the first victory that the Sikhs as people, without any concerted plan and organised leadership, gained against the official levies of the Mughal government at Lahore. Owing to this reverse Aslam Khan, the Governor, felt very much dejected and reported the matter to Emperor Bahadur Shah in the Deccan. The Emperor was then under the obligation of the Sikhs for the help he had received from Guru Gobind Singh in the battle of Jajau (June 8, 1707) in the war of succession against his younger brother Prince Azam. Darshan, the author of _Var Amritsar ki_, tells us that the Emperor wrote back to the Lahore Governor admonishing him for unwisely raising his sword against the followers of Nanak who were a body of saintly people.

The story of the above quarrel and of subsequent conflicts is substantially supported by Bhatt Sewa Singh in his _Shahid Bilas_ of Bhai Mani Singh (edited by Garja Singh, Punjabi Akademy, Ludhiana, 1961). It is based on the professional records of his Bhatt ancestors and was written at Ladwa under the patronage of Raja (Sardar) Ajit Singh, the hero of Baddowal during the first Anglo-Sikh War, and completed at Bhadson, the ancestral home of the author.

A reference to the successes of the Sikhs of Amritsar and its neighbourhood against the Lahore government and against the forces of Wazir Khan of Sirhind before the arrival of Banda Singh in the Punjab, is available in the _Akbar-i-Darbar-i-Mualla_, the News of the Royal Court of Emperor Bahadur Shah, dated Rabi-ul-Awwal, 29, 1122, A. H. These _Akbarat_ are an invaluable source of historical information about transactions at the Imperial court and are preserved in the Rajasthan State Archives at Bikaner.

The recently published _Gusain Gurbani—Gusain Mat ka Guru-granth_ (National Publishing House, Delhi, 1964)—brings to light the thought and teachings of Sain Das of Baddo ki Gosaiyan in the district of Gujranwala (Punjab, now West Pakistan). He was a contemporary of Guru Nanak, was followed by a number of descendants who continued the work of Sain Das more or less in the form of a Hindu sect. Although the greater portion of the book (Pages 56 86, 126–631, 704–724, 751–85) is devoted to Kans Rai’s _Var Sri Bhagvat_, the _Das Avtar_ and _Harish Chand Katha_, the life and sayings of Sain Das and his followers, add a useful chapter to the religio-social history of the medieval Punjab.

But none of these biographies is written by a contemporary
author. The only work that can claim to be a contemporary one is Sainpati’s *Sri Gur Sobha*. Although it seems to have been completed in 1798 BK., 1741 A. D., thirty-three years after the death of Guru Gobind Singh, Sainpati writes with the authority of an eye-witness to some of the events recorded by him. It is true that there are a few very glaring mistakes in this work about the activities of the Guru in Rajputana, particularly about his marriage which was, apparently, the arrival and meeting of his wife at Burhanpur and the reappearance of Zorawar Singh. Zorawar Singh referred to here was not the real Zorawar Singh, the son of Guru Gobind Singh. He had been killed in the battle of Chamkaur (December 1704), fought under the very eyes of the Guru, who had seen his son fall fighting in the battlefield. Zorawar Singh who arrived in the camp of the Guru in Rajputana was a boy adopted by Mata Sundri, the Guru’s wife, after the real sons of the Guru had been killed at Chamkaur and executed at Sirhind. These mistakes and some deviations in the sequence of events are evidently due to the absence of first-hand knowledge of the events which he seems to have recorded from hearsay. But for a few exceptions, the book is a mine of useful information on the life and times of Guru Gobind Singh.

The letter of Guru Gobind Singh dated Ist Katik, 1764 BK., October 2, 1707 A. D., addressed to the Sangat (Sikh congregation) of Dhaul is a first hand documentary evidence of the interview of the Guru with Emperor Bahadur Shah (Jamadi-ul-Awwal 4, 1119, A. H., July 23, 1707) and of the respectful and conciliatory attitude of the Emperor, who had permitted him to come to the royal presence fully armed, and had presented to him a rich robe of honour worth sixty thousand rupees, including a jewelled scarf (*dhukh-dhukhi*). This was a unique honour shown to the Guru, evidently, in recognition of his high religious position. What the Guru meant by his words *Hor bhi kann Guru ka Sadka Sabh hote hain* (all the other things with the grace of the Divine Master are also being done or settled) is not clear. But it seems that he was satisfied with the talks he had with the Emperor, and that he was returning to the Punjab, where on his arrival in Kahlur (evidently at Anandpur situated in the Kahlur territory) he wished the Khalsa to come to him armed, evidently, to meet any opposition either from Nawab Wazir Khan, the *faujdar* of Sirhind, or from the Rajas of the Shivalaks.

Dhinn Singh’s manuscript account of the last days of Guru Gobind Singh (*Dasam Patshah ka Antam Kautak*), transcribed
towards the middle of the nineteenth century, throws a welcome light on the surgical operation and bandage of the Guru’s wound at Nander, where he was fatally wounded by two Pathan emissaries of Nawab Wazir Khan of Sirhind. According to it, the surgeon (jarahdar), who had been sent by Emperor Bahadur Shah to stitch the wound, was an Englishman, Cole and Call by name, and that the Guru paid him ten mohars a day for his services. The Emperor offered to hang the companions or accomplices of the Guru’s assassins. But the Guru disagreed, saying that they were only the tools of some one else and not independent actors in the drama.

The Kulliyat-i-Bhai Nand Lal Goya is a collection of the Persian and Punjabi writings of Bhai Nandlal, Diwan of Prince Muazzam (Emperor Bahadur Shah). He was a devoted disciple of the tenth Guru. While his diwan (ghazaliat), the Zindgi-nama and the Jot Bikas (both in Persian and Punjabi) are works on Sikh philosophy, the Ganj-nama and the Tausif-wa-Sama are eulogies of the Gurus, with particular reference to Guru Gobind Singh who, according to the author, was the very image of God on earth. Coming as the eulogy does from a contemporary who had seen him at close quarters for a considerable time, it has a great historical value as depicting the lofty character of Guru Gobind Singh both as a spiritual and secular leader who had won the admiration and respect of the Emperor Bahadur Shah. Nandlal’s Rahit-nama and Tankhwah-nama (Punjabi) are compendia of Dos and Don’ts of the Sikhs, while his Arz-ul-Alfaz is a collection of Persian and Arabic words used in divine praise and eulogy of the Gurus. The references in the Dastur-ul-Insha, included in the Kulliyat, to persons and places, however, are in several cases too vague to be helpful for historical research.

The letter of Banda Singh of Poh 12, Sammat 1 (1767 BK), December 12, 1710, clears a number of misunderstandings created through the writings of some ignorant people. The words of his seal deg wa teg wa fatah wa nusrat berang yaft zar Nanak Guru Govind Singh (the Kettle to feed and serve the needy, the Sword to protect the poor and the helpless, and Quick Victory to the arms of the Khalsa have been obtained from Gurus Nanak—Gobind Singh) are clear indications of his intense devotion and gratefulness to the Gurus, particularly to Guru Gobind Singh who had initiated him into the fold of the Khalsa. He tells the congregation of Jaunpur that they were the Khalsa of the Lord Eternal, and that they should live according to the Rahit (the rules of conduct) laid down for the Khalsa. On his own part, he says, ‘I enjoin that he who lives
according to the 

Rahit of the Khalsa shall be saved by the Guru.'

Among the non-Muslim contemporary authorities that help us construct the life and exploits of Banda Singh are Kam Raj's Ibrat-nama, 1718, Sewa Das (Shiv Das's) Shah-nama or Farrukh Siyar-nama, 1721, and Khushal Chand's Tawarikh-i-Muhammad Shah Nadir-uz-Zamani, written in 1154 A. H., 1741. With what remarkable patience the Sikhs then smilingly laid down their lives at the altar of their faith can be gleaned from the East India Company's ambassador's (John Surman and Edward Stephenson) despatch dated March 10, 1716, from Delhi addressed to the Hon'ble Robert Hedges, President and Governor of Fort William and Council in Bengal.

The letter was read at a consultation at Fort St. George on Tuesday, 5th June, 1716, and is to be found in the Madras Diary and Consultation Book for 1715 to 1719, No. 87, Range 239, in the India Office; and, in J. T. Wheeler's Early Records of British India, p. 180 and in C. R. Wilson's The Early Annals of the English in Bengal, 96–98 (Asiatic Society, Calcutta, 1963 edition, Vol II, Part II, 120–21).

Kesar Singh Chhibbar in his Bansawal-nama Dasan Patshahian ka claims to have based his account of the Gurus, particularly of the Tenth Guru, on a bahi, a record book of the time of the Guru, in possession of his ancestors. The work is full of useful information about such of the events as he has recorded on personal observation or first hand knowledge.

The most important Punjabi work on the history of the Punjab during the eighteenth century is Bhangu Ratan Singh Shahid's Prachin Panth Prakash (Amritsar 1914, 1962). The author was a grandson of Sardar Mehtab-Singh of Mirat Kot and also, on his mother's side, of Sardar Shyam Singh of the Karor-Singhia Misal. Both of these Sardars were leaders of the Dal Khalsa, and as the author had collected from his own ancestors and others connected with them first hand information about the sufferings and sacrifices of the Sikhs in the first half of the century, about the formation of the Dals, Jathas and Mistas, and of struggles, exploits and conquests which ultimately led to the independence of the Punjab and the establishment of the Sikh republics. With this the book ends. Ratan Singh wrote the Prachin Panth Prakash in the first half of the nineteenth century (completed in 1898 BK., 1841 A. D.) when several leaders of the Sikh Mistas and their immediate descendants were still living and the memory of their struggles with the Durrani—Ahmad Shah and Timur Shah—the Rohilas and the Marathas was still fresh. But for
his prejudices against Banda Singh and the Bandeis, which he had inherited from the leaders of the early opposition party, and a few minor errors, the Prachin Panth Prakash may be said to be a very reliable source of history of the eighteenth century Punjab. Ratan Singh wrote his book in verse as that was the fashion of the day; but since he was not a poet with a creative imagination, his narration of events has happily remained, to a great extent, uncoloured and objective.

James Browne's The History of the Origin and Progress of the Sikhs was based on the Persian Risala-i-Nanak Shah (Risalah dar Ahwal-i-Nanak Shah Darvesh according to the Aligarh Muslim University copy in the Abdus Salam Section, Tarikh-i-Afghanana, 156/22) translated for him from a Devanagri manuscript by Budh Singh Arora of Lahore in collaboration with Lala Ajaib Singh Suraj of Maler (Kotla). The Persian manuscript was freely translated into English by James Browne, an agent of the East India Company at the Court of Shah Alam, for the information of his principal, Warren Hastings, the Governor-General. The manuscript was found to be extremely defective, and it said nothing about the manners and customs of the Sikhs, which he was then most anxious to study. The Sikhs were then rising to be a dominant political power in the Punjab and on the borders of the Mughal empire and of the territories of Nawab Wazir of Awadh, and were entering into treaties with the Rajputs and the Maratha Sardars. James Browne, therefore, not only inserted in the Introduction all that he was able to discover on these and other subjects, but he also brought the narrative up to the date of translation, April 1785. The last thing referred to by him therein is the treaty entered into on March 31, 1785, between the Marathas represented by Ambaji Ingle and the Khalsaji—the Sikh Sardars—by Sardar Baghel Singh. This work, with all its inherent defects, is the first regular treatise on the Sikhs compiled by an Englishman.

The other first known connected account of the Sikhs written by a European was the Siques by Colonel Antoine Louis Henri Polier, a Swiss Engineer, whose work in the construction of the Fort William at Calcutta was highly appreciated by all competent authorities. He was for some time on a deputation for service with Nawab Shuja-ud-Daula of Awadh, with his capital at Lucknow, which was in the eighteenth century a great centre of cultural and educational institutions. Here Colonel Polier came into contact with men of learning and became interested in the history and religions of India.
He was one of the earliest members of the Asiatic Society of Bengal (now Asiatic Society), Calcutta, elected on January 29, 1784. Among the papers that he wrote for and read at the meetings of the Society was the one on The Siques, or History of the Seeks, read on December 20, 1787.¹

Polier's paper on the Siques is evidently based on casual information collected by him during his deputation with Shuja-ud-Daula and the years following his resignation, when he occasionally came into contact with them in the neighbourhood of Delhi and heard about them in connection with their relations with the Mughals, the Rohilas, the Jats, the Rajputs and the Marathas. It contains a number of factual mistakes which are not uncommon to foreign writers of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries when, for want of close personal contact, they did not have first hand knowledge of history and institutions of the Sikhs, nor in the absence of authoritative literature and original documents, available to them, could they have reliable sources for their studies. Added to this, Polier had his own prejudices against the Sikhs, impressed upon his mind by the repeated one-sided reports of the Mughal officials against whom they had been struggling for over eighty years. He, therefore, readily believed whatever information was given to him at the time of writing this paper.²

George Forster's letter No. XI in the first volume of his A Journey from Bengal to England (London, 1798) gives in brief the history of the origin and progress of the Sikh people from the time of Guru Nanak to the beginning of February-March, 1783, when he travelled through the eastern hilly tracts of the Punjab. In addition to this letter, wholly devoted to the Sikhs, he also makes occasional references to them on pp. 128–30, 198–99, 227–28 and Vol. II, pp. 83, 88. Like a genuine enquirer, Forster had 'no tendency to discolour or misrepresent truth.' 'Guided by no views or interest nor impressed by any frown of power, I was enabled' he says, 'to examine the object that came before me through a dispassionate medium.' And he has succeeded in it to a great extent. His letter No. XI is a fairly objective study of the Sikhs of the eighteenth century and is a mine of useful information.

The Government of Bombay deserves the grateful thanks of the students and scholars of medieval Indian history for the publication of forty-six volumes of Peshwa Daftarantun Nivadalele Kagad (Selections from the Peshwa Daftar), forty-five of which were edited by Rao Bahadur Govind Sardesai, and the forty-sixth (Persian) of
Miscellaneous Papers by Dr. M. Nazim.

The Selections from the Peshwa Daftar were later continued as a New Series by the Bombay Government under the editorship of Dr. P. M. Joshi. Of equally great historical importance are volumes 1, 3, 6 and 12 of Rajwade's Marathianchia Itihasachi Sadhane as also D. B. Parasnis' Dillivethil Marathianchi Rajakarane (Hingne's Correspondence) in two parts and a supplement and Jodhpur yethil Rajakarane (Krishnaji Jagannath Vakil's correspondence) originally published in the Itihas Sangraha (Nirnaya Sagar Press, Bombay) along with innumerable other documents in a number of different series.

The Historical Papers of the Sindhis of Gwalior, edited by G. S. Sarvarkar, issued in two volumes by the Satara Historical Research Society in 1934 and 1940, and the Historical Papers Relating to Mahadji Scindia, also edited by Sardesai, published by the Gwalior Government in 1937, contain very useful first-hand source material on the north Indian affairs both to the south and north of Delhi, dealing with the Durransis, the Rohilas, Begam Samru, the Sikh Sardars, and the State of Patiala.

A reference here may also be made to the publications of the Itihas Samshodhan Mandal of Poona which, through its Swiya Granthmala (about 100 in number) and Puraskrit Granthmala series, has published some two hundred volumes containing collections of the Peshwa vakils' and newwriters' correspondence like the Hingne Daftar (ed., G. H. Khare), the Chandra Chud Daftar (ed. D.V. Apte), the Vaidya Daftarantun Nivandelele Kagad, etc., etc. In addition to these in Marathi, the Mandal has also published in the Swiya Granthmala series a number of volumes of Persian sources of Indian History (Aithihasak Farsi Sahitya) under the editorship of G. H. Khare, the Curator of the Mandal. The Persian newsletters and documents in these volumes (Vol. V, part I was issued in 1961) generally deal with North India, and have many references to the Punjab, mostly of the second half of the eighteenth century.

As I have mentioned above, the Sikhs of the eighteenth century, except in the last three decades, attracted the attention of the writers only as far as their struggles against the government of Lahore, and occasionally, also of Sirhind and Delhi, and against the Durransis, the Rohilas, the Bhattis and the Marathas was concerned. And these are mentioned in the general historical and biographical literature of the time mostly produced by Muslim writers.

Among the works by non-Muslim writers, besides those men-
tioned already, the names of Sudh Ram’s Ruqqat-i-Alamgiri or Ramz-o-Isharha-i-Alamgiri (1708), Jagjivan Das Gujrati’s Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh (1708), Bhim Sain’s Dilkhusha (1728), Lal Ram’s Tuhfat-ul-Hind, Duni Chand’s Cakkhar-nama, Anand Ram Mukhlis’s Tozkirah, Wagaya and Safar-nama (1748), Chaturnman’s Chahar Gulshan (1759), Kahsi Raj’s Ahwal-i-Jang-i-Bhanwa Ahmad Durrani or Jang-i Panipat (1761), Shiv Prasad’s Tarikh-i-Farrah Baksh or Faiiz Baksh (1776), Munnalal’s Tarikh-i-Shah Alam, also called Shah Alam-nama (1782), Sahib Singh’s Muntakhab-ul-Masavodat (1784), Bihari Lal’s Ahwal-i-Najib-ud-Daula wa Ali Muhammad Khan wa Donde Khan (1787), Harcharan Das’s Chahar Gulshan-i-Shujaaee (1787), Mittar Sain’s Daur-nama (1793), and Dalpat Rai’s Amir-ul-Ulma (1800), deserve special mention as writings with occasional references to the Punjab. The dates given against the names of the books are not in all cases the dates of their writing or of their transcriptions but are, in some cases, of the last events covered by them. There is only one booklet in Persian, the Risala-i-Nanak Shah by Budh Singh Arora of Lahore and Ajaib Singh Suraj of Maler (Kotla) devoted especially to the Sikhs. But this, as already stated, is only a translation of a Hindi manuscript, written by someone not fully conversant with the history and religion of the Sikhs.

Among the works written during the first two decades of the nineteenth century, which deal mostly with the Punjab during the eighteenth century, are Bakht Mall’s Khalsa-nama (1810-1814), and Khushwaqt Rai’s Kitab-i-Tawarikh-i-Panjab, also called Tawarikh-i-Sikh (1811). Bakht Mall wrote his book under the patronage of Bhai Lal Singh of Kaithal, and the first manuscript copy (now preserved in the library of the Royal Asiatic Society, London) was used by John Malcolm in the writing of his Sketch of the Sikhs, published in London in 1812. Khushwaqt Rai was the official news writer of the East India Company and he wrote his Kitab-i-Tawarikh-i-Panjab at the desire of Col. David Ochterloney in 1811, concluding it with Metcalf-Ranjit Singh negotiations upto June of that year. Daya Ram’s Shir-o-Shakar, though written a little later in the time of Maharaja Ranjit Singh, deals mostly with the cis Sutlej affairs towards the end of the eighteenth century with particular reference to D’Boign, Perron, Louis Bourquin, George Thomas, the Marathas and the Malwa Sikh Sardars. The last events mentioned in it are Maharaja Ranjit Singh’s negotiations with Shah Shuja and his expedition to Kashmir.

In addition to this, there is still a vast virgin field of non-
Muslim records which have not been explored at all by any Indian or foreign scholar. These are the Bhatt and the Pandā records, maintained and preserved by professional pedigree keepers and ballad reciters. The Bhatta of the Punjab are to be found in Bhdson, Taludha (Jind), Kurukshetra, Banbauri, Karsindhu, Sirsa, Kaithal and in several other places in the cis-Sutlej area, while the Pandas reside in places of pilgrimages like Hardwar, Pehowa, Kurukshetra, Prayag, Gaya, Ajudha, Kamakhya-Devi (Gauhati), Puri, etc. Like the old functional groups, the Bhatta kept the pedigrees of the Rajas, Chiefs, Sardars and others, and maintained accounts of their valorous and philanthropic deeds. They also composed and recited chronicles of their yajamans or patrons. At regular intervals they moved from village to village in their fixed circles and, then, recorded in their bahis births of males in the families and noted the deaths therein with as much detail as they could gather on the spot from the heads of the families. On the occasions of births and marriages, they recited the pedigrees and sang the glories of the heroes and ancestors of the respective families. The more learned among the Bhatta wrote ballads of considerable literary merit and historical accuracy, and they can very well serve as useful source material for biographies and histories of the areas to which they relate. They are mostly written in Bhattachhri or Bhattakshri script and are preserved in strong cloth bound folded ledgers called bahis. Sewa Singh’s Shahid Bilas of Bhai Mani Singh was found in the bahi of Bhath Mohlu Ram and was transcribed from Bhattachhri into Gurmukhi script in 1937 BK., 1870 A.D., by Bhatt Chhajju Singh of Bhadson, a descendant of the author. With the passage of time, the older bahis are in some cases being neglected by the modern generation of the Bhatta some of whom are taking to other professions. It is high time, therefore, that, before it is too late, a systematic and organised effort be made to rescue this invaluable treasure of historical source material by transcribing it into Punjabi and Devanagri scripts and publishing it for the benefit of historical research.

Similarly the bahis of the Pandas contain valuable record of the pedigrees of the pilgrims who visit the tirthas either with the ashes of their dead relatives or otherwise. Before the ashes are immersed in the holy water at the titha or the pilgrim has a dip therein, the services of the Panda, who has the bahi of the area to which the village or town of the pilgrim belongs, are requisitioned for the performance of religious rites for which he receives a fixed fee, in addition to what the pilgrim may otherwise pay to him for his boarding
and lodging. The visit of the pilgrim provides the *Panda* with an opportunity to bring the family pedigree up-to-date, as also to record any other information that he may find to be of interest from the point of view of the future pilgrims from the family or its village. Some times, the *Pandas* got their entries signed and endorsed by their literate visitors as a mark of their authenticity.

The *bahi* of the Bhattas and the Pandas are all properly indexed according to villages, castes, *gotras* and families, and it does not take more than a minute or two to get at the record of a family if it is mentioned there. If a family is not previously entered in the *bahi*, the Panda immediately takes down for future reference the information that the visitor can give him. The difference between the *bahi* of the Bhattas and the Pandas is that, while the Bhattas moved from place to place in their respective areas and completed their records on the spot, the Pandas waited for their *Yajmans* to come to the *tirthas*. As such, there are in some cases big gaps in the records of Pandas in the absence of *yajmans* turning up at the *tirthas*. The *bahi* of the Bhattas are therefore, more complete and useful than those of the Pandas.

In addition to the Bhattas and Pandas, who belong to the Brahman or Semi-Brahman stocks, the Punjab in the medieval period had yet another class of bards called the *Dhadis* or *Rababis* after the names of the musical instruments, *Dhad* and *Robab*, in the use of which they had specialized for their public performances. They were *Mirasi* or *Dom* by castes; but, under the patronage of the Sikh Gurus and Sardars, they adopted the Sikh way of life. They were primarily songsters by profession, but, not often, they composed ballads of rare literary merit, some of which have found a respectable place in holy Sikh scripture, the *Guru Granth Sahib*, side by side with the compositions of the Gurus and other acknowledged saints. Natha, who composed the *vars* or ballads on the battles of Guru Hargobind and Nath Mall *Dhadi*, the author of the *Amar-nama*, belonged to this group. I presume, as mentioned above, both these names stand for one and the same person. An extensive search in the family papers of the old Sardars in the Bari and the Jullundur Doabs and in the cis-Sutlej areas, as also in some of the aristocratic families in Western Pakistan, is sure to bring to light some valuable historical *Vars* composed by the *Dhadis*. 
REFERENCES

1. As no copy of this paper was available in the records of the Society, nor was it published in the Society's Journal, I obtained a photostat copy of it from the India Office Library, London (Orme Mss., XIX, pp. 83).

2. These I have tried to correct in the light of the reliable material that has now become available in the footnotes of the Early European Accounts of the Sikhs, published in 1962.
CHARACTERISTICS OF EARLY BRITISH HISTORICAL WRITING ON MEDIEVAL INDIA

J. S. GREWAL

For this paper, 'early British historical writing' covers the work of late eighteenth and early nineteenth century British historians. The choice of this period of about ninety years for a study of the characteristics of British historiography on medieval India is not arbitrary. The close connection of the historiography with the course of contemporary expansion of British rule in India and of the response to the problems created in British public life by that expansion, the intimate relation between the course and character of this historical writing and the major trends and methods of contemporary British historiography in general, the profound influence of the social and cultural environment of the historians on the character of their work, their general frame of reference, the logic in the development of this historical writing taken as a whole—all combine to impart to the work of the historians of this period a unity which is altogether its own.

The intimate connection between the work of these historians and the course of contemporary expansion of British rule in India is evident from their choice of subjects for historical treatment—the Rohillas, the later Mughals, Mysore, the Marathas, the Sikhs, for example. Furthermore, with the possibility first of and eventually with the establishment of British Empire in India, the Indo-Muslims came to be regarded as 'our predecessors.' Their empires became the most interesting subject for the new rulers of India.

The practical and public motives of the historians reveal their response to the problems created in British public life by the expansion of British rule in India. The servants of the East India Company in the late eighteenth century, for example, undertook constitutional and legal studies precisely because the Company was faced with the problems of ruling British India. The volume of British historical writing on medieval India began to increase considerably in the early nineteenth century largely because British India, the most important part now of 'the British Empire,' was no longer a concern chiefly of the East India Company but of the whole British
nation to whom, naturally, the writers had begun to address themselves. Nearly all the writers of this period were conscious of the use or practical implications of their work for British rule in India. Some of them overtly discussed the problems of government in the light of their knowledge of medieval India.

However, notwithstanding the dominance of its practical purpose, British historical writing on medieval India was closely related to British historiography in general. James Mill’s study of Indian societies, for instance, was an extrapolation of the Scottish sociological studies, popularized chiefly by Adam Ferguson and John Miller. Similarly, Alexander Dow may be safely classed with the historians of the Enlightenment in so far as he tried to present easily available facts in a readable form and with a didactic purpose. A close examination of his work would show that his major assumptions were the same as those of David Hume and Edward Gibbon.

Though all the British historians of medieval India cannot be placed directly in one or another school of British historiography in general, its major trends were strongly reflected in British historical writing on medieval India. James Tod’s work on the Rajput was deeply influenced by the work of British ‘medievalists.’ Mountstuart Elphinstone too came to believe that the history of medieval Muslim India would throw ‘a strong light on that of the Middle Ages in Europe.’ Joseph Davey Cunningham’s conception of history came close to the ‘science’ and ‘philosophy’ of the Liberal Anglicans, who had brought about ‘a revolution’ in English historical thinking in the early nineteenth century. The collection and preservation of historical records—a reflection of the change in British historical outlook in the early nineteenth century, became as important in British India as in Great Britain. Historical scholarship as much changed the character of British historical writing on medieval India as of British historiography in general.

Indeed, the methods as well as the trends of British historiography influenced the character of British writing on medieval India. Unlike their predecessors, the early nineteenth century British historians of India, largely though they depended on literary sources, tended to treat them not as authorities but as sources. Their aim was, as one of them put it to another, ‘to get at facts and to combine them with judgement so as to make a consistent and rational history out of a mass of gossiping Bukkurs and gasconading Tawarihks.” The relevance of non-historical literature, archival records and archaeology for historical studies was recognized by many of the
early nineteenth century British historians of medieval India. Thus, whereas Alexander Dow at the beginning of this period had been content to use Persian histories of European travels, Mountstuart Elphinstone near the close of this period used letters, *farmans*, memoirs, coins, the evidence of language and literature as well as histories and travels, both Asian and European. On the basis of a detailed analysis of the major works of these historians, it may be safely stated that they learnt their ‘methodology’ from the work of their contemporaries at home.

Without minimizing the importance of their purposes or of their schooling in methodology for the character of their work, it must be emphasized that the influence of the social and cultural environment of the British historians of medieval India was more subtle and, therefore, more decisive in determining the character of their work. Edward Gibbon's *History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* is in a sense 'a demonstration of the general ideas of the silver age of the modern European Renaissance.' James Mill's *History of British India* has quite as much to tell us about the thought of the English Philosophical Radicals as Gibbon's *History* tells us about the ideas of the English Enlightenment. The work of the British historians of medieval India, reflecting the literary, aesthetic and religious as well as the intellectual currents of their time, mirrored the society in which they lived and worked. Conversely, in determining the character of British historical writing on medieval India, the rise of Romanticism and Evangelicalism in this period proved to be as deeply influential as the Enlightenment and Philosophical Radicalism. By far the bulk of this historical writing may be analysed in terms of these dominant movements.

What was commonly shared by all the British historians of medieval India was the assumption of an all round superiority of their own age in their own country over the age about which they were writing. Alexander Dow, for instance, contrasted the freedom and happiness of his fellow-citizens under a constitutional monarchy with the ‘slavery’ and misery of Indians subject to despotism. For Mountstuart Elphinstone, the general condition of medieval India in its most prosperous and best governed epochs compared ill with the general condition of even the indifferently governed states of contemporary Europe.

Indeed, the whole of contemporary Western Europe was generally believed to be morally and intellectually superior to all other ages in world history. In the last analysis, the rise of modern science
with all its implications for thought and technology appeared to distinguish the modern European civilization from all other civilizations, whether Asian or European. Even Sir William Jones, for all his reputation as the greatest admirer of Asian peoples, thought of them as 'mere children' in sciences proper. For him, Europe was the 'fair mistress' and Asia, at its best, the 'handmaid.'

However, notwithstanding the general assumption of contemporary Britain's superiority over India, the attitudes of these British historians towards India and its past differed widely, and reflected largely their affiliation to one or another of the dominant schools. The historians of the Enlightenment, like Dow, could and did appreciate the vigour and political success of the Indo-Muslims; they appreciated also the tolerant posture of some of the Mughals. They believed that in the interests of peace and political stability of the British Empire in India, as elsewhere, the ignorant multitudes were better left to their superstitions. The Utilitarians and the Evangelicals adopted from widely different standpoints nearly the same attitude towards India and its past: they hardly saw anything commendable in Indian societies; India's past for them was a long tedious tale of unmitigated suffering; and India's future in their view depended on the blessings Indians could receive or the British would bestow. The Romantics appreciated some of the aspects of Indian societies and cultures in isolation—religion, ethics, poetry, music, painting, sculpture or architecture, for example. Some of the Romantics came very near to saying that the Indian way of life was as valuable to the Indians as the British way of life was to the British. In their view, Indian institutions could be left intact until and unless the Indians themselves should wish to change them.

The British historians in this period, whatever their cosmological assumptions, accepted the concepts of State, Civilization and Nationality as their general frame of reference. However, the concept of State, remained uppermost with the historians of the Enlightenment; and with the Utilitarian and Evangelical writers the concepts of Nationality and State were subordinate to the concept of Civilization or Society. The Romantics, on the other hand, tended to subordinate the concepts of State and Civilization to the concept of Nationality.

It was their general frame of reference that endowed the work of Edward Gibbon and Sir William Jones (who did not write directly on medieval India) with a decisive influence on the character of British writing on medieval India. Gibbon found the method of
‘grouping my picture by nations’ the most meaningful for his treatment of Islamic history;" nonetheless, he underlined the unity of Islamic civilization which in his view transcended the regional peculiarities within the Muslim world. On this assumption the Indo-Muslims, for all the dividing lines of race and region, were in their way of life distinct from any other people in the world except the Muslims. Sir William Jones brought out the uniqueness of Hindu civilization as a peculiar product of the genius of the Hindu peoples, and made India for the West almost synonymous with Hindu India. Henceforth the formal division of Indian history into ‘Hindu’ and ‘Muhammadan’ was only a matter of time. James Mill, the first British historian to make this formal division, was proud of being a most serious student of Civilization. He was quick to acknowledge both Gibbon and Jones as his immediate predecessors.

Furthermore, since Gibbon and Jones had evaluated Muslim and Hindu civilizations, British historians of medieval India began to see those civilizations not only as distinct but also qualitatively different from each other. James Mill discussed the government, laws, religion, literature, historiography, philosophy, sciences, technology and morals and manners of the Hindus; and, after a deliberate comparison, found the Muslims to be superior to the Hindus in all the spheres of civilization. Horace Hayman Wilson attempted to correct Mill’s judgment by arguing that the Hindus were superior to the Muslims, except in historiography. Mountstuart Elphinstone, who is said simply to have described the Indian past and not judged it,9 saw in fact a qualitative difference between the Hindu and Islamic civilizations.

However, unlike Mill, Elphinstone did not subordinate nationality to civilization. Like the Romantics, he found the ‘national’ units within the frame of civilization more worthy of attention. Thinking of the inadvertence of inadequate judgments on Indians, he emphasized that there were ten nations in India, differing from one another in manners and language as much as those of Europe and possessing at the same time the ‘general resemblance which is observable among the nations of Christendom.’10 Already, James Grant Duff and James Tod had treated the Marathas and the Rajputs as ‘nations’ within the general frame of Hindu society. Joseph Davey Cunningham, who admired Elphinstone as a historian, treated the Sikhs as a distinct nation.

Late eighteenth and early nineteenth century British writing on medieval India, taken as a whole, appears to possess its own logic of
development. The period started with the work of Alexander Dow, the first general historian of Indo-Muslim politics who has been regarded as merely a translator of Firishta's work, the Gulshan-i-Ibrahim. Late eighteenth century servants of the East India Company, Dow's immediate successors, extended the field of inquiry by their studies of Indo-Muslim government and law as well as medieval Indian politics. While Gibbon created a new image of Islamic civilization with his asides and reflections on the economic, social and cultural aspects of Muslim history, Jones attempted a rediscovery of the whole of Hindu civilization.

With this background, and with very different assumptions and purposes, the Evangelicals and the Utilitarians, represented in the early nineteenth century by Charles Grant and James Mill, approached medieval Indian history through the study of Indian societies and civilizations, past and present, to identify imperial responsibility with 'moral imperialism' in British India, thus marking a sharp break with the attitudes of their immediate predecessors on medieval India.

Reactions to their advocacy of radical social change appeared both in British India and Great Britain to influence the course and character of British historical writing on medieval India. Some Anglo-Indians, like John Briggs, underlined the insufficiency of evidence for moral judgments on Indian peoples; others, like Vans Kennedy, questioned the validity of such judgments. The Romantics, like James Tod, repudiated moral imperialism in India by bringing out the best in the subjects of their studies. At the same time, they provided suitable material for the conservatives, like G. R. Gleig, whose opposition to radical social change in British India was little more than an extrapolation of their opposition to radicalism at home.

Mountstuart Elphinstone, the last general historian of medieval India during this period, represented several of its characteristic tendencies and summed up existing knowledge of medieval Indian history in Great Britain. His intellectual kinship with the Enlightenment enabled him to have a lifelong appreciation for Hume and Gibbon and to accept their values of judgment. His emotional affinity with the Romantics is evident from the imaginative sympathy with which he studied the Indian past, whether Hindu or Muslim. Without subscribing to the moral imperialism preached by the Evangelical and Utilitarian apostles of radical social change in India, he wished and worked for a moral and an intellectual regeneration
which should allow no sharp break with India's past. His view of Indian past buttressed his political liberalism which often prompted him to visualize a 'civilized' and an independent India in the future.

In summing up existing knowledge of medieval Indian history, Elphinstone had attempted to see 'Mohammedan' India in the round. The Rajputs, the Marathas and the Sikhs had formed as essential a part of his story as the Indo-Muslim 'nations.' The racial composition of the Indo-Muslims; their national characteristics; their attitudes towards the non-Muslims in India; the influence of Indian environment on the government, administration, language, social customs, religious beliefs and practices, and manners of the Indo-Muslims; the effect of Muslim conquest on the Hindus; the influence of Islam on Hinduism—all these aspects of medieval Indian history had as much interested Elphinstone as the wars, government, literature, arts and prosperity of the Indo-Muslims. Although he had seen the Hindu and Muslim 'nations' as members of two markedly different civilizations, yet for him the significance of medieval Indian history lay in Hindu Muslim rapprochement. He had regarded Akbar as the creator of a 'national' state in India.

Elphinstone's interpretation of medieval Indian history was not acceptable to his immediate successor, H. M. Elliot, who appears to have planned a general history of medieval India with assumptions and purposes quite different from Elphinstone's. Elliot's Bibliographical Index to the Historians of Muhammedan India (1849) appears definitely to mark the beginning of a new phase in the history of British historical writing on medieval India. In his plan, we find the concept of 'Muhammedan' India crystallized and medieval India becomes a specialized study. But the scope of this study was narrowed down to the history of Indo-Muslim politics based on the testimony of 'native chroniclers.' Not his scholarship so much as his contemptuous approach and hostile attitude mark off Elliot from the bulk of his predecessors on medieval India.

Elliot found the native chroniclers for the most part dull, prejudiced, ignorant and superficial; they told him nothing of the social, political, and religious institutions of medieval India. Its history, he proclaimed, was yet to be written. He came to the significant conclusion that the medieval Muslim historians of India had glossed over the injurious influence of despotism on the lives of the people who, as Elliot indicates, were largely non-Muslims. These chroniclers, by confining their attention to the Indo-Muslim court and its splendour, had glossed over the evil effects of sanguinary
laws too. Had they portrayed their Caesars with the fidelity of a Seutonius, almost always they would have portrayed Caligulas. Elliot would suffer no gorgeous illusions about Muslim rule in India. Five decades of British rule in India had done more for its people than what the Muslims had done for them in as many centuries. Unlike any of his predecessors, Elliot talked of "our high destiny as Rulers of India." Thus, by the mid-nineteenth century the early period had come to its close. Its last major work, J. D. Cunningham's *History of the Sikhs*, had been published already in 1849, the year in which Elliot published his *Bibliographical Index*.

REFERENCES

1. All the observations made in this paper are based on more or less a detailed study of the major relevant work of the following writers:


11. Elliot, Preface, *Bibliographical Index*, VIII, XV.

12. *Ibid.*, XXX.
SIR SAYYID AND MAULANA SHIBLI

Z. H. FARUQI

Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan (1817–1898), the founder of the Aligarh movement, was remarkable in many respects; he was remarkable also in reviving the interest of his people in the Muslim past, both in India and abroad. This is clear from his preface to Shibli’s *al-Mamun*, written in 1889. It is true that this did not represent something nostalgically romantic in his mode of thinking, but it is there and his academic pursuits, before he set out to launch his diversified reform activities, bear testimony to this. This trend assumed a concrete shape in Shibli (1857–1914), one of his close associates at Aligarh, whose deep interest in literature, history and theology gave a definite direction and purpose to historiography in Urdu. This paper is an attempt to assess briefly their endeavours in the field.

Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan was educated in the traditional manner. But he had imagination and initiative, and was a man of character and moral integrity. He decided against the wishes of his family and its spiritual guides (the people of the *Khангah* of Shah Ghulam Ali) to enter British service. He was only twenty-one at the time. From then, till the great event of 1857, which proved a turning point in his life and career, his only activity of note was literary and academic. He had a keen interest in history and religion. He wrote treatises like the *Rah-i-Sunnat* and the *Khalmat-ul-Haqq* in the traditional style, which show that in the sphere of religious subjects he was still medieval and had not yet come under the influence of western liberalism. But in so far as history is concerned, there are evidences to the effect that he was gradually being acquainted with western scholarship. There is no doubt that he was fully conscious of the happier days when Muslims had played an important role in the history and cultural development of India. His monumental work, the *Asar-us-Sanadid*, stands in support of this thesis. The preface of the book opens with the verse:

*As naqsh o nigar-i dar o diwar-i shikastah*  
*Asar padid ast sanadid-i Ajam-ra.*
This indicates the depth of his feeling about the good old days when Muslim civilization in India was flourishing. It also shows a tendency in Sir Sayyid which impelled him to preserve what had been left behind, even in the form of relics, by the great caravan to which he himself belonged. This tendency in him, it seems, never died and we find the same note in his preface to Shibli’s book *al-Mamun*, in which he wrote:

This is perfectly true that the nation which forgets or does not care to know the achievements of its great men, is the most unfortunate.¹

But apart from this, the book also throws light upon Sir Sayyid’s painstaking and planned scholarship. The first edition of the *Asar* appeared in 1847. This edition had certain defects. For example, the drawing of the monuments were complete, but the related inscriptions had remained incomplete and were not correctly copied. The language of the book was ornamental and at places exaggerated. Sir Sayyid was aware of these shortcomings, and in the second edition published in 1854 the final chapter consisting of an account of Delhi’s poets, ulama, sufis, artists, etc., was omitted, on the advice of Edward Thomas. In consequence of this, it became a standard research work of history, both from the viewpoint of dictation and pure academic pursuit. However, keeping the changed dictation of the second edition apart, Dr. Habibullah’s opinion about Sir Sayyid’s writing of history seems, to a great extent, valid. He says: ‘Traditions of the medieval Muslim historians impressed themselves even on original Urdu composition. This is evident in the earliest of such works—the *Asar-us-Sanadid* of Syed Ahmad Khan... It is a descriptive account of the antiquities of Delhi—his native town—with drawings of the monuments, together with a chapter on the contemporary manners and society. Though not a narrative account of the past, yet its historical purpose is obvious, and it is clearly modelled on what Rosenthal classified as local history...It is not impossible that Syed Ahmad Khan’s urge to compile this account of Delhi was reinforced by two similar accounts of Agra (Akbarabad) written a few years earlier in Persian at the invitation of a British officer...Such details usually formed part of almost all Persian histories and the *Tabagat-i-Akbari* is a well-known example. An earlier writing of Ahmad Khan, *the Jam-i-Jam*, was in Persian (1839) and consists of a tabulated account of the period of reign, year of accession, birth and death, etc. of every Muslim king from Timur to Bahadur Shah, and is an obvious continuation of the *Taqwim* form
of historiography.\textsuperscript{22} \textit{Asar-us-Sanadid} also indicates its author’s awareness about the importance of the use of source material in writing history. He has given a list of the original sources he used in preparing the \textit{Asar}. From this it can be reasonably conjectured that, while making use of the relevant source books, he might have experienced difficulty in handling the neglected manuscripts and might have himself planned to edit and publish at least some of them. In 1855 he brought out the first lithographed edition of the \textit{Ain-i-Akbari} of Abul Fazl, ‘the text of which was based on a comparison of the texts available and to which valuable illustrations has been added. These two works (the \textit{Asar} and the \textit{Ain}) alone would entitle him to a high position among the scholars of the world.’\textsuperscript{23} Later, in 1862, he edited Barani’s \textit{Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi}, and in 1863-64 edited and published the \textit{Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri}. All this was pioneer work which made the others realise the significance of western methodology in writing authentic histories. Particularly, Maulana Shibli seems to have been very much influenced by Sayyid’s method and approach mainly based on ‘the textual study of the original documents.’

Maulana Shibli was, however, a man of a different temperament. Like Sir Sayyid he had also been trained in the traditional learning of Islam and his knowledge of Islamic sciences and literature was deeper and wider than Sir Sayyid’s. But Sir Sayyid was a realist and fully realized and understood the challenges of the modern age, while Shibli grew more and more idealistic and developed a sort of romanticism from which he never succeeded in weaning himself away. Unlike Sir Sayyid and Hali (1837-1914), he was not only interested in referring to the glorious past of Islam, but he worked out a programme of displaying it. ‘He resuscitated and praised the great men of Muslim history and their times. A whole series of influential biographies of the Prophet, of great men of the early days of Islam and the flourishing ‘Abbasi’ Empire, of great theologians, and of the Iranian poets, reminded Muslims unforgettably of their great heritage.’\textsuperscript{24} Besides, he also took upon himself the task of defending Islam and its great men, in which he succeeded considerably because of his vast knowledge, his painstaking researches and intelligent use of the relevant source material available to him. He was fully aware of what modern scholarship demanded of him, but his romanticism sometimes led him to resort to subjectivity and apologetics. However, he is perhaps the only Muslim historian of his time who has definite views about historiography. In the preface
his renowned work *al-Faruq*, he expresses a very high opinion of
the early masters in the field of Muslim historiography, like Ibn
Tutaiba (d. 276 A. H.), Waqidi (d. 230 A. H.) Al-Balazuri (d. 279
A. H.), Tabari (d. 310 A. H.) and Masudi (d. 386 A. H.), but
ments the degeneration of those who followed them since the
beginning of the fifth century. He is very critical of all of them, with
the exception of Ibn Khaldun (1332–1406) who, according to him,
aid the foundation of the philosophy of history. He says that while
writing history two things must be kept in view:

(1) All the events and conditions of a particular period, the
history of which is being written, should be taken into account, i.e.,
culture, social conditions, customs, morals and beliefs—everything
should be given full weight.

(2) Attempt should be made to discover the chain of cause and
effect in all the events.

He claims that in the early histories this methodology is
missing. The reason is that early historians were generally un-
acquainted with philosophy and rational sciences; they were also
ignorant of the various sciences related to historical events. This,
therefore, resulted in most cases in mere narration of political events,
battles, festivals and the rise and fall of dynasties. Moreover, there
is another important point: To what extent the events generally
described in history books are reliable? There are two ways of
examining the events—*riwayat* and *dirayat*. The *riwayat* method,
because of the full development of the sciences of *hadis* and *rijal*
among the Muslims, has been critically and fully used by the early
Muslim historiographers, but the *dirayat* method remained neglected.
By *dirayat* he means, in brief, the application of common sense and
reason in sifting the material and assessing the sources. He is also
in favour of reasonable conjecture in interpreting the event in the
light of the principle of causality but with moderation and caution,
and here he finds fault with the European historians. As for lan-
dage and diction, he is for simple narration of facts and advises to
avoid all elegance of style.

These are the principles which should be, he says, followed
while writing history. It was, however, unfortunate that he himself
failed to adhere completely to these principles. Because of his tradi-
tional education, particularly his training in literature and scholastic
theology, and the self-imposed task of defending and displaying the
glories of Islamic civilization, ‘history to him was mainly the history
of intellectual and cultural development rather than of the political,
social and material progress of human society. Further, in *al-Mamun* he is apologetic and in *al-Farug* subjective.

Shibli did not write much on Indian history, and here again there is a very salient point to note. He considered the world of Islam his *watan* and its history his national history. In his introduction to *al-Mamun* he says: ‘A number of books on Indian history have been written, and the achievements of the Mughals and Timurids have been displayed in bright colours. But obviously the history of India is only a very small part of our national history.’ This is why he wrote abundantly about Islam and its heroes outside India. His monograph on Aurangzeb, *Aurangzeb Alamgir par ek Nazar*, is the only book that he wrote on Indian history. Besides this, there are a few articles by him, for example, Gulbadan Begum’s *Humayun-nama*, Jahangir’s *Tuzuk*, Abdul Baqi’s *Maasir-i-Rahimi*, Zebun-Nisa, Musalmanon ki Ilmi Betaassubi aur Hamare Hindu Bhayun ki Nasipasi and *Hindustan men Islami Hukumat ke Tamaddun ka Asar*.

(1) *Aurangzeb Alamgir par ek Nazar*—This small book, one of the very few original works on Indian History in Urdu, is in defence of Aurangzeb, who has been, according to him, misrepresented and to whom great injustice has been done by the British historians and those who have blindly followed them. This is an original work and is based on authentic sources, of which he has made a reasonable use. His arguments are political in nature, but the religious bias is also obvious, and on the basis of the documents discovered later to which he did not have access, one may refute him on a number of points. His criticism of the British authors like Elphinstone and Lane-Poole is significant, as it represents his anti-British attitude which was due partly to his pan-Islamic ideas and partly to his difference with the Aligarh movement. In this book only certain controversial aspects and events have been examined and explained to show that the charges of intolerance and bad faith levelled against Aurangzeb are unjustified and Shiite historians and British writers have deliberately distorted the facts. The author, himself a Sunni Hanafi, in spite of his efforts to remain objective, has failed to remain impartial, because he seems to support Aurangzeb’s religiosity, his application of theological rules in matters of state and his dislike of Dara Shikoh’s deviation from the Straight Path as understood by the Orthodox.

(2) *Humayun-nama*, *Maasir-Rahimi* and *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri*—These three writings of Shibli are mainly in the form of literary
ppreciation and were published in *an-Nadwa* of Lucknow, respectively in 1907, 1908 and 1910. The main purpose seems to be to introduce these source books to the Urdu knowing readers, with the specific aim of presenting the glorious achievements of the Muslim rulers and amirs of India. Shibli's greatness lies in his historical sense and his anxiety to reconstruct the history of the Indian Muslims y an honest and reasoned appraisal of the original sources. He has examined these three source books mainly from the viewpoint of their importance as source material that gives reliable information bout the cultural achievements of the Mughals. No doubt, there re shades of apologetics here and there, but on the whole these writings clearly indicate that Shibli "was pre-eminently a historian y temperament and taught history to his people."

(3) *Zebun-Nisa*—This small article about the life of Aurangzeb's daughter, Zebun-Nisa, was published in *an-Nadwa* in 1909. Shibli was provoked to write on Zebun-Nisa by a cheap article based on hearsay and bazaar gossip published in the *Indian Magazine and Review*. He complains that the errors committed by English authors generally become current and are received with popular enthusiasm. Then they spread from generation to generation, and ignorant people are led to form a bad opinion about the moral life of the Musalmans. After these introductory remarks he gives an authentic account of Zebun-Nisa's life, based on contemporary sources and reliable taziras. He quotes extensively from the *Maasir-ul-Umara, Maasir-i-Alamgiri, Sarw-i-Azad, Khazana-i-Amirah, Alamgir-nama, Yad-i-Baiza* and *Makhzan-ul-Gharalb*, and tries to give a true picture of the attainments, and character of the Mughal princess. The language is simple and the arguments convincing.

(4) *Hindustan men Islami Hukumat ke Tamaddun ka Asar*—The article starts with an introductory passage which, I think, mirrors Shibli's approach to history. He says:

The conquest of a country by a foreign people is no crime; otherwise the great conquerors of the world would have to be termed as the greatest criminals. We should, therefore, study what impact the conquering people made on the culture and civilization of the conquered land. Chingez Khan, in so far as his conquests are concerned, is one of the greatest conquerors of the world, but every word of his life-story is stained with blood. There was a time when the Marathas dominated the Indian scene. But they came like a storm, plundered, exacted chauth and disappeared. Contrary to this, when a civilized people conquer and occupy a country, there occurs a marked and sudden change in the civilization and culture of
that country—the means of transport, way of living, diet, habits, clothes, houses and their upkeep, commercial goods, art and craft—everything undergoes a revolutionary change. May be the conquered people, due to their obstinacy and arrogance, do not express their gratitude and recognise the cultural benefits they have received, yet everything in that country becomes a living witness to the obligations they own to the conquerors.

This attitude implies that the world was dark before the advent of Islam, and in India, in so far as the cultural goods and civilizational aspects of life are concerned, the Hindus had nothing worth mentioning. What a contrast to what al-Biruni has said in his *Kitab-ul-Hind*. But this is typical, and we find the same theme in Hali, Zakauallah and others. The article is, however, worth reading and Shibli has proved that the Muslims brought so many new things to India. Here again he supports his thesis with extensive extracts from original source books like the *Tuzuk-i-Babari*, Khafi Khan, *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri*, *Ain-i-Akbari*, and the *Maasir-ul-Umara*.

(5) *Musalmanon ki Ilmi Betaassubi aur Hamare Hindu Bhayun ki Nasipasi*—This was to prove that Muslims were lovers of learning and were exhorted to discover knowledge wherever it was. They loved learning outside India, and when they came to India they brought the tradition with them. Shibli wrote this article also on provocation. The editor of the *Bharat Mitra* (Calcutta) wrote a review of Mulla Masih's *Ramayana* and made the following remarks:

‘For centuries such a book was lying unknown. Perhaps, the reason is that the Muslims did not like it.’

‘The Muslims ruled over this country for centuries and their rule ended, but they paid little attention to the literature and sciences of this country...Amir Khusrau took notice of the language of this land but just for a change. He never thought of studying the books of the Hindus; nor did he know about them.’

‘But whatever was done in Akbar's time was on a very limited scale.’

‘Dara Shikoh did pay attention to the books of high standard, belonging to the Hindus...But because of his endeavours in this field, he was dubbed as *Kafir* and lost his life’

Shibli gives extracts like these and is pained to see that even the fair-minded Hindus, like the editor of the *Bharat Mitra*, are sometimes led by their ignorance to make such baseless allegations against the Muslims. He has refuted the charge that no trace is available regarding Masih's life and achievements. He says that
there is not a single *tadkirah* of the Persian poets where the name of Masih does not occur. The editor had said that Mulla Masih belonged to Panipat. Except this, nothing is known about him. Shibli says that among the nobles of Jehangir there was one Muqarrab Khan who originally belonged to Panipat but had settled in Kirana. Masih was a resident of Kirana, but as he was attached to and patronised by Muqarrab Khan, he also came to be known as belonging to Panipat. Almost every *Tazkira* mention his *Ramayana*, and the author of the *Maasir-ul-Umara* has given some selected verses from it. He has been forgotten by people because, as a poet, there was nothing meritorious in him. Firdausi wrote in his *Shah-nama* about the valour and great deeds of the non-Muslim Iranians, and Saulat Turkistani wrote *Saulat-i-Faruqi* and praised the achievements of Abu Bakr and Umar. But what happened? Firdausi is read by and known to every student of Persian poetry, while *Saulat-i-Faruqi* is known to none. Mullah Masih was just an ordinary poet, and had he written about the Prophet, even then he would not have been known by people.

Shibli, in this article, has refuted all the charges and has proved, again on the basis of sources, that neither the Turks nor the Mughals had any prejudice in this regard. But the question remains: Whether both the Hindus and the Muslims alike have not generally, on purely intellectual basis, committed the folly of not studying and understanding, each other’s religion. The historians of today are expected to answer the question. They are also expected to investigate the causes and consequences of this negligence.

REFERENCES

SOME SOVIET HISTORIANS OF MUGHAL INDIA

SURENDRA GOPAL

The growing friendly relations between India and the Soviet Union have been accompanied by deep interest in Indian studies in the Soviet Union. Modern Indian history has been the object of their special study, but in order to understand and analyse the problems of British conquest and economic exploitation of India, the Soviet historians have devoted attention to the economic life of Mughal India.

The Soviet historians, being the followers of Marx and Lenin, subscribe to the theory of Economic Determinism and mostly concentrate upon economic history. In regard to the feudal period they usually study the forms and techniques of production, the extent of the penetration of money-economy, the process of urbanisation and the nature of towns, the nature of land ownerships etc., and seek to answer the question whether the feudal economy contained elements of capitalism or not. In the present paper we will generally confine ourselves to a study of the views of Soviet scholars on the forms of handicraft production in Mughal India—a subject, which has been the centre of lively debate among them. On it largely depended the answer to the question whether the Indian economy during the Mughal period contained germs of capitalism or not.

The late Prof. Reinsner, to whose credit goes the kindling of interest in the economic history of Mughal India among the present group of Soviet Indologists, took up the problem in his monograph, *Narodnie dvizheniya v Indii v XVII–XVIII vv.* (Popular Movements in India in the 17th–18th Centuries). The movements of the Marathas, the Sikhs and the Jats form the central theme of the book, but Prof. Reinsner has, in the first chapter, discussed certain features of the socio-economic history of the Mughal Empire in the second half of the seventeenth century. According to him the common features of the economic life were ‘the community which combined agriculture with handicrafts, the diffusion of class and caste divisions everywhere, the conserving of the remains of slavery and communal-patrimonial structure. In India crafts had not been completely separated from agriculture and the development of commodity relationships had not
yet led to the formation of markets embracing the territories of different peoples of India, not to speak of a common Indian market. The feudal division of the country into small parts had not been liquidated.\textsuperscript{13} The author supports the view of Marx that this type of feudalism was characterised by the unity of small land-holdings and domestic handicrafts.\textsuperscript{4} The feudal property in India remained in the form of governmental holdings in land because of the need for common control over means of irrigation which were essential prerequisites of agricultural production.\textsuperscript{5} The governmental property in land symbolised the monopoly in land and irrigational structures of the whole feudal class and the form which enabled the assertion of supremacy of the big feudal landholders.

The Great Mughal claimed about one-eighth of the arable land in his dominion as crown-lands. The system of jagirs served to concentrate the lands in the hands of a group of big feudal lords.\textsuperscript{6} The policy of the Mughal rulers of transferring the jagirdars after a short tenure encouraged them to extort money from the peasants by all possible oppressions. However, these jagirdars could not and did not have the time to expropriate lands of the earlier landholders, who were mostly Hindus and who occupied them when they were the ruling groups in the country.\textsuperscript{7} These feudal lords often had an establishment in the cities. So the Indian cities were not the centres of commerce and handicrafts but were under the influence of feudal elements, who were serious obstacles to the growth of elements of capitalism in the cities.\textsuperscript{8}

In spite of the above facts Prof. Reisner agrees that progressive elements did appear in Indian society in the form of division of labour between the cities and the villages, acceleration of the process of exchange of goods\textsuperscript{*} between them, formation of regional markets which to some extent dealt with agricultural products.\textsuperscript{9} We have signs of regional specialisation in the production of agricultural products.\textsuperscript{10} The cities also increased in importance as centres of economic activities.\textsuperscript{11} All these factors could have undermined the isolationist character of the village communities in India.\textsuperscript{12} Although this progress did not as yet form the pre-condition for the change-over to capitalism, it did influence the class struggle going on in the society.\textsuperscript{13} The peasants and the craftsmen combined in their fight against the feudal lords, and out of this arose a number of popular movements.\textsuperscript{14}

Another important feature of the economic life was the role of the money-lender in villages. Prof. Reisner ascribes this to the
introduction of the system of payment of land revenue in cash at the end of the sixteenth century. When Aurangzeb increased the land-revenue to more than fifty per cent of the gross harvest, the feudal exploitation of the peasants increased and the peasant became a constant prey of the money-lender. 16 The productive forces were seriously impaired and the peasants were compelled to give up farming and leave their land. 16 Prof. Reisner, following Marx, remarks that the growth of mercantile and usurious capital did not play any progressive role, since it simply worsened the condition of production and did not change the character of production. 17

As a result of exploitation, the peasant rose against feudal lords and the class war became acute. This was an important reason which caused the crisis of the Mughal Empire towards the end of the seventeenth century. 18

Another important fact which led to the crisis of the Mughal Empire was the sharpening of contradictions within the nobility itself. Used to luxurious living and lavish expenditure, they had to borrow frequently from the money-lenders and, like the peasants, they also fell into their clutches. This in turn adversely affected the peasants. 19 The feudal lords, in order to supplement their incomes, began to engage in trading activities and money-lending. The feudal lords no longer wanted to share their income from the exploitation of the peasants with the central authority. The small and medium feudal lords, especially the Hindus, wanted to keep the 'right of exploitation of their own peasantry as their sole monopoly.' This development, along with the economic decline of the country, prepared the ground for the final disruption of the Mughal Empire in the middle of the eighteenth century. 20

Prof. Reisner also considers the role of European trading companies in India in the seventeenth century, and concludes that the Europeans transformed India into an object of exploitation and accumulation of capital. They forced out the Indians from the maritime trade in the basin of the Indian Ocean. The opening of the trade route to Europe via the Cape of Good Hope caused the decline of Indian land trade to areas round the Mediterranean Sea and resulted in the ruin of many cities (specially of N. W. India). 21 The European Companies combined economic penetration with piracy against the Indian ships. 22

Prof. Reisner holds that the economic policies of Aurangzeb not only deepened the crisis of the Mughal Empire but also led to its final collapse. 23
Prof. Reisner further took up popular movements against the Mughal Empire and discussed them in a series of articles. He specifically deals with the movements of the Marathas, the Sikhs and the Jats.

The disintegration of the village community, the penetration of money economy in the villages, the rise in the economic and military power of the feudal lords prepared the ground for further development of the institution of feudalsm among the Marathas. The Maratha feudal lords were now prepared to extend their holdings not only at the expense of communal lands but also by fighting against the external grabbers. This became one of the causes of the Maratha uprisings. The peasants sided with the feudal lords because they were being exploited not only by their own feudal lords but also by the feudal lords of Ahmadnagar and Bijapur. The invasion of the Mughals in the second half of the seventeenth century threatened the peasants with complete annihilation.

Prof. Reisner calls the Sikh uprising a peasant movement, but holds that it began as a movement of protest by the well-to-do trading classes and craftsmen in the cities against the exploitation of feudal lords who even failed to guarantee the security of life and property. Being nearer to the capital they were always subject to a large number of extraordinary taxes. In the middle of the seventeenth century, when the crisis of the Mughal Empire deepened and the economy of the country worsened, the masses—thousands of peasants who had lost their lands and the craftsmen who had lost their livelihood—joined the movement.

The Jats, who led the second most powerful movement against the Mughal Empire, also inhabited the areas adjoining the capital. Prof. Reisner points out that they were also subjected to intensive exploitation not only by the feudal lords but also by the traders, who flocked there from distant places to purchase indigo and cloth. Their miseries increased because, being near the capital, they were forced to work on Royal construction projects like palaces, forts, mosques and roads without wages. The Mughal armies, generally started their campaigns from Agra, and on such occasions they plundered the surrounding peasantry with impunity. This further impoverished the peasantry.

Thus Prof. Reisner has clearly brought out the rot that had set in the economy of the Mughal Empire in the second half of the seventeenth century and has shown that the three popular movements, of the Marathas, the Sikhs and the Jats, drew their sustenance from
economic discontent.

Other Soviet scholars, on the whole, agree with Prof. Reisner's views on the economy of Mughal India. His statement that the Indian economy in the seventeenth century did not have those elements which would have enabled it to effect a change-over from the feudal economy to capitalist economy, while meeting with the approval of some Soviet scholars, has been challenged by others.

One of the most prominent supporters of Prof. Reisner's theory is Dr. (Mme) Antonova. Dr. Pavlov, Dr. Alaev, Dr. Chicherov, Dr. (Mme) Ashrafyan disagree with Prof. Reisner.

In her monograph on Akbar's India, Dr. (Mme) Antonova remarks that right up to the end of the eighteenth century Indian economy was based upon natural economy. The feudal method of production and the feudal lords dominated the economy. The feudal lords actively participated in trade. The imported articles in the country were all luxury goods which were used by the jagirdars. The prosperity of merchants and money-lenders depended on the sweet will of the feudal lords. The merchants and the money-lenders had stakes in the collection of land revenue and, therefore, they were indirectly participants in the exploitation of the peasantry. Consequently, they did not oppose the feudal lords and thus failed to create in India the elements of a new social order. In the opinion of Dr. (Mme) Antonova, the highly developed trade and the system of money-lending hindered the growth of capitalism.

The author, however, agrees that internal trade in India was highly developed, and specially grains were moved from one part to another. Bengal had the lion's share in the export of grains to other parts of the country. The large number of markets and fairs, chiefly around places of pilgrimage, testify to the lively internal trade. The author ascribes the rise in internal trade to the great interest taken by the Emperor himself, who constructed a network of roads connecting the different parts of the empire. An important feature was the absence of participation by the jagirdars in the internal trade of the country as against the external trade, probably because it was less profitable. The author holds that these developments still did not pave the way for the change-over to a capitalist economy.

Money-lending expanded greatly, but the author quotes Marx in her support that it did not mean any change in the technique of production. Ultimately the system contributed to the decline of the Mughal Empire.
Speaking of cities, the author points out that they were of four types viz., (1) cities round the military camps; (2) cities round the centres of pilgrimages; (3) port cities and; (4) cities round the centres of internal trade and crafts. Some of the cities, of course, combined all the four characteristics. All the cities had one element in common—they were dominated by feudal lords. The feudal supremacy precluded the possibility of the growth of a middle class in the towns. The merchants had no opportunity to participate independently in the political life of the country.

The craftsmen were also dependent upon feudal lords, who meddled in the production and sale of goods. The organisation of crafts was very primitive, and the instruments of production were very simple. There was no sign that the ‘manufacture period,’ that is, when a number of craftsmen come together and work under one roof for one common master, had dawned in India. Dr. (Mme) Antonova holds that in India this ‘manufacture period’ never came into existence. In the Royal Karkhanas, the workers were not hired in the true sense of the term. They were craftsmen, who had been forced to work on pain of punishment. There was no internal division of labour, and the Karkhanas did not belong to any private entrepreneur. Thus the elements of capitalism had been absent in the Indian economy.

Dr. (Mme) Antonova explains the lack of capitalist elements because of the insecurity of life and property, which deterred investment of capital in productive enterprises. On the basis of the above arguments Dr. (Mme) Antonova agrees with Prof. Reisner that Indian economy did not contain elements of capitalism.

Dr. (Mme) Antonova further developed this thesis in her article, O genezise kapitalisma v Indii (On the Genesis of Capitalism in India). According to her, in spite of the predominance of money economy, the feudal influence was so great that the rich traders tried to hide their wealth so as not to attract the greedy eyes of the feudal lords. If one could find a rich merchant, it was extremely rare to come across a rich craftsman. Even this growth of money economy was unable to shatter the isolation of the self-contained villages. There was no uniformity in weights and measures, not to speak of a change in the technique of production. Division of labour in production, which is an essential element of the ‘manufacture system’, did not appear except in crafts, where it was absolutely necessary, like shipping and mining. The three basic elements for the rise of capitalism, (1) presence of a mobile labour force, free from personal
dependence and lacking personal tools of production; (2) concentration of wealth into few hands; and (3) the attainment of a definite standard of productive capacity, were absent in the Mughal economy. In India the first capitalist factory was set up only in the nineteenth century by English capital.

The position of Dr. (Mme) Antonova has been challenged by a host of Soviet scholars like Dr. Pavlov, Dr. Alaev, Dr. Chicherov and Dr. (Mme) Ashrafyan. Dr. Pavlov in his monograph, Formirovanie indiiskoi burshuazii (Formation of the Indian Bourgeois), after discussing the economy of India in the seventeenth century came to the conclusion that there were elements of capitalism in Indian economy, but they were still not strong enough to start a consistent movement. Dr. Pavlov pointed out that the shipping yards of Gujarat employed a number of workers, who worked for the master and thus ‘the manufacture period’ had already appeared. Detailed division of labour in production had come into being, and the isolationist character of the village community was fast disappearing.

Dr. Pavlov has been supported by Dr. Alaev. In his monograph Ushnay Indiya (Southern India), and an article, Razvitie indiiskogo tkachevstva do proniknoevnya v indiu evropetsev (Development of Indian Weaving till the Penetration of Europeans in India), Dr. Alaev refutes Dr. (Mme) Antonova. According to him the system of advancing money to the craftsmen on the part of the merchants or their representatives had resulted in the virtual enslavement of the workers, who had been in essence transformed into hired workers. The hold of the merchants was so great that many craftsmen had lost their instruments of production. The Indian merchants and the middlemen were so deeply entrenched that the Europeans, despite their best efforts, could not bypass them and establish direct contacts with the craftsmen.

The main characteristic of the ‘manufacture period’, that is, a detailed division of labour in the production of a particular commodity, was present in India in the seventeenth century. In Gujarat and on the Coromandel coast specialists in dyeing and printing of cloth were flourishing. Shipping was an independent profession in Gujarat. Textiles manufactured in one city were bleached and dyed in other cities. According to Olafsen, in the seventeenth century, near Tanjore, there were big factories for the printing of cloth. The subjugation of craftsmen by merchant-capital created certain conditions for the development of capitalistic relations.
Dr. Chicherov in his book *Ekonomicheskoy razvitie Indii pered angliiskim zavodstvom* (Economic Development of India before the English Conquest) and articles *Nikotorie materialy o remeslenom proishodstve v severo-vostochnikh raionakh Indii v XV-XVII vv.* (Some Materials about Handicrafts Production in the North-eastern Regions of India in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth centuries) and *Podchinenie remesla torgovim kapitalom severo-vostochnikh i ugro-vostochnikh raionakh Indii v XVII v.* (Subjugation of Handicrafts by Merchant Capital in North-eastern and South-eastern Regions of India in the Eighteenth century), supports Dr. Pavlov and Dr. Alaev. He concludes, 'At the same time within the feudal economy of India in the 16th–18th centuries active processes were under way which led, in the main, towards the end of this period to essential modification in the pattern of the relations of production without however changing them radically.'

Qualitatively new forms of economic organisation of labour appeared in the crafts of feudal India in that period, alongside the old traditional forms. Deeper social division of labour, separation of the crafts from agriculture and the town from the village, and the development of commodity-money relations gave rise to the rudiments of capitalist relations both in the form of capitalist cottage industry and in the form of capitalist manufacture.63

On the whole, the Soviet historians have veered round the views of Dr. Pavlov, Dr. Alaev and Dr. Chicherov. The views expressed in *Novay istoriya Indii* (New History of India) confirm it. (The book covers the history of India from mid-eighteenth century to the end of the first World War. It is a combined project of Soviet scholars and has been prepared by the Institute of the Asian People, Moscow, and therefore, may be said to represent the consensus of opinion among Soviet scholars.) The authors in the chapter on Social and Economic condition of India in the first half of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries write: 'In different branches of crafts there appeared sporadically and in embryonic form elements of capitalism.'64

The conclusion arrived at by the authors of *Novay istoriya Indii* seem to be correct and based on available historical evidence.

It would be wrong to accept the view that Indian economy had already effected the change-over to capitalism from feudalism in the seventeenth century, for there is evidence to suggest any change in the technique and organisation of production. Production was still carried on by the age-old methods and tools. The increased demand
for goods was met not by any revolution in the technique and organisation of production but by more intensive specialisation, i.e., many peasants, who had earlier devoted their time partly to farming and partly to crafts, gave up agriculture and concentrated on crafts as whole-timers. This is confirmed by contemporary evidence and accepted by Soviet scholars as well. However, it would be equally fallacious to hold that Indian economy was stagnant and incapable of responding to new challenges.

There is incontrovertible evidence that the Indian economy, based on ‘self-sufficient villages’, was being undermined. The practice of paying land revenue in cash, introduced in the sixteenth century, encouraged the growth of money economy and led to the production of goods for the market. In the seventeenth century money economy was widely prevalent in India. The documents of East India Company and the accounts of European travellers in the country point to the growing importance of money-changers (sarrafs) and money-lenders—sure signs of the growth of money-economy. The Soviet scholars, especially Drs. Pavlov, Alaev and Chicherov, also accept this on the basis of evidence furnished by the documents of European Companies. Another pointer to the growth of money economy was the establishment of a number of mints for coining money.

The network of roads, constructed by Sher Shah and Akbar, besides consolidating the central authority, also helped to break the isolation of the villages and brought them into the vortex of city life. The improved communications led to the exchange of commodities between far and away places. For example, Kashmir and Gujarat and Bengal exchanged through land routes not only manufactured goods but also raw materials. Thus Drs. Pavlov, Alaev and Chicherov correctly mark the tendency towards the creation of an all India market—a development which was bound to affect the self-sufficient economy of the Indian villages and bring about a fundamental change.

The fundamental change did not come about in the seventeenth century, but the symptoms for the change were pronounced. The increased State demand and oppressions of nobility and merchants impoverished the peasants as well as the craftsmen. The peasants left their lands and an army of workers, who were ready to sell their labour in lieu of wages, had been formed. A more important change took place in the status of the artisans.

Craftsmen were losing their independence. They had practically lost their freedom of marketing their goods, because they now
worked against advances, paid by the merchants or the representatives of merchants. These advances were not only in the form of cash and raw-materials, but, in times of distress, in the shape of corn. The subjugation of craftsmen by the representatives of merchant capital ushered in faint but significant changes in the organisation of the production system.

Independent craftsmen, now in great difficulties, became available for engagement as hired artisans. The Europeans took advantage of this situation. In their workshops and factories, Indian artisans began to exchange their skill for wages. There are a number of instances when Indian weavers were working in workshops set up by the Europeans. The English established a Dyeing House at Ahmadabad, manned by Indian artisans. Similarly, the English tried refining saltpetre in their own factories. Hence, a new relationship, that of the owner and the employee—an essential ingredient of capitalism—was developing. Here was also the germ of the manufacture system (when a number of craftsmen work under one roof, with tools etc., provided by the master)—the forerunner of the capitalist system of production. Drs. Pavlov, Alaev and Chicherov have correctly emphasised this point while refuting Dr. (Mme) Antonova’s contention that there was no element of capitalism in Indian economy in the seventeenth century and the manufacture system never developed in India.

The important point remains that these buds of capitalist economy did not blossom in the seventeenth century. The reason was the stranglehold of feudal lords on the economy all over India. The lack of security of life and property discouraged the Indian merchants from investing their capital in setting up such enterprises. The European competition also acted as a deterrent. The Europeans had extracted various concessions from the feudal lords and were more favourably placed than the indigenous merchants in Indian economy. The Europeans used extra-commercial methods, like force etc., to relegate the Indian entrepreneurs into the background. The result was that Indian capital was invested in money-lending, where risks were small and the returns not insignificant. The Europeans encouraged it because they were short of capital. This development, as Dr. Pavlov and Dr. Alaev have correctly pointed out, blocked the growth of capitalist elements in Indian economy in the seventeenth century.

Hence, the conclusion in the light of the above evidence is inescapable, and we must agree with the authors of Novay istoriya
that, during the Mughal period, the feudal economy was undergoing a change. Elements of capitalism had appeared, but they were sporadic and weak, incapable of achieving by themselves a complete transformation of feudal economy.

A Note on Sources Used by Some Soviet Historians of Mughal India

It may be interesting for the Indian readers to know the sources which have been relied upon by Soviet scholars to reach their conclusions.

The importance of a particular source has been determined by the nature of study made by the Soviet scholar. Since Soviet scholars have been mostly concentrating on economic and social aspects, naturally they rate sources like the *Ain-i-Akbari*, accounts of European travellers like Pelsaert, Tavernier, Bernier and Thevenot as of paramount importance.

The sources for the study of Mughal India are extremely extensive and it is humanly impossible for a single individual to use all of them. A choice has necessarily to be made and different Soviet scholars have laid emphasis on particular sources, as warranted by the type of their studies.

Prof. Reisner in his book *Narodnie dvizheniya v Indii v XVII–XVIII vv.* set about to examine the popular movements and their economic roots in the second half of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries and has depended mainly on the travel accounts of Europeans in the seventeenth century. His main reliance has been on Pelsaert and Manucci. The latter is indeed a store-house of information regarding the reign of Aurangzeb. While dealing with the movement of the Sikhs, Prof. Reisner also takes into account Persian chronicles like the *Muntakhab-ul-Lubab* which he has used it in Persian. Furthermore, Prof. Reisner has relied heavily upon the researches of British and Indian scholars in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries on Maratha and Sikh histories, for example, on works of Grant Duff, Kincaid nand Parasnis, Macauliffe, Elphinstone, Cunningham, William Irvine, Moreland, Jadunath Sarkar, S. N. Sen and Choksey etc. He has also consulted the French work, L. R. Krishan’s *Les sikhs Origine et developpement de la Communante*.

While reconstructing the agrarian history of Indian communities—the Marathas, the Sikhs and the Jats—in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, Prof. Reisner has made extensive use of Indian
gazetteers, published towards the end of the nineteenth century. This has to some extent led to the projection of later developments to the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Here it may be pointed out that Prof. Reisner was working under a severe handicap—he had no access to local materials. However, reliance on District Gazetteers for reconstructing the agrarian history of India in the seventeenth century is a marked feature of Soviet historiography.

Dr. (Mme) Antonova, whose monograph on social and economic conditions of India during Akbar’s period was published in 1952, uses primary and secondary sources in a number of languages, English, Persian, French, German and Russian. Among the primary sources used by her in Persian are Abul Fazl’s Ain-i-Akbari and Akbar-nama, Badauni’s Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, Nizam ud-Din Ahmad’s Tabaqat i-Akbari. In order to treat the reign of Akbar in a correct perspective, she has consulted some earlier and later Persian chronicles as well. Some of them are—Barani’s Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi, Shahnawaz Khan’s Maasir-i-Rahimi, Nihawandi’s Maasir-ul-Umra, Amin Ahmad Razi’s Haft Iqlim and Ali Muhammad Khan’s Mirat-i-Ahmadi. (It may be pointed out that some of the above chronicles she consulted in manuscript form, preserved in the library of the Institute of Oriental Studies, Tashkent. The Library has a very fine collection of manuscripts relating to India. They are awaiting proper study by Indian scholars.)

Dr. (Mme) Antonova has also used reports of Parliamentary Committees on the affairs of the English East India Company, published in the nineteenth century to discuss the agrarian problem during Akbar’s reign.

Other primary sources consulted by her are Tulsi Das’s Ramayana (the Russian translation), Adi Granth (trans. by E. Trumpp), of Elliot and Dawson’s, One hundred songs of Kabir (trans. by Rabindra Nath Tagore) and accounts of contemporary European travellers. Like Prof. Reisner, she also relies heavily on Pelsaert’s Jahangir’s India to emphasise her conclusions about the economic conditions of the Indian peasantry, artisans and masses.

Dr. (Mme) Antonova has used secondary sources in German, French and English. She has consulted works in German by Buhler, Glasenapp, Horn and von Noer etc. She has referred to works in French by Tassy and Menant. She has exhaustively used literature available on Akbar in English—works of Vincent Smith, Moreland, Ibn Hasan, J. J. Modi, Krishnamurthi and Varma etc. Thus the sources utilised by Dr. (Mme) Antonova are varied and extensive.
Dr. Pavlov in his book *Formirovanie indiiskoi burzhuazii* has exclusively depended on travel accounts of the Europeans to describe the economic condition of India in the seventeenth century. He has completely ignored the documents of European trading companies, including the accounts of some important travellers like the Italian, Pietro della Valle, and the French, Carre and others. As a result, the author has been led to certain hasty conclusions about economic tendencies, which are not warranted by the evidence he adduces. Moreover, the author freely uses evidences of the late seventeenth or even mid-nineteenth century to corroborate his statement relating to the seventeenth century.

In contrast to Dr. Pavlov, Dr. Alaev in his work *Uzhanuy Indiya* has been very meticulous about the sources. The period he has taken, fourteenth to eighteenth centuries, is a long one and the available sources are diverse and abundant. Dr. Alaev has tried to tap a wide range of primary sources—inscriptions, travel accounts, published documents of European companies (mainly of the English East India Company) and contemporary chronicles (trans. into English). He has also used district gazetteers, manuals and other informative materials, published by governmental departments from time to time in the present and the last centuries pertaining to his area of study.

Dr. Alaev has used practically all the research works published on South India, relating to his period, by Indian or European authors in English. He is careful about his conclusions, and has based them, as far as practicable, on contemporary evidence. Dr. Alaev's monograph is indeed a detailed piece of research.

Dr. Chicherov has extensively consulted primary and secondary sources in preparing his monograph *Ekonomicheskoy razvitie Indii pered angliiskim zavavaniem*. Besides studying all the primary sources available in English (published documents of European trading companies and published accounts of contemporary European travellers) he has also studied contemporary Persian chronicles, bearing on the topic (in Persian). He has also made use of some sources in the Bengali language to buttress his conclusions about the socio-economic condition. Relevant contemporary inscriptions have also been utilised. Like other Soviet historians, he has studied reports, published by the various departments of the Government of India in order to get a correct perspective of the agrarian system. Dr. Chicherov has critically used practically all the literature published on the subject by Indian and European scholars in English.
Thus this brief account shows that the Soviet scholars on Mughal India have based their studies on a wide range of primary sources. Credit should be given to them for tapping so many primary sources in so many languages. Unfortunately, due to physical limitations, they have not been able to tap local materials.

REFERENCES

25. *Ibid.*, p. 113
36. *Ibid.*, p. 120.
38. Ibid.
39. Ibid., p. 125.
40. Ibid., p. 128.
41. Ibid., p. 134.
42. Ibid., p. 135.
43. Ibid., p. 136.
44. Ibid., p. 138.
45. Ibid., p. 139.
46. Ibid., p. 140.
48. Ibid.
49. Ibid., p. 182.
50. Ibid., p. 184.
51. Ibid., p. 187.
52. Ibid., p. 194.
54. Ibid., p. 35.
55. Ibid., p. 32.
56. Ibid., p. 16.
58. O genezise, p. 176.
59. Uzhanay, p. 61.
60. Ibid., pp. 65–66.
61. Genezise, p. 177.
62. Ibid., p. 178.
65. Dr. Irfan Habib has dwelt at length on this aspect in his paper ‘Banking in Mughal India’, published in Contributions to Indian Economic History, Vol. I, pp. 1–21.
66. The Cambridge History of India, (Cambridge, 1937) Vol. IV, p. 57; K. A. Antonova, Ocherki........, p. 120.
68. We may also refer to the movement of food grains from one part of India to other parts—a normal feature in those days. Irfan Habib, The Agrarian System of Mughal India, London, 1963.
69. The abundance of servants in cities and the flourishing slave-trade may be cited in support of this statement.
16. We may also point out that the germs of manufacture system were already present in ship-building and mining. The accounts of European travellers testify this.
ANANDA COOMARASWAMY AS A HISTORIAN OF RAJPUT PAINTING

B. N. Goswami

It is at once easy and difficult to write of Ananda Coomaraswamy as a historian of Rajput painting. It is easy because few obscurities attend either upon his person or his writings; he is so near to us in point of time that we know much about his life and nearly everything about his writings, and again, he has written of his themes on the evidence of materials to which he had no exclusive access. And yet it is difficult to write of his work not only because the last word has not yet been said on Rajput painting—every passing year brings to light new documents—but also because he is so brilliantly persuasive and writes with such unfailing tact that, even at his most emphatic, he somehow leaves room for our disagreements gently to coexist by the side of his theses. He wrote with such deep conviction and seemed to be able to move his readers so intensely that, while reading him even today, one falls unknowingly under a spell, and tends to suspend one's own judgement.

This ability to sway independent judgements, he displayed early in his writing career when he turned from the discipline of geology to interpreting the art and culture of India, and when he wrote his Rajput Painting, following a brief essay on the same theme in 1912, he took the Western world by storm, as it were.

Fifty years have elapsed since his Rajput Painting first appeared. Much has been written on the subject since, and the studies of Indian painting have registered a significant advance upon those pioneering days. It is time, therefore, to have a fresh look at Dr. Coomaraswamy's work, especially as it concerns Rajput painting, not only because our judgements have relatively matured as time has gone by, but also because even today almost all writers on the subject, however much it may be in fashion to affect disagreement with his conclusions, turn towards him for acquainting themselves with the soul of Rajput painting. The work that influenced a whole generation of writers still exercises powerful fascination.

To dwell on the merits of Ananda Coomaraswamy's work at length would be saying the well-known things over again: he was the
true discoverer of Rajput art, and if several Rajput paintings had been known and even published before, they had never been collectively viewed or properly understood. They lay in a heap of material that went by the name of medieval Indian painting, and it belonged to Dr. Coomaraswamy to pick them up, dust and, then, insert them into the frame of his sensitive phrases. He proceeded, then, to distil for us the essence of Rajput painting, and in doing this brought to his task that brilliance of thought and that grace and facility of expression which he so powerfully commanded. He must, indeed, be regarded as one of the most eloquent writers on Indian art of all time. He created, again, by his consistent efforts, an atmosphere of new studies, clearing the air of the prejudice and nonsense of ‘experts’ like Baden Powell and James Fergusson, and of the indulgent or indiscriminate enthusiasm of several ‘revivers’ of Indian art.

We are principally concerned, however, with the work of Ananda Coomaraswamy as a historian of art, and here one runs into disagreements with him which it is partially the purpose of this brief paper to record. In doing this one may go wrong, but the following points are raised in the belief that it is important to offer points of view.

One feels forced to question, at the very beginning, the limits which Dr. Coomaraswamy thought belonged to the task of the art historian. ‘The justification of the historian of art,’ he wrote in his Rajput Painting, ‘is to be found in his ability to bring the reader into contact with his theme; and I, he continued, ‘have attempted no more than this.’ This, it appears, was not simply a part of a general statement in which he sought the indulgence of ‘later students’ for the ‘errors of commission and omission’ in his pioneering work: it was a considered definition of the task of the art historian to which he adhered more or less even in his later years. It becomes understandable in the context of those early times why in his Rajput Painting he chose to dwell more on the social and psychological explanation of that beautiful phenomenon; but years later, he continued to regard this explanation as his central theme as an art historian. The differentiation between schools, the evolution of styles, their analysis and inter-relationships, remained in his studies on the fringe, as it were. This is not to say that he ignored these: in flashes of brilliance and insight he threw out suggestions and formulated theories that profoundly affected later studies, but they hardly ever became his principal concern. He was, for most part of the time, interpreting, one feels, rather than
writing the history of Rajput painting.

To take an example. Rajput painting was divided broadly by Ananda Commaraswamy into Rajasthani and Pahari. The former, in his Rajput Painting, he split into local schools of production like Jaipur, Datia, Orchha, and ‘presumably Udaipur and Ujjain,’ etc., without entering into any long discussion about what separated them one from the other, apart from physical distance. In the Pahari group he drew the line between the two principal schools: Jammu and Kangra, fitting all paintings from this region into one or the other of these two centres although hinting, at the same time, at the possibilities of other centres like Chamba, Kulu, Mandi, Suket, Rampur, Guler and Garhwal being active.

Nearly ten years after the publication of Rajput Painting, he sought to give more substance to the division of Rajput painting into local schools, and in the Rajasthani group included the Bundelkhand, Mewar, Western Malwa and Gujrat, and Central Rajputana (in which he put ‘Jodhpur, Bikaner, and above all Jaipur’) centres. While this certainly looks very detailed and effective, it is of interest to dwell on the bases on which Dr. Coomaraswamy distinguished between them and identified the products of some of the schools. The early Ragamala sets are allotted to Bundelkhand, the suggestion being ‘only based on the general character of the architecture represented in these paintings, and on the language of the inscribed poems.’ He expressed the honest fear while doing it that the suggestion ‘may not be well founded.’

For Mewar painting the main part of the evidence was taken by him to be the paintings of the theme of Shri Krishna as Shri Nathaji which could be traced to the Nathdwara shrine and which therefore it was ‘natural to suppose’ were produced in the state of Mewar. There also were the wall paintings in the island-palaces of Udaipur, and ‘more recent portraits and other paintings’ on the walls of the main Udaipur palace.

The Jodhpur work, again, Dr. Coomaraswamy said, was recognisable from ‘the special form of the large turban,’ and, as for Jaipur, Amber, the old Kachhwaha capital, it was ‘reasonable to suppose……was already in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries the main centre of Rajasthani painting,’ partly because of the political contacts of Jaipur with the Mughal court accounting for the influence of its art on early Mughal painting, and partly because of the existence of a vigorous tradition of painting both on walls and on paper at Jaipur in the twentieth century.
There may be much in what Dr. Coomaraswamy says in nearly all these cases, but one notices again and again that the considerations on which the differentiation is made between the various schools are not those of style but of matters which are other than internal, so to say, to the paintings. The evidence considered by Dr. Coomaraswamy, one should have thought, would form the beginning point of further analysis of each school, the basis on which unimpeachably to place a group of paintings in a particular school. It would have been natural then to proceed, after analysing and describing the elements of style in a school, to identifying more and more paintings of that centre of art production and trace the development of that school. But this, the more important part of the task, remains undone.

In Dr. Coomaraswamy's treatment of Pahari painting, one encounters the same reluctance to identify, on considerations of style, the paintings of the Punjab hills. The broad division of Pahari paintings into the Jammu and Kangra groups that he made in 1916 he retained in the Catalogue indicating at the same time that it 'may be possible with more exact knowledge to classify some at least of the Pahari paintings in accordance with another scheme.' This 'scheme', however, consists of little else than the listing of political divisions of the hill states, following traditional accounts, into states of the Eastern or Jalandhar group and the Western or Dogra group, each consisting of eleven states, having their own ruling clans like the Katoch, Guleria, Jamwal, Jasrotia etc. There is little or no indication whether the existence of an independent political unit also necessarily meant the existence of an independent style of painting as practised there, and although Dr. Coomaraswamy thought that other states, apart from Nurpur, Guler, Kangra, Mandi, Sukhet, Jammu and Bandhralta, had their own local schools, he found it difficult in the state of knowledge at that time to identify their productions.

It becomes difficult to escape the conclusion that Dr. Coomaraswamy took both political boundaries and political importance as of central importance in the matter of the existence of local schools of painting; for it is hard, except in these terms, to explain the listing by him of all the states of the Punjab hills, and of the two main schools of the hills as belonging to Jammu and Kangra. In the case of the latter, he quite significantly notes down what may be his explanation of the phenomenon. 'It may be remarked,' he says, 'that Jammu and Kangra in the eighteenth century were by far the
most powerful and wealthiest of all the Hill States.\textsuperscript{18}

The broad distinctions that Dr. Coomaraswamy made are no longer tenable, and we know fortunately much more about local schools now, but I am not suggesting that he is to blame if he did not at that time discover the importance of the developments in centres like Basohli, Mankot, Kulu and Bilaspur. What is suggested here is that the division made by Dr. Coomaraswamy was made in some haste, as it were, and on the basis of materials of evidence which even at that time could have been bettered.

This leads us to one of the sources on which Dr. Coomaraswamy relied for his information. For his analysis of the Pahari schools, it is not known with any certainty whether he made attempts to make enquiries in the hills themselves or saw royal collections, and there is mention by him of only one visit to the area and that to the old Kangra town. It becomes once again hard to resist the conclusion that even this broad division he made partly by attaching importance to the power and wealth of Jammu and Kangra, and partly by relying on the information supplied to him by the dealers in antiquities, more specifically by the ‘Amritsar dealer,’\textsuperscript{19} whom he prominently mentions in his writings. It was from the dealers that he acquired a large number of the paintings and drawings that went to form his magnificent collection: those were the days when the dealers carried about with them stacks of Pahari miniatures, quoting a flat, incredibly low, price for all paintings regardless of their quality.\textsuperscript{18} The dealers also had ‘authentic information’ to pass on to the customer if he showed any interest, and it is enquiries from them, one is led to conclude, that formed a substantial part of the evidence of Dr. Coomaraswamy.

This does not on the face of it appear objectionable: the dealers, it is possible to argue, after all know most about their own collections. The strenuous search after paintings led them into the remotest corners of the hills, and they knew the collections, the source of each painting they acquired, the artists, and the traditions in their families. But it is at the same time important to bear in mind that it is precisely this information they do their utmost to keep back for a variety of reasons. The information which they supplied was either interested or calculatedly distorted, for the point with them was never to betray the true source of their supplies for fear alike of rival dealers and direct purchase by buyers. And, in some cases, the fear of the law, for we must be sure that a large number at least of sculpture was ‘acquired’ in violation of the laws which aim at the
protection of monuments of importance. Stories current in the trade tell how the dealers often threw scholars off the scent about the objects supplied to them, the scholars nonetheless bravely pursuing the 'information' and building up a theory around it!

One knows only of one case where Dr. Coomaraswamy showed some suspicion of the Amritsar dealer's information, and that is where he doubts the description given by the dealer of what he believed to be the Jammu style pictures. These were referred to as 'Tibeti' by the Amritsar dealer, and Dr. Coomaraswamy only mildly suspects the accuracy of this description by referring to these paintings as 'the so called Tibeti' pictures. In other cases he took, I am afraid, the word of his informants too seriously, neglecting to examine the evidence with that sharpness which is characteristic of so much of his work.

In deciphering the inscriptions on the paintings to which one has, in the absence of other records, perforce to attach considerable importance, he seems to have been in somewhat of a hurry again. One cannot find fault with his readings of the Takri inscriptions, for that is a script which is capable of defying the most patient of scholarships, but even in the Nagari inscriptions, most of which occur on Rajasthani paintings, Dr. Coomaraswamy seems to have fallen into errors which could have been avoided with a little more patience reserved for the task. I have had occasion myself to reread, elsewhere, some of the inscriptions, and while all of us are liable to err in deciphering laconic titles like the ones we frequently find on Rajput paintings, it is still of the utmost importance that a reading should be beyond all doubt before a theory is raised on it.

In adopting a rather simplified scheme for the division of Rajput paintings into some principal schools, designated after easily recognizable state—or place-names, it is possible that Dr. Coomaraswamy was attempting to save his readers from a certain degree of confusion, for it is almost sure that he had a definite audience in mind at the time of writing. He wrote clearly for the Western public—we must remind ourselves that his exposition of Rajput painting as indeed so much of his other views occurred in books published for the most part in England or the United States—and it is probably for their benefit that he over-simplified and drew parallels to familiar names and phenomena. Again and again, in Rajput Painting, we run into evidence of the fact that he is trying to explain Rajput painting to the Western world with reference to themes and attitudes known to it. The classic period of the vernacular poetry of India
is thus termed 'its age of Dante and Chaucer,' to him where Radha hears, in a Rajput painting, the message of Krishna, the drawing recalls 'an Annunciation,' the pastorals of the Kangra artists are different from the landscapes of Watteau or Millet. While he achieved a laudable aim by addressing his writings to Western audiences—a considerable part of the West awoke now with a thrill to the beauties of Indian art—and there is no fault to be found with writing for a given audience, the unfortunate thing is that this attitude seems to have hardened itself as the years went by. The scheme with which Dr. Coomaraswamy began a rather simplified interpretation of the history of Rajput painting became, in later years, a pattern from which at least some part of the substance of art history remained excluded. The drawing of rigid lines is not always possible, nor are distinctions very sharp and emphatic when one is regarding a many faced phenomenon like Indian painting, and yet Dr. Coomaraswamy saw it as a matter of areas of pure and distinct colours.

In the insistent distinction between Mughal and Rajput painting, for instance. This he regarded as a distinction which it was 'no longer necessary to argue...for every addition to our knowledge makes it only more evident that there could scarcely exist two contemporary schools more diverse in temper.' Mughal painting he regarded as the art of miniature painting, while Hindu painting was an art that stepped from the walls of shrines and palaces and public buildings; the one was of princely interest, the other universal; the one, 'aristocratic and professional' in form, while the other was at once 'hieratic and popular, and often essentially mystic in its suggestion of the infinite significance of the most homely events.' 'Mughal courtiers,' Dr. Coomaraswamy went on to say, 'would not have been interested in an art about herdsmen and milkmaids, nor Vaisnavas in pictures of elephant fights.'

One discerns overtones in these statements, but also, to be sure, much truth. It is not thus possible seriously to argue even for a moment that there are no differences between the Mughal and Rajput schools; extreme examples of both schools can be recognised at a glance; one also recognises the diversity of temper and emphasis in much of the work of both these schools. But is it, one wonders, possible to argue that these are two different worlds the inhabitants of which would have to strain to recognise each other? If the extreme examples differ so sharply in the beginning, is it not also true that, as the styles progress, the lines of development, instead of remaining
parallel, begin to converge towards each other a little? What conclusions does one draw from the fact that a large number of paintings the scholars now find hard exactly to place and seek to solve their problems by designating them as 'Rajput-Mughal'? What, again, does one make of the facts, noticed among others but pushed into a foot-note by Dr. Coomaraswamy, that the majority of Mughal artists whose names are known to us was Hindu, that a very large number of Muslim artists worked at Rajput courts like Bikaner and Mewar, and that it becomes impossible, in terms of style alone, to explain the turn that nearly all Pahari paintings took in the eighteenth century except with reference to Mughal painting?

These are not rhetorical questions designed to emphasise a point by mere repetition. What is suggested is that the analysis of Dr. Coomaraswamy gains validity only if the points of difference between the two schools are thrown with a determined effort into sharp relief, and the points of contact and resemblance between them either ignored or played down. The two schools by no means stood at a distance and furtively glanced towards each other for a few centuries, and this is a fact that is now widely conceded.

The point that there are differences of temper and feeling between the Mughal and Rajput schools loses validity rapidly when we move into the area of the subject matter of the two schools. There may be truth in the fact that while Mughal art excelled in portraiture, the Rajput painters 'also made' portraits, though it was an 'incidental aspect of their art,' or that the Mughal artist evinced a lively interest in his environment as contrasted with the Rajput artist who had little or none of this interest. But it becomes impossible to argue on these lines beyond a point. Even quantitatively one may be able to prove that the paintings of secular, earthly themes from the Rajput states are by no means a negligible part of their art. Vaishnavas were clearly interested in elephant fights, and the Mughal artists did concern themselves, if not always, at least occasionally, with matters of the spirit. The vast number of portraits and darbar scenes, music parties and equestrian groups, that one finds belonging both to the Rajasthani and Pahari centres, are things in which patrons and artists alike took obvious delight and are not merely incidental aspects of the art. There is no self-consciousness in these scenes, no hesitation, as there is none in that considerable body of Rajput painting which was frankly erotic, devoted to illustrating works like the Rati Rahasya with great relish and vividness.

Dr. Coomaraswamy is so convinced of the philosophical bias

ANANDA COOMARASWAMY AS A HISTORIAN 265
of all Rajput painting and of the fact that it consistently leaned towards mystic suggestion that he strains the point, I think, beyond a limit, sometimes. All lovers in Rajput painting, one is able to see, are not Krishna and Radha; frequently they are only simple, mortal nayaks and nayikas whose faces were sometimes cast, in fact, in the image of the patrons of the artist. One comes up quite often against a rather well-known royal face peeping from behind a bamboo-split curtain or proceeding from a loggia after a rendezvous, and in these cases even the pretense of making the lover look seemingly like Krishna is given up.

In his Rajput Painting, Dr. Coomaraswamy reproduced a nineteenth century lithographed book-title of a children’s book called Dil Bahla. This shows a scene at a well with women drawing or carrying water and engaging in ordinary conversation with nothing by way of a descriptive title given to the scene. This illustration Dr. Coomaraswamy calls ‘The Well of Love’ and then cites verses from Kabir and Vidyapati suggesting that the well is employed as a mystic symbol. This, I submit, is a little unlikely: it is a plain genre scene without significance, and if one has to look back at all for its source to the Rajput tradition of painting, it must be linked with similar genre scenes that depict piaos or construction activity, or travellers gathered in a camp around a crackling fire.

What is of significance in this and other cases is that the meanings that Dr. Coomaraswamy reads in each individual scene or situation eventually piece together to form a complete picture of an unbroken continuity of tradition in Indian art of which he took Rajput painting to be an exalted expression. It is, in fact, towards establishing this that a great lot of his arguments tend all the time. One becomes gradually aware of the subtlety and the consistency with which he has been weaving a pattern. The reason why he so sharply distinguishes between Mughal and Rajput painting, and attaches so much of importance to the latter as a product of the soil, an art of the people, as contrasted with the superficial, court-inspired art of the Mughals, thus becomes obvious: in his scheme of things Mughal painting does not form a part of the pattern. It was ‘but an episode in the long history of Indian painting’ which remained unaffected by it. Mughal painting did not embrace life and religion together and remained therefore on the fringe. ‘This Hindu or Rajput art’ he wrote as early as 1910 to Sir William Rothenstein, ‘is the descendant of Ajanta, its rise and zenith and decline seem to cover at least 1,500 years.’ The 200 years
of secular Mughal art is but a breath beside it. Dr. Coomaraswamy was not deeply interested in the breath.

The emphasis on the folk affinities of Rajput art is of a piece with this reasoning; its links with the religion of the people or with the popular drama, the yatra or the rasa, of northern India are traced in some detail to indicate the depths of its roots in the land. Whether or not Rajput painting was an art of the people or an aristocratic folk art is a matter which merits detailed study, but, to refer briefly to it here, it is arguable whether Rajput painting, at least as practised in the sixteenth to the nineteenth centuries and as known to us, belonged to the people in the sense in which Dr. Coomaraswamy understood it. While one could point to the general connection between the art and the courts of Rajasthan, from the Punjab hills there is incontrovertible evidence of the firmness of this link. I have had occasion to trace the movements of several families of artists of the hills in the course of the last few years, and it is fascinating to see how painting suddenly languished at a place where political power had declined, and how the artists attached to that court began to move away in search of other royal patrons elsewhere. This is not to say that there was no connection between Rajput painting and the people, but one wonders whether the informality of these paintings, or their pastoral themes, are not sometimes mistaken for evidence of their existing independently of patronage.

To admit, however, that Rajput painting was also an art which, to a considerable extent, if not wholly, was a product of ateliers attached to the royal houses of Rajasthan and the hills, would have dimmed the distinction between it and Mughal painting, and introduced between the two a parallelism that would have affected the argument and, therefore, the purpose, that Dr. Coomaraswamy had made his own: to prove that India had always had a national expression of her own, and that she countenanced for sometime, but eventually rejected all that did not agree with her spirit.

This ‘purpose’ as we have called it, emerges clearly in the last chapter of his Rajput Painting which he significantly and somewhat unhistorically titles: ‘Today and Tomorrow.’ Here, frankly renouncing his role as a historian of art, he enters upon a marvellously eloquent plea for the revival in India of that unity of life and religion of which is born the flower of art, making at the same time an assertion of the faith that India may suffer but will find her voice again. To him Rajput art, a mystic, lyrical, continuing phenomenon
that he had demonstrated as belonging to the people as a whole, symbolized at once all the values that stood threatened in his own days by forces powerful and destructive, and all that needed to be saved from the shadow of Industrialism and Bureaucracy and Western Ideals.

It needed a great deal of courage in those days to speak the way Ananda Coomaraswamy did, for he was being bitterly critical of the British Government's attitudes, but in doing this one wonders if he was not being a publicist at the expense of the historian in him. For when we construct an image in some haste and omit to take all the evidence available into account before pronouncing on the past as it was, we fail a little perhaps in our task as historians.

REFERENCES

1. Ananda K. Coomaraswamy, *Rajput Painting*, 2 vols., Oxford, 1916. The complete title of the work should be of interest to this study. It ran: *Rajput Painting, being an account of the Hindu Paintings of Rajasthan and the Punjab Himalayas, from the 16th to the 19th century described in their relation to contemporary thought, with texts and translations*. Referred to, hereinafter, as R. P.


3. Vincent Smith's *History of Fine Art in India and Ceylon* (Oxford, 1911), and E. B. Havell's *Indian Sculpture and Painting* (London, 1908), had already appeared before 1912 and included some Rajput paintings without, however, these being classified as such. Dr. Coomaraswamy himself had noticed Rajput paintings in his own *Selected Examples of Indian Art* (Broad Campden, 1910, *Indian Drawings*, 2 Vols. (London, 1910-12), and *Arts and Crafts of India and Ceylon* (Edinburgh, 1913), but the *Burlington Magazine* essay and the two volume Oxford study gave a new meaning to Rajput painting.

4. Dr. Coomaraswamy had a caustic note on these 'Anglo-Indian' writers, as he called them—

'That Rajput paintings have been entirely overlooked by Anglo-Indian writers may perhaps be explained by the remark of B. H. Baden Powell: 'In a country like this we must not expect to find anything that appeals to mind or to deep feeling.' (Punjab Manufactures, 1872, ii, iii). This is the normal standpoint of the Anglo-Indian writer. Fergusson, for example, lays it down that, 'it cannot, of course, be for one moment contended that India ever reached the intellectual supremacy of Greece or the moral greatness of Rome.' Whether or not these are true judgements may be left to time to decide; here I only call attention to the, to say the least of it, unscientific attitude implied in the words, 'we must not expect' and, it cannot, of course, for one moment be contended.' On this principle, the only object of research would be to confirm our a priori judgements!'

*Rajput painting*, Vol. 1, p. 6, n. 3,
ANANDA COOMARASWAMY AS A HISTORIAN

10. Ibid., Pt. V, p. 3.
18. Rai Krishnadas ji is full of the most fascinating information and personal reminiscences of the days when Pahari paintings first came to the notice of scholars. He can recall with remarkable clarity the lack of deep interest in these paintings in the first two decades of this century, the manner in which the dealers went on their rounds, the most important of the dealers and their collections. I am deeply grateful to Rai Ji for much information and for many lively discussions.
24. Ibid., Vol. I, p. 5. This appears to have been a favourite theme with Dr. Coomaraswamy, for there is much in this work and in his History of Indian and Indonesian Art (London, 1927) on this subject, showing the two schools juxtaposed to each other.
26. The whole note is of interest and it runs:

'It is unnecessary here to discuss in detail the Rajput elements present in true Mughal painting. The Indian elements are apparent in several directions, (1) the illustration of Hindu themes in the first quarter of the seventeenth century, (2) the adoption of Hindu costumes at the courts of Akbar and Jahangir in the 'Rajput period,' (3) the fusion of themes and styles in the eighteenth century, especially in Oudh, producing mixed types, and (4) the fact that more than half of the Mughal painters were native Hindus. All these conditions create resemblances between Mughal and Rajput painting, quite superficial in the case of 1 and 2, more fundamental in the case of 3 and 4.' History of Indian and Indonesian Art, pp. 127–28, n. 2.
27. A whole family of Muslim artists worked at the Bikaner court and the name of the artist Sahibdin in Mewar is known. A series of sketches of the Bikaner artists is in the Motichand Khajanchi collection and was published not long ago in Karl Khandalava. Moti Chandra and Pramod Chandra, A Catalogue of the Exhibition of the Sri Motichand Khajanchi
Collection & C., (New Delhi, 1960). For the Mewar artist, see Douglas Barrett and Basil Gray, Painting of India (Lausanne, 1963), pp. 139-40.


* 'In the Mogul galleries it (the Indian genius) is turned outward, and yet it does not forget the inner vision; in the Rajput galleries it is turned inwards, but it remains intimately aware of the natural world.'

I find it unnecessary to refer here, in support of the statements made by me in the text in this context, to the whole body of work on the subject. The large collections that have of late years been examined and published, and the literature on the subject, is known to students of Indian painting only too well.

29. One sees, practically in all collections, still intact in the hills, extensive sets of these paintings of erotic interest and living artists like Chandu Lal of Rajot and Puran Chand of Samlorti in the Kangra district are clear about the tradition in their families that these were produced in response to specific demands of the patrons.


32. 'Folk-art of the present day is a tradition handed down directly from the past: in Rajput painting, just as in the vernacular poetry of Hindustan, it is this folk-art, fused with hieratic and classic literary tradition, that emerges as the culture of the whole race, equally shared by kings and peasants.' R. P., Vol. I, p. 2.

HENRY GEORGE KEENE

K. K. SHARMA

H. G. Keene was educated at Rugby, Oxford and Haileybury before he joined the Indian Civil Service in 1847 to retire in 1882. By 1879, his services to the British Empire had been recognized: he was included in T. H. S. Escott's 'Pillars of the Empire.' Keene wrote profusely after his retirement; but his major contribution to the study of medieval Indian history had already been made through *The Moghal Empire* (1869), *The Fall of the Moghal Empire* (1876) and *The Turks in India* (1879). His preference for medieval India comes out clearly in a remark made much later: 'The history of India, in the exact sense of the word, can hardly be said to commence till the establishment of Muslim power' (*History of India*, 1893, I, ix). It may however be pointed out that Keene was not the first British historian of India to express this opinion.

Keene believed himself to be a 'disciple' of Mountstuart Elphinstone. But this did not restrain him from accepting or repeating the ideas of his other predecessors. Though aware of the reading public in India, Keene chose to write for the English reader at home and in India and, as a general historian, his aim was to give a rational view of Indian history to its British students. This could be done by 'mentioning really operative facts, yet not dwelling too minutely on the details of battles, sieges, or the intrigues and crimes of high-placed individuals' (*History of India*, ix). Like Elphinstone, in fact like most of his predecessors and contemporaries, Keene believed in Progress and one of the most important historical problems for him was to explain the absence of progress in pre-British India:

The different fate of the Peninsula occupied by the Eastern Aryans, the fact that it has not shown the same amalgamating and progressive tendencies is therefore calculated to arrest attention. And it seems worthwhile to examine into the special causes that have led to this variation, and try to ascertain why the people of India have never risen to the conception of social and political evolution that seems still growing in fruitful activity among the nations of Europe.

(‘Medieval India,’ *Calcutta Review*, LXXV).
Unlike Elphinstone, and much rather like James Mill, Keene regarded the medieval period of Indian history as better than the ancient. The Hindus had a civilization but it was "an effete civilization" which appeared to have "crystallized and lost its vitality" (The Moghul Empire). Keene attributed the social stagnation among the Hindus to the systems of caste and the joint-family, both of which "emasculated individualism." On the controversial issue whether the Hindus had deteriorated through the Muslim conquest of India, Keene had the following interesting observation to make:

"However calamitous the inroads might have been, and whatever disasters may have followed in their train, and however oppressive, arbitrary, or violent the measures of the government, the country would have been worse if the Hindoo populations had been left to themselves. If Mahomedan ascendancy was in itself an evil, we maintain it was a necessary evil."

Keene's attitude here reminds one of James Mill.

For the most part, Keene accepted and perpetuated only in a slightly modified form the ideas of his British predecessors on medieval India. Elphinstone, for instance, had thought of the India of those days as merely a geographical expression; and he had also noticed the similarity between Babur's attitude towards things Indian and that of "the most fastidious English Exile of the present day" (these are Keene's words). Like Elphinstone again, Keene underlined the survival of Hindu institutions throughout the medieval period; and appreciated the amicable co-existence between the Hindus and Muslims:

"The Hindus under the Turkman and Pathan dynasties followed their own laws and customs in the Punjab, in Hindustan, and in some of the outlying provinces. In the southern regions they were still less molested; in a great part of those countries they long maintained autonomous states; and even in those provinces that were under Muslim government Hindus, rose to places of trust and power, and the two races were often on good terms." (History of India, 352.)

In line with Elphinstone, Keene appreciated the preservation of ancient usages under the British rule in India ("Medieval India", Calcutta Review, LXXV). Like most of his predecessors and nearly all his contemporary British writers on India, Keene assumed the general superiority of Europe over Asia and of British rule over the Muslim. Though Muslim rule had been better than the Hindus, it compared ill with the British rule in India: "This indeed is the country which, having been long subjected to Mussulman rule (and
being still subject to Mussulman influence), has nevertheless entered on the path of progress' ('Islam in India', *Calcutta Review*, LXXI). At times conscious of the shortcomings of British rule in India, Keene was nonetheless a staunch supporter of the Empire: 'the most honest, brave, and able of the many sets of masters whom India has yet obeyed' were, for him, the British of course ('India in 1880', *Calcutta Review*, LXXIII).

It is interesting to note that Keene's feeling about the Indian peoples is not quite the same as that of even the harshest of his predecessors. For him, the Indians were the most deceitful and mischievous of all the peoples known to history: 'I have not yet met with a Hindu who has one good quality; and honest Mussulmans do not exist.' It appears that Keene could neither forget nor forgive the events of 1857. And therein lies probably the most important clue to our understanding of his treatment of medieval India.
SARKAR AND MORELAND ON MUGHAL LAND REVENUE ADMINISTRATION

B. R. Grover

During the late 18th and 19th centuries, observations were made by the Indian munshis and the English administrator-scholars on various aspects of the Mughal land revenue administration, but no professional historian ever dealt with the subject in a comprehensive manner. In the first half of the 20th century, the two well-known scholars, Sir J. N. Sarkar and W. H. Moreland, worked on Mughal India. As contemporaries, one was an Indian professional historian and the other was initially an English civil servant posted in India but ultimately developed into an historian.

At the beginning of the 20th century, Sir J. N. Sarkar assiduously devoted himself to the Mughal age and produced monumental works on the political history of the period. Sarkar also showed interest in the administrative structure of the Mughal Empire, but in this respect his achievement is rather poor. On the revenue side, he banked on the Ain-i-Akbari, Mirat-i-Ahmadi, a few dasurulamals and chronicles of the late 17th and 18th centuries. Even on the basis of this material, he could not properly analyse the Mughal land revenue terminology embodied in the Persian texts. In his book on the Mughal administration, there is no coherence in the sketchy chapters on the land revenue administration. There is more of collection of anecdotes from the contemporary manuscripts, and no appreciative effort is made to present any co-ordinated picture of the agrarian system. Of the two farmans of Aurangzeb’s reign, which Sarkar discovered from the Royal Library, Berlin, and published in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society and later on included in his book Mughal Administration, the farman to Muhammad Hashim had already been rightly used by Col. Galloway, a fact not known to Sarkar. The Persian texts of the copies of these farmans and more especially the commentaries thereupon are rather unreliable. Though the late 18th century revenue literature available from the Berlin Library is extremely useful for the 18th century history of Bengal and Bihar, it cannot be accepted for the 16th–17th centuries without further scrutiny.
Moreover, the differences in the revenue practices in Bengal and other regions of north India have to be clearly emphasised. Even though the late 18th century Indian revenue experts in Bengal did have an access to some of the *farmans* and *dasturulamals* of the Mughal age, not all the commentaries written by them provide a correct analysis of the revenue practices of the period. Some of the commentaries were written to suit the firm notions and predilections of the British revenue administrators who were participants to the great controversy over the land rights of the state versus *zamindars* prevalent in Bengal before the enforcement of the Permanent Settlement. Having laid his hand on the two widely publicized documents of Aurangzeb's reign and being completely ignorant of the other revenue literature lying in the Berlin Library, Sarkar could not go into the background of the commentaries written in late 18th century Bengal and was not in a position to arrive at any conclusive truth. Notwithstanding all this, Sarkar's translation and published commentaries on the *farmans* have been accepted by the later scholars without any further screening of the problem. Some of the late 18th century Indian *munshis* had well appreciated the main aspects of the Mughal land revenue administration but these portions of the revenue literature were not covered. Sarkar also revised and annotated Blochmann's recension of the *Ain-i-Akbari* previously translated by H. S. Jarrett. Even this is not free from serious errors. The passages covering the revenue terminology included in the third *Daftar* of Abul Fazl's *Ain-i-Akbari* are mostly inaccurately translated. The addition of the historical notes by Sarkar and the definition of the revenue terminology are based more upon foreign Islamic practices and the already written glossaries rather than upon the Mughal revenue documents. This has consequently given rise to various controversies and imaginary surmises reflected in the modern historical writings on the Mughal land revenue system.

W. H. Moreland was the first scholar to undertake an intensive study of the Mughal agrarian system, and his pioneer works have laid the students of the Indian economic history under lasting gratitude for having shown considerable enthusiasm for providing an overall picture of the Mughal age. However, his verdict is not final. Moreland was a keen student of economics and a trained English civil servant posted in the United Provinces in India. In his early work, *The Revenue Administration of the United Provinces* (published 1911), he made a genuine attempt to trace the legacy of the Indian land revenue system since the earliest times and
its evolution under the British rule in the 19th and early 20th centuries. Moreland's approach was essentially didactic. This general historical sketch served the purpose of showing some continuity of the agrarian problems inherited from the earlier times. Apart from it, the technique of comparing the land revenue system of the medieval age with the 19th–20th centuries revenue system in India, and the emphasis on the improvement brought by the British administration upon the former in various respects with historical illustrations was motivated by the keen desire to show the superiority of the British revenue administration over the previous Indian revenue administration. This book was also intended to serve as a handy guide for the English revenue officials in dealing with the 20th century agrarian problems relating to the landlords and the cultivators, especially when these problems were visualized in the historical perspective. However, it is doubtful if Moreland at this stage could clearly comprehend the clear-cut changes which had occurred during the course of the 18th century and had sufficiently blurred the main features of the Mughal land revenue administration. Despite all his shortcomings in the proper analysis of the 16th–17th centuries Mughal revenue administration, Moreland cut the Gordian knot by undermining the mere narration of the political and the military history of India. He emphasised the primary role of the economic forces in Indian history. He stressed the fact that agriculture formed the main occupation of the people in the rural society, and was the chief source of revenue of an Indian State. This was a determinate economic factor in the past Indian society. An emphasis on this aspect permeates all his subsequent writings.

The evolution of Moreland from the role of an administrator to that of an economic historian is a gradual one. By the time Moreland and Yusuf Ali published their joint paper on Akbar's Land Revenue System on the basis of the Ain-i-Akbari, Moreland had developed a genuine interest in the Mughal land revenue administration. As a follow-up, India at the Death of Akbar, India From Akbar to Aurangzeb and the Agrarian System of Moslem India were essentially based on historical research and Moreland was par-excellence an economic historian. He gradually discarded the moral tone and comparisons of the condition of the peasantry during the British rule with the Mughal age. But although he developed the technique of historical research, he always remained eager to find such material as would suit his predilections and imperialist outlook. As
an expert revenue officer, Moreland possessed considerable practical knowledge to steer through the difficult aspects of the problems in hand. Apart from this, he took to the comparative study of the different texts of the *Ain-i-Akbari* available to him, contemporary chronicles, accounts of the foreign travellers, a few Mughal *farmans* and *dasturulamals*. All the same, Moreland’s technique of historical research was circumscribed by his narrow concept of interpretation. The reading of the technical passages of the *Ain-i-Akbari* is by no means an easy one. There is no denying the fact that when Moreland wrote, practically no archival revenue source material of the 17th century was available, and it is both very difficult and risky to formulate theories without understanding the correct meaning of the revenue terminology. In the absence of contemporary documents, a technical historian is obliged to be less rigid in his interpretation. The fact that Moreland had vast revenue experience of modern times in a way also proved a partial handicap, as in the interpretation of the ambiguous passages he was greatly tempted to rely on imagination. This can be well illustrated with a few examples. While interpreting *jama deh sala* (Ten Year Settlement) Moreland considers that the word *jama* in the passage does not stand for an assessed demand but refers only to the problem of the fixation of new valuation. When the tables of the cash schedule rates (*dasturs*) immediately follow the description of the *jama deh sala*, Moreland gets involved in a difficulty. He finds that the passage starting with the problem of price-commutation further narrates the procedure of the fixation of valuation, and surprisingly ends with the tables of the cash schedule rates. Moreland does not consider the possibility of reading *jama* both as a valuation and an assessed demand (based on assessment schedule rates) to be interpreted in the context of the passage and still insists that the text of the passage stands for valuation. He gets disgusted with Abul Fazl and wriggles out with the solution that the *Ain-i-Akbari* is defective and the text must be corrupt. Here is an example of overconfidence on the part of a revenue expert who takes liberty with the technique of historical research. As regards the incidence of the state demand in Aurangzeb’s reign, the royal *farman* to Rasik Das Karori (of Bihar) underlines the assessment to be enforced at the varying rates of $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$ and $\frac{2}{5}$ (of the gross produce) according to the situation (dependent on the classification of land). Moreland contends that the aforesaid *farman* made only a theoretical enunciation of the variation in the assessment rates, whereas the actual
demand was made nearer the maximum than the minimum. Even though Moreland had no contemporary documentary evidence to reject the statement made in the farman, he did so relying purely on his revenue experience for looking after the increase in the State revenues from the official viewpoint. The original pergana documents now available at the Rajasthan Archives, Bikaner, putting the above-mentioned variation in the state demand, show Moreland was completely wrong in his presumption. Moreland did not understand as to how the revenue demand based on a detailed classification of the soil and the crops was levied under the Mughal regulations. His reliance on the general statements embodied in the Ain-i-Akbari and Aurangzeb's farmans fixing the incidence of revenue demand at $\frac{1}{4}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$ of the gross produce under Akbar and Aurangzeb respectively as uniform rates, regardless of the nature of the land and the crops, is rather misplaced. In fact, these rates represent the highest pitch of the revenue demand for the grain crops, but the detailed sliding scale schedule rates were governed by the nature of the soil and the crops in a particular region and the variation in the demand could exist even within a single village. The schedule rates of the cash crops (jins-i-kamal) were comparatively much less, though based on the same principles of the classification of the land and the nature of the crops. This is ultimately bound to affect our estimate on the economic impact of the revenue demand on the condition of the peasantry during the Mughal age. Moreland's analysis of the methods of assessment of the Zabti and the Nasq, based on the reading of the Ain-i-Akbari, are far from accurate. Moreland has wrongly defined the Nasq as 'group assessment' or 'lump sum' assessment on the village or a pergana by agreement with the Headmen, while leaving to the latter the distribution of the assessed demand on the holdings of the peasants. He also takes a very rigid view about the scope and extent of the prevalence of the above mentioned methods of assessment during the Mughal age. He thinks that the most favoured method of assessment under Akbar was the Zabti and that the Nasq comprising 'village group-assessments', and 'annual summary assessments' had become the working rule during Aurangzeb's reign. The two fixed poles for his study are the Ain-i-Akbari and Aurangzeb's farman to Rasik Das Karori. He forgets that revenue practices do not disappear in such a sudden manner at the discretion of the monarchs. The Zabti method continued to operate throughout the Mughal rule and it co-existed with other methods of assessment.
Moreland was quite conscious of the generality of the terms like the zamindars and riaya, and preferred to put the term ‘peasants’ for the agricultural riaya. He correctly refused to be drawn in the theoretical and legal versions about the land ownership—a controversy which had engaged most of the writers ever since the late 18th century. But he was unable to run into the details of the various classes of the agriculturists connected with the land. He did not understand the varying nature of the land tenures in the zamindari and the riayati villages during the Mughal age. He looked upon the question of ownership of land simply as vesting the peasantry with occupancy rights, and beyond this he had no contemporary data to throw any light on this issue. He left this important problem unsettled. Despite his reluctance to be drawn in an abstract discussion whether the Mughal system was based on the zamindari or ryotwari principles, his rough analogical association of a few features with either of the patterns is rather too vague. The obsession of finding intermittent periods during the Muslim era, when the state either directly dealt with the peasants or through the Headmen and the village ‘group-assessment’ method (especially after the mid-17th century), smacks of lack of clear understanding of the working of the Mughal revenue administration and the role of the landed intermediaries during the Mughal age. His worst error was the conformation to the traditional threefold division of the Mughal territories into khalisa, jagir and the semi-independent or autonomous chieftainships. Moreland could not properly comprehend the scope of the Mughal land revenue operations in the territories of the Hindu chiefs (Zamindaran-i-Umda, etc.), the demarcation of the amli and ghatramli areas and the extent to which they were assignable to the Mughal state officials or to the chiefs (zamindars) themselves in lieu of their services to the Mughal state. His belief that a Hindu Chieftainship (zamindari) like the Mewar continued to run revenue administration on purely traditional Hindu notions of governance uninfluenced by the Mughal system is not confirmed by the documentary evidence. Moreland failed to realise the changes in the position and the internal revenue organisation of the territories of the Hindu Chiefs which had occurred during the Mughal age. If the territories of the Hindu Rajput chiefs of varying degrees (Zamindaran-i-Umda, zamindars, etc.) are not considered a part of the Mughal revenues, it belies the entire understanding of the Mughal pattern of the land revenue administration. Moreover, Moreland’s main thesis that the concept of the Mughal state like
the earlier Muslim governments failed to provide political and social environment for the agricultural development and annual production of the country is completely fallacious. His assertion that the high pitch of the revenue demand, the constant conflict between the administration and the peasants, and the depopulation of the agricultural areas in one locality or another, strained the existing revenue system to the breaking point, and brought about general economic collapse after the middle of the 17th century, are all questionable surmises which are not essentially borne by the contemporary archival evidence. All these problems need a further probe, based on a scientific study, keeping in view the political as well as the sociological and ethnological backgrounds of the various regions of the Mughal Empire. Equal consideration has to be paid to the concepts of the agricultural production on the part of the state and the peasants, the ratio in the availability of the land for further tillage vis-a-vis population, the incidence of the revenue demand based on a detailed classification of the land and other socio-economic factors which played a dominant role during the Mughal period.

Moreland’s reliance on the testimony of foreign travellers for an account on the life of the peasantry is partial. The foreign travellers did not understand the concept of the land ownership in India and found institutional differences with their own countries. They asserted that, unless the land ownership be vested in the hands of the nobility, the agrarian evils were bound to occur. They suffered from European complexes and made contradictory remarks about the people of India. Bernier’s account of the hardship and the widespread flight of the peasantry is definitely exaggerated. Bernier had a motive in presenting an inaccurate picture of the patterns of the agrarian societies in the Asian countries in order to humour the French Government about the superiority of the European and especially the French landed structure and civilisation which was the apex of the European culture during the 17th century. Unless the accounts of the travellers are subjected to scrutiny on the basis of their motivations and their limitations to understand the Indian way of rural life are borne in mind, a reliance upon them for the analysis of Mughal India is extremely risky. This was Moreland’s greatest shortcoming. Moreland did not try to understand the ethnic and sociological background of medieval India. He has not dealt with the zamindari settlements based on tribal and clannish structure—a fact which gives a real clue to the understanding of the
rural society and the agrarian history of Mughal India. Moreland did not try to go beneath the Pargana level. Even his account of the machinery of revenue collection is too sketchy. He made no attempt to analyse the socio-economic factors which affected the life of the people in the villages and qasbas, which in many a region came to be vitally connected with the cities. The spread of trade and commerce had tremendous impact upon the cultivation of cash crops and the role of cash nexus in the collection of the state revenues. Moreland’s main merit was that he explained the land revenue system under the Mughals in the background of the ancient and the early medieval periods of Indian history so as to give a co-ordinated picture of the agrarian features through the ages. But he failed to realise the momentum of the socio-economic forces at work during the 17th century. Many a view and conclusion of Moreland on the agrarian problems during the Mughal age need radical modification.

REFERENCES

1 J. N. Sarkar, Mughal Administration, Calcutta, 1920 (4th edition, 1952). This is Sarkar’s only book on Mughal Administration. The other book which narrates some of the administrative problems is a translation of Akkam-i-Alamgiri entitled Anecdotes of Aurangzeb. Also see Studies in Aurangzeb’s Reign.


7 See details see my Paper, Nature of Land Rights in Mughal India, (vide f.n. 15), pp. 10–14, f. nos. 60-70.

INDEX

Abdul Karim Nimdihi, 60
Abdullah Niyazi, Miyan, 107
Abdul Hamid Lahori, 176, 184–5, 193
Abdullah Sultanpuri, Maulana, 107, 109
Abdullah Qutb Shah, Sultan, 84, 86, 89, 91–3
Abul Wahhab, Miyan, 113
Abd-un-Nabi, Shaikh, 107
Abd-ur-Rahim Khan Khan-i-Khanan, 91
Abd-ur-Razzaq, 84
Abd-us-Samad Dabir-ul-Mulk, 92
Abu Bakr (Caliph), 241
Abul Hasan Nizami Aruzi of Samarqand, 169
Abul Hasan Qutb Shah, Sultan, 90–91
Abu Talib, 85
Addanki Gangadhara Kavi, 95
Aflf, Shams-i-Siraj, 22, 172, 194
Afzal Khan, 185, 190
Afzal-ul-Fawaid, 171
Aghuzlu Sultan, 87
Ahmad Chap, 47
Ahmad b. Hasan Maimandi, 166
Ahmad Khwaja Muqim Harawi, 186
Ahsan Ijaz, 145–51
Ahwal-i-Jang-i-Bhauva Ahmad Durrani, 221
Ahwal-i-Najib-ud-Daula, 221
Ahwal-ul-Khawqin, 156
Ain-i-Akbari, 29, 33, 35, 38, 40, 85, 123, 128, 236, 240, 252–3
Ain-i-Dakhila, 184
Aitmad Ali Khan b. Aitmad Khan Alamgiri, 144
Ajaib Singh Suraj, 221
Ajit Singh, 214
Akbariya-Kalidas, 207
Akhbarat-i-Darbar-i-Mualla, 183, 214
Alamara-i-Abbasi, 128
Alamgir-nama, 186, 239
Aka-ud-Din, 20, 25, 31, 32, 39, 45–6, 50, 139, 171, 174, 205
Aka-ud-Din Isfahani (see Mirza Nathan)
Aka-ud-Din Bahman Shah, 175
Aka-ud-Din b. Muhammad Shah b. Mubarak Shah b. Khijrz Khan, 113
Aka-ul-Mulk, 39, 45
Ali Adil Shah, 87, 92
Ali b. Abu Muhammad, 94
Ali b. Taifur-ul-Bustami, 90
Almas Beg, 47
Amar-nama, 211
Amber, 260
Amir Hasan Sijzi, 40, 48, 173
Amir Jamal-ud-Din Ataullah b. Fazlullah, 116
Amir Khan, 96
Amir Khursau, 22–36, 40, 46, 111, 170–1, 173–6, 193–5, 240
Amir-ul-Imla, 221
Ananda Coomaraswamy, 258–68
Anand Ram Mukhis, 152, 221
Antonova, K. A., 246–51, 253
Apte, D. V., 220
Araiz wa Ittihad Namajat wa Faramin Abdullah Qutb Shah, 92
Aram Kashmiri, 65
Aravidu family, 96
Arz-ul-Alfaz, 216
Asaf Khan, 114, 116–7
Asaf Khan Salis, 115
Asaf Vilas, 207
Asaf-ur-Rahman, 234–6
Aslam Khan, Nawab, 213–4
Ashiq, 31, 34
Ashoka, 4, 15
Ashraf, E., 246, 248, 251
Askari, Syed Hasan, 169, 187
Aurangzeb, 71, 90, 92–3, 143, 145, 146, 156, 158, 183, 186, 189, 192, 194, 209, 212, 238, 244, 252
Babur-name, 98–112
Bachittar Natak, 212
Badauni, 56, 106–13, 116, 118, 123, 132, 138, 188, 193, 253
Bahadur Shah, 143–4, 148, 211, 213–5, 235
Baharistan-i-Ghaibi, 69–83
Baharistan-i-Shahi, 54–7
Bahmanis, 85–7, 91, 93, 175
Balbaqi Sayyids, 54
Balban, 39, 43, 46–9, 110, 170, 172
Ballal, 204
Bana Bhatta, 204
Banarsi Das, 206
Banda Singh, 213–4, 216–8
Banda Das, 211
Bansawali-name Dasan Patshahistan, 217
Bhangur, Ratan Singh Shahid, 217
Bhanuchandu Gani, 206
Bana Malik, 91–93
Baran, Zia-ul-Din, 22, 25–6, 30, 32, 37, 52, 56, 110, 113, 132, 172–6, 187, 193–5, 236, 253
Batwa, Sayyids of, 62–5.
Bayan-ul-Haqiq, 12
Benaki, 23
Bernier, F., 252, 280
Beveridge, A. S., 98
Bhagmati, 87
Bhagwan Lal Indrajit, 198–9
Bhai Bahlo, 211
Bhai Bala, 211
Bhai Gurdas, 211
Bhai Mani Singh, 214
Bhagat Singh, 212
Bhau Daji, 198–9
Bhara Mal, Rai, 191
Bharat Mitra, 240
Bhartiya Prachin Lipimala, 200
Bhim Sen Burhanpuri, 191–2, 194
Bhuj Praband, 204
Bibliographical Index to the Historians of Muhammadan India, 231
Bihari Lal, 221
Bilhana, 204
Bhim Sain, 221
Biruni, al-., 14, 165–8, 193, 240
Bodhisattva Avolokiteshvara (Amita Burkhun), 14
Bodhisattva Maitreya, 16
Briggs, John, 84
Browne, James, 218
Buddha, 3, 13–8
Buddhism, 14, 16–8
Buhler, G., 198–9, 203, 253
Burhan-i-Masir, 84–5
Burhan Nizam Shah II, 85–6
Cakkhar-name, 221
Chahar Guishan, 221
Chokar Guishan-i-Shujaee, 221
Chak Rulers, 53–5, 58
Chand Bibi Sultana, 85–6
Chandra Chud Dastiar, 220
Chavillakara, 1
Chicherov, 246, 248, 251, 254
Chikkaedaravaraya Vamsavali, 96
Chishti Saints, 14, 41
Charitra Sundar Gani, 203
Cunningham, J. D., 226, 232, 252
Dalpat Rai, 221
Damas, 6, 7, 9
Dara Shikoh, 90, 92–3, 186, 236, 240
Das Avtar, 214
Dastur-ul-Insha, 216
Davon-name, 221
Davy, Major, 177
Daya Ram, 221
Dhinn Singh, 215
Dil Bahlal, 266
Dilkuasha, 221
Dillivretul Marathionchi Rajakararne, 220
Dipavamsa, 3
INDEX

Dow, Alexander, 227
Dowson, John, 117–8, 183, 253
Duni Chand, 221
Dvayashraya mahakavya, 203
Dwivedi, H. P., 203

Ekangas, 6, 7
Elliot, H. M., 117–8, 231–2, 253
Elphinstone, Mountstuart, 182, 226–7, 229–32, 238, 250, 271
Erskine, W., 181
Escott, T. H. S., 271

Faiz Bakhsh, 221
Faizi, 91, 107, 109, 125–6, 184, 188
Fakhr-i-Mudabbir, 22
Fakhr-ud-Din Razi, Maulana, 20
Farrukh Siyar, 147, 152, 157–8, 162, 163, 189
Farrukh Siyar-nama, 217
Faruq, be-, 237
Fatawa-i-Jahandari, 41, 43, 47–8
Fath Shah, Sultan, 53, 204
Fazlullah Rashid-ud-Din Abul Khair, see Rashid-ud-Din
Ferishta, 84, 86–7, 123, 193
Futuhat-i-Alamgir, 192
Firdausi, 175, 241
Firuz Shah Tughluq, 39, 40, 42, 47–9, 57, 72, 193
Firuz Khalji, 110
Forbes, A. K., 198, 203
Futuh-us-Salatin, 174–75

Gaudvaho, 204
Gangadharp, Pandit, 205
Ganj-nama, 216
Ghazan Khan, 11, 13, 16–7, 116
Ghiyas-ud-Din Tughluq, 171
Ghulam Husain Tabatabai, 152
Gibbon, Edward, 226–8
Gleig, G. R., 230
Grant, Charles, 230
Guibbadan Begum, 98, 119, 181, 193, 238
Gulshan-i-Ibrahim, 64, 86, 87, 230
Gurbilas Chhevin Padshahi, 212
Gurbilas Patshahi Das, 212–3
Gurdit Singh Harika, 212

Gur Kirat Prakash, 213
Guru Nanak, 208, 214, 216
Guru Gobind Singh, 208, 211–13, 216
Guru Granth Sahib, 209–11
Gusain Gurbani, 214

Haft-Iqlim, 253
Haidar Malik, 54–7, 189
Haidar Shah, 204
Haji Ibrahim Sarhindi, 115
Haji Nasir, 92
Hali, Maulana, 236, 240
Hakim Abul Fath, 116
Hakim Ain-ul-Mulk, 107
Hamida Banu Begum, 181
Hammir Modmardan, 205
Hammir Mahakavya, 205
Hanumant Swami, 212
Harbiles Sarda, 200
Harcharan Das, 221
Harish Chand Katha, 214
Har Sahai, 213
Harshcharchar, 3, 204
Harsha (King of Kashmir), 1, 2, 5, 6, 8
Hasan b. Ali Kashmiri, 54
Hasan Shah, Sultan, 54
Hasan Nizami, 19, 22, 169–70, 193
Hasht Bihisht, 25
Hasrat-nama, 41
Hingne Daftar, 220
History of the Origin and Progress of the Sicks, 218
Hira Lal Khushdil, 93
History of British India, 227
History of the Bahmani Dynasty, 86
History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, 227
History of India (Rashid-ud-Din), 16
History of the Nizami Shahis of Ahmadnagar, 86
History of the Sikhs, 232
Hulwi Shirazi, 60
Humayun-nama, 98, 181, 238
Hume, David, 226
Husain Ali Khan, 150, 156, 163
Husain Ali Shah Furshi, 93
Husain Mirza, Sultan, 99, 117
Hussam Khan, 66
Hussam-ud-Din, Sipah Salar, 39, 47, 48

Ibn Batuta, 45
Ibrahim Adil Shah II, 87, 88
Ibrahim Qutb Shah, 85, 89, 93-6
Ibrat-nama, 217

Ihtimam Khan, 70, 77
Ijaz-i-Khusrawi, 25
Itutmish, 45-7, 110, 169-70
Isami, 45, 173, 176, 194, 195
Islam Khan, 70-1, 73-4, 77, 79
Ishwardas Nagar, 192
Ismail Adil Shah, 95
Itihas Sangroha, 220
Itimad-ud-Daula, 63
Il-khan Abuqaq, 11-2, 16

Jagjiwan Das Gujriati, 221
Jahanar Shah, 148, 160, 190
Jahangir, 34-5, 62, 69, 70, 74-5, 81, 91, 104, 128, 176, 180, 183, 188, 206, 207
Jalsingh Suri, 203, 205
Jalal-ud-Din Khalji, 20, 43, 48, 173
Jalal-ud-Din Tabatabai, 185
Jamal Khan Qurchi, 107
James Ferguson, 238
Jam-i-Jami, 235
Jami-it-Tasavvir-ar-Raschi, 12
Jami-it-Tawarikh, 13-4, 18
Jauhar-i-Samsam, 152
Jayanak, 205
Jinaharsha Gani, 205
Jinnahand Upadhyaya, 203
Jodhpur Yethil Rejkarne, 220
John, Karl, 16
Jonaraja, 9, 53-5, 204
Jones, William, 228-9
Juwaini, Ala-ud-Din Ata Malik, 16

Kaiqubad, Sultan, 25, 31, 49, 110, 171, 173, 175
Kalhara, 1-10, 53-7, 205
Kalimat-ul-Haq, 235
Kamalashri, 13, 15, 17-8
Kamran, 181-82

Karan Singh, 211
Karaor-Singhtia, 218
Kashmir, 1-10, 13-7, 53-8, 182, 204, 250
Kaviraj Shyamaladas, 200
Keene, H.G., 271-3
Kesar Singh Chhebbar, 217
Khaif Khan, 123, 140, 142, 144, 147, 150-8, 160-4, 176, 190, 193
Khoja-nama, 221
Khan-i-Azam, 128
Khan-i-Dauran, 149-50, 152
Khan-i-Jahan Maqbul, 42, 50
Khasain-ul-Futuh, 25, 31, 47, 171
Khaizan-ai-Amirah, 239
Khushal Chand, 217
Khuswaqt Rai, 221
Khusrau Khan, 26-30, 48
Khwaja Abul Fazi b. al-Hasan al-Baihaqi, 168
Khwaja Jahan, 41-2, 50
Khwaja Kalan, 103
Khwaja Majd-ud-Din, 12
Khwaja Obaidullah, 102
Khwaja Obaidullah Ahrar, 103
Khwaja Yaghma, 74
Khwairizm, 166, 193
Khwairizm Shah, 19-21, 91, 101
Kirmani, al-, 60
Kitab-i-Tawarikh-i-Punjab, 221
Kitab-ul-Ahwa-al-Athar, 11
Kitab-ul-Hind, 14, 240
Koer Singh Kalal, 213
Kshemendra, 1
Kulliyat-i-Bhai Nand Lal Goya, 216
Kumarpal Charit, 203
Kumarpal Charitra Sangroha, 203

Lala Ajai Singh Suraj, 218
Lalitaditya Muktapida, 5, 15
Lal Ram, 221
Lane-Poole, 98, 238
Lasaif-ul-Haqiq, 12
Life of Hemchandracharya, 203
Li-ta-chi, 13
Lubb-it-Tawarikh-i-Hind, 191

Maasir-i-Alamgiri, 144, 191, 239
Maasir-i-Mahmud Shahi, 60
INDEX

Maazir-i-Nizami, 148
Maazir-i-Qutb Shahi, 88-9
Maazir-i-Rahimi, 238
Maazir-ul-Umara, 128, 193, 239, 240, 241
Macaulliffe, 252
Mackenzie, Col., 96-7
Max Muller, 167
Madhyakalin Bhartiya Samskriti, 200
Mahabharata, 4, 14, 108, 117, 188
Mahamatya Vastupal, 205
Mahaparinirvana, 3
Maharana Saljum Singh, 200
Mahatmyas, 1
Mahavamsa, 3
Mahmud b. Abdullah Nishapuri, 89
Mahmud Gawan, 91
Mahmud Khan, 161
Mahmud of Ghazna, 166-8, 175
Mahmud Shah Begada, 62, 66
Mahmud Shah Bahmani, 87, 93
Mahmud Shah, Sultan, 60, 64
Majd-ul-Mulk of Ghazna, 169
Makatib-i-Sultan Abdullah Qutb Shah, 90
Makhdom Jahayan, Hazrat, 64-5
Makhdom-ul-Mulk, 111, 118
Makhzan-ul-Gharaib, 239
Malcolm, John, 221
Mak-sun, 13
Malfuzat-i-Timuri, 177
Malik Ghazi, 27-9
Malik Kafur, 34, 47
Malwa, 64-5, 145, 162, 199; 260, 265
Manun, al-, 234-5, 238
Mondalik Mahakavya, 205
Marathas, 143, 145, 190, 192, 194, 239, 242, 245, 252
Marathiancha Itikasachi Sadhane, 220
Marx, 242-4
Masud, Sultan, 166-8
Mata Sundri, 215
Mattal-ul-Anwar, 25
Mattal-us-Sadain, 84
Mansa Ram, 148, 151
Mehrban, 210
Mehma Prakash, 212
Miftah-ul-Tafasir, 12, 31
Mihran, 165
Mihtar Jauhar Aftabchi, 119, 182-3, 193
Mill, James, 226-7, 272, 229-30
Minhaj-us-Siraj, 19, 22, 45-6, 49, 170, 172-4, 192
Mir Ala-ud-Daula Kami Qazwini, 119
Mirat-i-Ahmadi, 144, 145, 190-1, 253
Mirat-i-Waridat, 147
Mirat-i-Sikandari, 59-68
Mirat-ul-Haqaig, 144
Mir Jumla, 90-2
Mir Masum of Bhakkar, 187
Mir Murtaza Sharifi Shirazi, 111
Mirror of Sikandar, 61
Mir Qasim Lahori, 151
Mir Rafi-ud-Din Ibrahim, 87
Mir Safi, 76
Mirza Aminai Qazwini, 185, 193
Mirza Haidar Dughlat, 54-5, 98-9, 181, 193
Mirza Muhammad, 148, 150
Mirza Muhammad Hasan, 176, 190, 193
Mirza Nathan, 69-81
Mirza Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad, 89
Mittar Sain, 221
Moreland, 188, 192, 252-3, 274-81
Mubarak Khalji, 25, 34
Muhammad, The Prophet, 106, 113, 115, 117
Muhammad Amin, Munshi, 185
Muhammad Arif Qandhari, 119
Muhammad Bakhsh Ashub, 148, 150-3
Muhammad Ghuri, 109, 169, 174, 205
Muhammad Hamadani, 56, 58
Muhammad Qasim, 151, 156, 158-63
Muhammad Khwarizmshah, Sultan, 19-21
Muhammad Shah, 148, 151, 157-8, 161, 189
Muhammad Qutb Shah, 88-9, 91, 94
Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah, Sultan, 85-6, 88-9, 91, 93-5
Muhammad Saqi Mustaid Khan, 176, 184, 186, 193
Mulla Ahmad, 53–4
Mulla Ahmad b. Nasrullah, 114–18
Mulla Hasan Qari, 53–54
Mulla Ahmad of Thatbah, 117
Mulla Ali Sher, 187
Mulla Masih, 240–1
Mulla Nadiri, 53–4
Munim Khan Aurangabadi, 151
Munnalal, 221
Munshat of Rashid-ud-Din, 12
Muntakhab-ul-Lubab, 157, 189, 252
Muntakhab-ul-Masavadar, 221
Muntakhab-ul-Tawarikh, 111, 119, 221, 253
Murad Bakhsh, Prince, 85, 157, 189

Nadirat-i-Shahi, 207
Nadir Shah, 149, 152, 157
Nand Lal, Bhai, 216
Naqib Khan, 115–7
Nasab Nama-i-Qutb Shahi, 93–4
Nayyak-shasankcharit, 204
Nilamata-purana, 1, 3, 4
Nisbat Nama-i-Shahryari, 93
Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad, 110, 115, 119, 123, 138, 165–7, 193, 195, 253
Nizam-ud-Din Aulia, 24, 34, 40, 171–2
Nizam-ul-Mulk, 87, 148, 151–3, 156–8, 160, 189
Nizam-ul-Tawarikh, 110
Nuh Siphr, 25, 31
Nurjahan, 181, 185
Nuskha-i-Dilkusha, 191

Ojha, G. H., 198–99
Olaasen, 248

Pahari paintings, 260–1, 265
Padshah-nama, 190
Parchian Sewo Daz, 213
Parchi Guru Gobind Singhji, 213
Pavlov, 246, 248–51, 254
Peshwa Daftarantun Nivadlele Kagad, 219
Persia, 40, 53, 55, 119, 161, 179, 182
Poelier, Antoine Louis Henri, 218–9
Prabandhachintamani, 203
Prabhachandra, 203
Prabhakaracharitra, 203

Prachin Panth Prakash, 217–18
Prayabhatta, 9, 54, 204
Pritam Singh, 210
Prithi Chand, 210, 213
Prthviraj Chaushan, 19
Pulad Ching Chang, 13
Puranas, 1, 3, 4, 202

Qamru-i-Masudi, 166
Qasim Khan, 70, 73–4, 76
Qasim Lahori, 150–1
Qazr-ul-Imarat, 115
Qazi Ibrahim, 53–4
Qiran-us-Saodain, 25, 31, 171
Quili Qutb-ul-Mulk, Sultan, 85, 87, 94
Quub Shahi Dynasty, 84–97
Quutb-ud-Din Aibak, 19, 169

Rafi-ud-Darajat, 157, 162–63
Rafi-ud-Daula, 162–3
Raghunandan Das, 191
Rah-i-Sunnat, 234
Rahit-nama, 216
Rajavali pataka, 53
Rajput Paintings, 258–60, 263, 266–7
Rajshekhar, 203
Rajatarangini, 1–9, 53–4, 56–7, 204
Ramacharit, 204
Ramarajavijayam, 96
Ramayana, 14, 240–1, 253
Rashid-ud-Din, Fazlullah Abul Khair, 11–21, 166
Ratan Singh, 217
Rati Rohasya, 265
Rauzat-ul-Ahbab, 116, 118
Rauzat-us-Safa, 50
Razi, Amin Ahmad, 40, 253
Reisner, 242–6, 252–3
Risail-i-Ijaz, 31
Risala-i-Muhammad Shah wa Khan-i-Dauran, 152
Risala-i-Nanak Shah, 218
Risala-i-Sultaniyya, 12
Risala-i-Wahidyah, 103
Rise and Fall of the Mohomedan Power in India, 84
Ross, Sir Denison, 59, 66
Rulers of Tilang, 86
Rugqat-al-Alamgiri, 220
INDEX

Rustam Ali Khan, 148, 152
Saadat Khan, 74, 152-3
Safar-nama, 221
Sahib Singh, 221
Sain Das, 214
Sakhian Guru Guru Sahibian, 213
Samarth Ramdas, 212
Sana-i-Muhammad, 41
Sandhyakar Nandi, 204
Sangram Singh, 200
Sarkar, J. N., 69, 70, 184, 252, 274-81
Sari-l-Azad, 239
Saulat-i-Faraqi, 241
Saw-Sakhi, 213
Sayyid Ahmad Khan, 234-6
Sayyid Ali, 53-4
Sayyid Ali b. Azizullah Tabatabai, 85
Sayyid Ali Hamadani, 54, 56-7
Sayyid Brothers, 149-53, 157-8, 160
Sayyid Mubarak Shah, Sultan, 65, 174
Sayyid Musa, 110
Selections from the Peshwa Daftar, 220
Ewa Das, 217
Sewa Singh, 213, 222
Shaft Warid, 147-8, 150
Shah Abbas II (of Iran), 87, 89, 92
Shah Alam of Gujarat, 64-5
Shah Alam Bahadur Shah, 146, 156, 207-8
Shahid Bilas, 213, 222
Shah Fathullah Shirazi, 115, 138
Shahjahan, 70-1, 75, 80, 90, 117, 185, 206
Shah Khursah, 86
Shah Mir, 53-4, 57
Shah-nama-i-Deccan, 145
Shaikh Muhammad b. Khatun, 89, 90
Shaikh Muluk Shah, 188
Shams-ud-Din Iraqi, 57
Shams-ud-Din Muhammad Shahrazuri, 165
Shams-ud-Din Siraj Afif, 173-6
Shams-ud-Din, Sultan of Kashmir, 54
Sharif-ud-Din Yazdi, 177
Shaikh Gaddai, 111
Shaikh Hatim Sambhali, 188
Shaikh Mubarak, 107, 123, 184, 188
Shaikh Sikandar, 59-67
Sher Shah, 139, 187
Shibli, Maulana, 234-6, 238-41
Shihab-ud-Din Ghuri, 18-19
Shihab-ud-Din of Kashmir, 56-8
Shir-o-Shakar, 221
Shitab Khan, 60-72, 76, 80-1
Shivaji, 189-90, 192
Shri Samarthancha Bakhar, 211
Shrivara, 9, 53-5, 204
Shuka, 9, 204
Shyam Singh, 217
Shiddhavatam, 97
Shiv Prasad, 221
Siddhichandra Upadhyaya, 206
Sikandar b. Manjhu, 59, 61-7
Sikandar, Sultan, 57
Singh Sagar, 213
Siques, The, 218-9
Sketch of the Sikhs, 221
Sri Gur Sabha, 215
Struggle for Empire, 19-20
Subhan Quil, 85, 89, 95
Suchak Prasang Guru ka, 211
Suhadeva, 16, 55
Sukha Singh, 212
Sultan Ghias-ud-Din, 20-1
Sur Singh, 211
Syed Muhammad of Jaunpur, 106
Tabqat-i-Akbari, 64, 110, 187, 235, 253
Taqqat-i-Mahmud Shahi, 60
Taqqat-i-Nasiri, 19, 45-6
Taj-ul-Futub, 168
Taj-ul-Maasir, 169
Tanakhwah-nama, 216
Tantins, 6-7
Tapatil Samvarananu, 95
Tarikh-i-Afghanana, 218
Tarikh-i-Ahmad Shahi, 60
Tarikh-i-Alal, 25
Tarikh-i-Al-I-Subuktingin, 168
Tarikh-i-Alfi, 113-22, 187
Tarikh-i-Bahadur Shahi, 66
Tarikh-i-Beihagi, 168
Tarikh-i-Fathiyah, 148
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Entry</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Ferishta</td>
<td>86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi, 37, 45, 48-9, 172-3, 176, 236, 253</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Hindi</td>
<td>150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh Ichi Nizam Shah</td>
<td>86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Iradat Khan</td>
<td>146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Jahan Gushai</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Kashmir</td>
<td>53-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Khandan-i-Timuriya</td>
<td>117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Maswali</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi</td>
<td>110, 174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Muhammad Qutb Shah</td>
<td>88, 91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Rashidi</td>
<td>98, 181</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Sadar Jahan</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Shah Alam</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Wassaf</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarikh-i-Yamini</td>
<td>168, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tausif-wa-Sana</td>
<td>216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tawarikh-i-Muhammad Shah Naxir-uz-Zaman</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tawarikh-i-Qutb Shah</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tazkirat-ul-Mu'uluk, 87-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tazkirat-ul-Waqiat, 182</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tessority, L. P.</td>
<td>198-9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timur, 11, 88, 91, 98, 117, 162-3, 173, 176-80, 185, 189, 192, 235</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tod, Innes</td>
<td>226</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Todar Mal, 76, 138, 184, 198, 201</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travels of Guru Tegh Bahadur and Gobind Singh</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taqhat-nama, 25, 26, 28, 31, 33, 171</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twshaf-ul-Hind</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuzuk-i-Babar</td>
<td>119, 180, 240</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri</td>
<td>236, 238, 240</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuzuk-i-Timuri</td>
<td>177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uljaitu Khuda-Banda, 11-2, 87</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umar, Caliph, 172, 241</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umar Shaikh, 102</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uzhanay Indiya, 254</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaidya Daftaratun Nivandlele Kagad</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vakputi Munja, 204</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vakpatiraj, 204</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamshahvalis, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Var Amritsar ki, 213-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Var Sri Bhagvat, 214</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vastupal Charit, 205</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velugotivari Vamsavali, 96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vikramank, 204</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virdhawal, 205</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vir Singh Ball, 213</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitastamohatmya, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waqai Qutbshahiya, 86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheeler, J. T., 217</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson, C. R., 217</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson, Horace Hayman, 229</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yad-i-Baiza</td>
<td>239</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahya b. Sirhindhi</td>
<td>174, 176, 193, 195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yaqub Shah, 54-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yatichchartiramu Ponnaganti Telescope, 96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yusuf Adil Khan, 88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yusuf Khan Chak, 55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yusuf Muhammad Khan, 148, 151</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yusuf Shah, 53, 55-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zafar-nama, 177, 212</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zafar-ul-Walih, 59, 66</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zain-ul-Abidin, Sultan, 53, 56-8, 204</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zamir-i-Muhammad Shahi</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zindgi-nama, 216</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
History of Indonesia
(Early and Medieval)

B. R. Chatterji

'Dr. Chatterji is one of the very few Indians who are recognised as authority on the subject and this book has fully maintained his reputation. It contains a critical study based on the results of the most recent researches on the subject and the presentation is very lucid. The book deals in a small compass with many matters of importance concerning the ancient history of Indonesia and will prove very useful both to general readers as well as those who are engaged in a special study of the subject.'

—R. C. Majumdar.

'...a most useful contribution to the history of Southeast Asia.'

—George Cadès.

Cities of Ancient India

B. N. Puri

'...deals with the history and archaeology of 34 important cities of Ancient India.'
Inter-State Relations in Ancient India

T. B. Mukherjee

'Isolation of India in any period of history is a myth. Further, India developed in the past elaborate and carefully planned Administrative Systems with well-defined rules and maxims for diplomatic and inter-state relations. This work is a valuable contribution to the stock of literature relating to diplomatic and inter-state relations in ancient India and contains plenty of new information supplementing what was recorded in a few works already written. I congratulate Dr. Mukherjee for this learned work based on a critical and careful study.'

—K. K. Dutta.

Pakistan: Birth and Early Days

Sri Prakasa

'Few men long in public life in India have been so respected and beloved as Sri Prakasa, and his charming... book goes far to explain why this should be... it is impossible to read Sri Prakasa's frank... account without forming an affection for the author. Perhaps his leading characteristics are his complete honesty and and courage.'

—The Times Literary Supplement